

SOME PROBLEMS OF DIALECT LEXICOGRAPHY

with particular reference to
the preparation of a draft of an
illustrative, experientially categorised
Dictionary of South African English

Part II

A dissertation submitted to

Rhodes University

by

Jean Branford

December 1975

Acknowledgements

I wish firstly to express my thanks to the Dictionary Committee and to the Board and Director of the Institute for the Study of English in Africa of Rhodes University for making it possible for me to undertake this work, and to the Human Sciences Research Council without whose financial support the project could not have been completed.

I am most deeply indebted to the supervisor of my research, Professor Johan Smuts, Chairman of the Dictionary Committee and Head of the Department of Afrikaans-Nederlands of Rhodes University, for his constant help and encouragement, the time he has given me, and his meticulous examination of both drafts of the dictionary. To my colleagues on the staff of the Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles I am grateful for endless help and patience: to Dorothy Muggeridge who has typed her way twice through a lengthy and difficult document, correcting many of my mistakes on her way; to John Walker, my fellow assistant-editor of the Dictionary of South African English who has given me willing guidance and advice throughout and excellent illustrative material from his reading; to Margaret Britz for her help with the bibliography and word lists, and for her omnivorous reading which has provided many of the quotations cited here; to Shirley Freeman for typing the original bibliography and notes; to my former colleague Penelope Silva, at whose original suggestion I began this project and some of whose reading is quoted in the text.

To two specialists in the field of South African English, Professor W.S. Mackie and Professor Dorothy Cavers, I have been indebted since my student days for their interest and encouragement in this branch of study, as, more recently, I have been to Professor L. W. Lanham of the University of the Witwatersrand, and to Miss Yvonne Cloete and Mr J. S. B. Marais of the Language Services Bureau. To Professor Mackie I am also indebted for much material which he has made available to me, and to Professor Cavers for her supervision of my work until her retirement in 1971.

I would like to express my special thanks to Mr C. J. Skead of Grahamstown, formerly of the Kaffrarian Museum, King William's Town and of the Percy Fitzpatrick Ornithological Institute, Cape Town, who has spent many hours guiding me through the complexities of checklists of the scientific names for birds and beasts.

To Rhodes colleagues in African Languages, especially to Mr C. Z. Gebeda, now of Fort Hare, who helped me prepare the original Nguni etymologies, and to Mr John Claughton and Mr A. P. Hendrikse I am grateful for some insight into the mysterious working of these.

My debts to friends known and unknown are almost too many to list, but I do want to record my gratitude to the following:

Other and better workmen in this field on whose work I have drawn: the great and original spirit of the Reverend Charles Pettman and Dr C. P. Swart and Dr M. D. W. Jeffries who continued where he left off;

All those speakers of English in South Africa whose usage has caught my ear;

Mr R. W. Burchfield, editor of the Oxford English Dictionary Supplement for useful advice and some practical points;

The Hon. Mr Justice D. D. V. Kannemeyer, Professor R. Beuthin, Advocate George Randell and Mr Gordon Richings of the Law Faculty of Rhodes University for guidance and information upon legal matters;

Mrs Sue Allanson;
Professor Guy Butler, Mr Maurice Aldridge, Dr. André P. Brink and Professor C. A. J. Giffard of Rhodes University;

Mr Paul Keating, my former student, for assistance with matching the sound system to the available symbols;

Mr Michael Berning of the Cory Library;

Miss A. C. Dick of the Rhodes University Library;

Mr Marius le Roux, Curator of the Stellenbosch Museum;

Mrs Rita Snyman of the 1820 Settler Museum, Grahamstown;

Mrs Estelle Brink of the Albany Museum Herbarium;

Mrs. Margaret Rainier of East London;

Mrs. Margaret Smith of the J. L. B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology;

and Mr P. B. N. Jackson

Mr and Mrs Francis Bowker of Carlisle Bridge, Mr and Mrs Geoff Palmer of Grahamstown, Mr and Mrs D. W. Dobrowsky and Mr J. W. Dobrowsky and their families, all of Elliot, for information and enlightenment on farming matters, and Mr C. G. Mullins of Grahamstown;

Mr Patrick Kohler and Mrs Audrey Ryan of the S.A.B.C., and to Dr Patricia McMagh and Mr Philip Burkinshaw for help with broadcasts;

Mrs (Bibi) Daoud Mall, her sister Mrs Zuleika Mayat, and Mrs Amina Tootla, the friends in whose hospitable homes and kitchens I learnt about Indian food and cookery;

Dr Bertram Brayshaw, Dr Amy Jacot-Guillarmod, Mr Eric Rosenthal and Mr Hjalmar Thesen for new words;

The Editors and owners of Drum for kindly sending regular copies of their paper which has provided most valuable material;

John and Brenda Hartdegen of Het Suid Western, George, for their kind interest and a weekly copy of the paper;

Mr R. D. Guy of Buccleugh Apiaries for beekeeper's terms and other information.

Blossom Broadbeam of Darling, whoever she may be, whose column Backchat has provided many of the quotations of colloquialisms cited in the text;

Business people of Grahamstown, Messrs G. E. Brookshaw, H. Colyvas, Nev. Connacher, D. N. Madhoo, J. Maher, Billy Mills, G. Naran and Mrs J. S. Fourie who have been kind enough to answer my questions and to give me information of all sorts.

Friends from far afield: Mr and Mrs Hugh Lewis of Singapore for advice on Malay words: Miss Sally Welch presently of Rhodes University and her parents Mr and Mrs Dick Welch of Sydney for Australian books and usage;

My husband William Branford, general editor of the Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles for his insistence upon the illustrative quotations which I venture to think are the making of this text; for domestic forbearance; for useful if ill-received criticism and for encouraging noises when things were going badly;

To the other members of my household, my children who have borne with varying patience the exigencies of having me working seven days a week; and Aurelia Nyathikazi, Ida Ncgoza and George Makhasi who have always carefully answered my many questions on Zulu and Xhosa, and corrected my spelling;

Finally, for the use of his library, for many gifts from it, and for his example of meticulous scholarship, to my father Alfred Gordon-Brown of Cape Town, to whom I dedicate this work.

Jean Branford
Pieterkoen,
George, C. P.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Part II A draft of a dictionary of South African English showing forms, features, adaptations and borrowings characteristic of English in South Africa: with illustrative quotations and a categorised survey of the vocabulary.¹

Acknowledgements

Introduction i - x

[Categorised Survey of the Vocabulary]¹

Pronunciation Key² xi - xv

Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and Other Labels³ xvi - xix

Abbreviations and Labelling³ xx - xxv

The Lexicon A - Z 1-580

Addenda 581-590

[Bibliography]⁴

1. The Categorised Survey is not repeated here but is given in Part I as Chapter IV 4.2 pp. 90-187
2. This also appears in Chapter II 2.4 p.41
3. These appear in Chapter IV 4.3.1 pp195-204
4. This is not repeated in Part II, but appears at the end of Part I p229

Erratum

Please Note

In this volume pages xii and xiii are bound out of order.

INTRODUCTION

There are several possible, and plausible, interpretations of the phrase 'South African English' (hereafter SAE). One is that SAE embraces all forms of English used in South Africa; another, that it is restricted to the English used by South Africans for whom English is their mother-tongue. This text does not claim to cover so broad a field as the first, which would be overwhelming in extent, nor so narrow as the second, since English is the lingua franca for many more South Africans, black and white, than those to whom it is a mother tongue.

According to the purists, SAE is that form of English used by white English-speaking South Africans. A less restricted view is that which regards it as those multiple forms of English in South Africa which go to make it a means of communication between people of many races and colours. Too liberal an interpretation of this lingua franca definition would probably result in a far-flung net in which the specialized vocabularies of particular sections of the population (e. g. Urban Africans, Cape Malays or Natal Indians) would receive a wider coverage than perhaps the currency of these vocabularies in the larger national community would merit. For this reason the more esoteric terms of Malay funeral ceremonies, of Indian wedding customs or more obscure items of African township argot are omitted, although they occur in certain English writing or newspapers in South Africa, though the more widely current items of the vocabularies of these groups are, of course, represented.

For the purposes of this text I have tried to strike a medium between two extreme views. The vocabulary treated in it is not simply that of English-speaking South Africans talking among themselves, or even to members of other races, nor is it that of a 'generalized' South African of any home language or colour speaking to any other. It is as nearly as possible a composite of these and many intermediate situations. It aims at elucidating Afrikaans borrowings of many kinds and at many levels of speech and writing of English in South Africa, and at defining some of the general vocabulary borrowed from Black and Oriental South Africa. Lastly, of course, it ventures to explain the English vocabulary of South Africans in which the original English meanings have been superseded

by meanings peculiar to South Africa or which consists of translated borrowings such as just now, so long, land.

The three thousand-odd items included are not likely to occur in the dialect of any single South African. Hence the criticism that 'this isn't South African English' is likely to be levelled at it. In casual discussion of this project with persons outside it, the criterion of many people has appeared to be that if they personally neither know nor use an item it is not South African English.

In one sense, however, both the suggested answers to the question 'What is South African English?' are too wide for what appears here. Unlike Noah Webster's American Dictionary of the English Language which treated the whole of the English language used in America, including items peculiar to speakers there, this is a dictionary only of the dialect element/s of English used in South Africa. Therefore the bulk of everyday English words (house, dog, cat, garden, work, run) have no place here, unless like camp, land, stand or improvement they are commonly used in senses differing from that of internationally understood 'standard' English. A dialect dictionary then, can be said to have as its raison d'être, the local as opposed to the international elements of the speech community of which it treats, since if these terms and elements were internationally standard there would be no need for such a text at all. What appears in this one is a collection of some of 'the forms, features, adaptations and borrowings characteristic of English in South Africa.'

Naturally the collection does not claim to be exhaustive, even of these, and at no point does it aim at mapping either the whole vocabulary of the English language in South Africa, or at presenting a complete list of SAE words and phrases which would be found in the personal idiolect of any single speaker. The vocabulary included here is some of that of persons found in many differing walks of life, differing backgrounds, and widely differing working or recreational milieux. Thus to the farmer with a whole semi-specialist terminology of his own, that of the miner is likely to be almost, or totally, unknown. Someone whose contacts with Africans have been minimal, or who has never had the opportunity or inclination to read the black press, may well be sceptical of the African language borrowings or otherwise Africanised English terms included here.

On the whole the 'specialist' vocabularies, particularly of flora and fauna, have been kept to a minimum, since most of the names of birds, beasts, fish and plants are the province of the naturalist rather than that of the lexicographer. Many, however, are familiar in the day to day usage of non-specialists and an attempt has been made to include these, though to some users of this text they will seem too many and to others too few.

This text, as a dialect dictionary, can aim at mapping only that part of a speaker's language which differs from the standard, internationally recognised, and therefore accepted, norm. That part, however, does not consist simply of words which are 'different names for the same thing', nor simply of an accent - different ways of pronouncing the same words. It consists of both of these but further, and at a deeper level of language, there are the structural contrasts between dialect and standard exemplified in differing syntactic structures, structural items or signals.¹

The dialect content of the 'idiolect' of an individual is thus threefold: sounds, grammatical structures, and words, all of which differ from those of the speaker of the standard norm. The writ of the dialect lexicographer as I see it, then, is a broad one of which the assembling of a list of dialect words and their meanings or referents is only a part, albeit the major one.

A great deal of work has been done on the dialects of other speech communities, in particular the American and the Scottish forms of English. There are major dictionaries of² Canadianisms, Jamaican English and Anglo Indian English. The small but fascinating community of Hong Kong and the even smaller indigenous community of St. Helena, where crib means to grumble or nag (in South Africa brom) are still, as far as I know, untouched by the hand of the lexicographer.

South Africa, like Canada, is a multilingual country - English and Afrikaans, as do English and French in parts of Canada, live side by side with numerous languages of the indigenous peoples of the continents whether they be the African or Khoi races, or the Indians of North America. It is only to be expected in these circumstances

that either...4/

1. See notes on Category 29 [Part I Chapter IV 4.2]
2. For these see Section I of the Bibliography.

that either for usefulness or pleasure words from the other languages enter the English spoken in these countries and become assimilated into them. Since most of South Africa is bilingual to a greater or lesser degree, it is likely that most borrowings are from Afrikaans, whereas the borrowings in Australian or New Zealand English are either from the aboriginal or Maori languages, while some of the English usage peculiar to these communities appears to be historically preserved from early English dialects which entered the country presumably via Botany Bay.

The English of South Africa has long been a receptacle for what is most vivid, viable and apposite from many tongues: from those of the Far East to those from the heart of Europe. In this it is no different from the English of England which Brig. J.H. Picard, quoting Otto Jespersen says 'sat down to a ... banquet of languages'.

Since the Reverend Chas Pettmann's Africanderisms, which appeared in 1913, modestly styled 'A Glossary of South African Colloquial Words and Phrases and of Place and other Names', though much work has been done on South African English, particularly in the phonetic field, a dictionary as such has not been compiled.¹ In the sixty two years which have elapsed since the publication of Pettman's Africanderisms many words have come and gone in the usage of South Africans. This text is an attempt at a synthesis of the old and new, made, it must be said, by one lacking the formidable linguistic scholarship of that pioneer in the field.

This text has several lexicographically unconventional features aimed at increasing the pleasure of the user and the information given. Firstly, where possible all items are illustrated by means of quotations drawn from many sources² from the most colloquial to the most serious of standard works, from fact and fiction.

Secondly, there is a categorised survey of the vocabulary, showing as far as possible the fields of usage or of day-to-day experience pervaded by the South African element in English in this country. This is described in more detail in the introductory notes to Part I Ch. IV 4.2. The notion of categorisation in a dictionary may well be questioned, as this can be said to be beyond the province of the

lexicographer 5/

1. The Index of English Usage in Southern Africa is, I understand, at present being published as a 'Dictionary of English Usage in Southern Africa', but as the original title implied is a work of an entirely different kind.

2. A note on the source material appears on p.vi of this Introduction.

lexicographer, being lexicology rather than lexicography as such. It must be remembered, however, in this connection that this work does not purport to cover more than that part of English in South Africa peculiar to South Africans of many colours and races, that is, what might be called the non-standard part of the language. The standard vocabulary, unless it be adapted for some special purpose other than its use in the English of other speech communities, has no place here. This, internationally speaking, non-standard, and I do not mean sub-standard, element covers widely diversified fields and is therefore classified in the interests of clarity and, I hope, pleasure. The survey consists of these introductory notes, a subject index of topics covered, and thirty four categories, each being a word list of items which belong together (Dishes and Cookery, Church and State, Travel and Vehicles) preceded by a brief note on the scope of the field covered by it. Words in the text are numbered according to which category/ies they fit.

Thirdly, there is a collection of 290 odd elements which are frequently used in the formation of South African place names, prefixed or suffixed to each other or sometimes alone. They are the features of the landscape, names of birds, beasts and plants, adjectives, verbs, participles, and occasional abstract nouns. Clearly place names as such are not part of a dictionary, but this collection of place name 'pieces', like building bricks, has been designed for the visitor or stranger who is unfamiliar with what is commonplace to most South Africans, to enable him to construct the meanings of many of the place names¹ encountered in his travels or reading. In the categorised survey on p.² the explanatory notes on Category 27 Place Names give a brief description of the ways in which these elements are combined, which it is hoped may be of some value to those concerned with onomastics, or rather, simply who are interested in place names.

Fourthly, an attempt has been made by cross-dialect references and comparisons with other forms of English, to place South African English 'in the picture' of dialects of other speech communities. It will be noticed that in numerous entries 'cf. U.S. -, Austr. -, Canad. -' etc. appears after the definition. This, like the categorisation system is not standard lexicographical practice. Nevertheless it has seemed worth while to include, where possible,

the term 6/

1. Names of African or Khoisan origin are beyond the scope of this work. The two are comprehensively treated in the work of Pettman South African Place Names 1931 and of G. S. Nienaber and P. E. Raper Khoekhoense Plekname 1972.

2. Part I Chapter IV 4.2 pp. 163-169: (also pp. 86-7)^x

the term used in other English speech communities for the same or similar concept or object. These are not only, many of them, entertaining but they show both similarities and contrasts of quite considerable interest, I think, particularly in view of the great distances which separate the world's English speaking peoples.

Fifthly it contains some 'head words' which look as if they are quite out of place in a dictionary: some are only parts of words such as -ed or -ie, and others such items as omissions, prepositions, adjective with infinitive, negative, uses of and redundancies. These give clues to certain grammatical idiosyncracies in South African English usage, particularly the short cuts taken, found at omissions, the extraneous matter, listed as redundancies, and non-standard English use of prepositions, all of which are given as head words in the text, but which at prepositions are simply listed together as cross references. Many of the unfamiliar usages of dialect grammar are direct translations or transliterations usually from Afrikaans: these are to be found among the translated expressions in Category 10 .Part I Ch.IV 4.2. The items in omissions, prepositions and redundancies are listed in Category 29.

Lastly, the labelling system has been devised to give rather longer abbreviations than those usually found in major dictionaries. This is in the hope that these may be 'transparent' enough to make for a minimum of back checking to the tables on pp. xvi - xxv. Thus it will be found vb (not v.) for 'verb', trans. (not tr.) for 'translation' and trns and intrns, 'transitive' and 'intransitive', are used throughout in preference to the shorter forms of standard practice. Also, the labelling system will be found presented in two forms: an overall alphabetical list on p.xvi-xx and in numbered sections - Word Classes, Other Languages, Usage Signals etc. on pp.xx-xxv to show a systematised approach to the different factors requiring labelling in a dictionary.

The Source Material.

A detailed Bibliography of works used, consulted or quoted is appended for any users requiring these details.

The sources of the quotations which appear in the text are of

many kinds.....7/

many kinds - Newspapers and Magazines, listed in Section III of the Bibliography have been extensively used. These are daily and Sunday papers and the black press, in particular Drum. Magazines include The Farmer's Weekly, a primary source, South African Panorama, Darling, Fair Lady, Personality and Scope. Indian and Coloured newspapers have also been used when and where available.

Section IV of the Bibliography shows other types of writing from which the quotations have been drawn. These are extremely varied, and include early and contemporary fiction, poetry, plays, diaries and other memoirs or reminiscences, biography, histories, anthropological works, some children's books, texts on farming, legal text books, cookery books and numerous works of travel and description by early naturalists, and military or other visitors to the Cape Colony.

Although this text has not been prepared on historical principles very many of the illustrative quotations have been drawn from sources of quite early date. These have been selected usually on the grounds of their intrinsic interest rather than on those of relative antiquity. Certain items, labelled 'Historical' or even 'Obsolete', are likely, in the circumstances, to be illustrated from early texts, e. g. travellers' terms such as 'the field' (veld), 'diving goat' (duiker), and 'girdle of famine'. Early texts include the works of travellers and naturalists such as Burchell, Sparrman, Le Vaillant, Alexander and Webster; and of temporary residents such as Lady Anne Barnard, Lady Duff Gordon, James Ewart, a young officer stationed at the Cape from 1811 - 1814, and Christopher Webb Smith - an artist and civil servant on furlough from India 1835-7.

Also included are the works of settlers such as Thomas Pringle, Thomas Philipps and H.H. Dugmore and the numerous diaries, chronicles or reminiscences later published - or unpublished - of Jeremiah Goldswain, Thomas Stubbs, James Hancock, James Collett, Sophia Pigot, Eliza Jane Dugmore, Thomas Shone: military memoirs such as the Narrative of Private Buck Adams and James Mckay's Reminiscences of the Last Kaffir War and of missionaries such as George Barker, John Ayliff, Jos Whiteside and William Shaw.

These early writers all show the tendency to adopt words of local origin and usage into their work, sometimes for a touch of

unfamiliar 'colour' in their writing, but more often because the borrowed word signified for them an unfamiliar thing, whether it was biltong, spelt in innumerable strange ways, or an unknown bird, beast or flower never before encountered.

The quotations are given to illustrate as many as possible of the words in use, sometimes with several different meanings, as in the case of kraal. When 'See also quot. at _____' appears in an entry, this shows that the same word will be found in a quotation under the other headword cited, thus 'doubling up' in the illustrative material for that item, e. g. place of, in see also quot. at mutsha.

By this system of cross references it is possible to increase the number of quotations containing any word without increasing the bulk of the text itself.

Pronunciation

The pronunciation table has been prepared with a view to simplifying the sounds of the non-English words used in South African English. In the case of non-English sounds an analogue is given from a European language, French, German or Italian, as the nearest approximation to the sound, e. g. the spelling ui is given as [œi] and described as being 'as in French coup d'œil' and its obverse eu as [ioe] 'as in French monsieur.' In the case of other non-English diphthongs the nearest English approximation is given e. g. for ee (heemraad) [ɛə] as in beer is suggested, and for oo (boom) [ʊə] as in poor. These, it must be stressed, are given for simplicity and convenience as detailed articulatory descriptions would be both unwieldy and out of place here.

As regards English words used in specifically South African senses, no attempt to reproduce the 'South African Accent' has been made, this being the province of the dialectologist-phonetician on the one hand or of the comedian on the other.

The pronunciation table is based on the symbols of the International Phonetic Association with certain small adaptations where necessary.

Note: Many of the titles of word sources quoted are abbreviated, either in terms of the abbreviations in the tables on pp. xvi - xxv, e. g. C. of G. H. for Cape of Good Hope, or else in the interests of brevity e. g. Last Kaffir War for Reminiscences of the Last Kaffir War. All titles are given in full in the Bibliography.

The Form of Entry used

Each entry takes more or less the same form: first the headword in heavy type, followed by a pronunciation^x in square brackets based on the symbols for sounds given in the pronunciation table on pp. xi-xv. This is followed by the word class (or part of speech) into which it falls, and if it is a noun the plural form or forms where applicable. Abbreviations of the grammatical terms are used e. g. n. vb. adj. adv.: these are to be found in Section IA of the labelling system given on p. xx.

If the word is a 'count' noun which takes a plural and to which a number can be applied e. g. kabeljou, pondok, 'n. pl. -s' will follow the pronunciation: should it be a count noun of a special type, often the name of some game animals, e. g. springbok 'n. pl. \emptyset . -s' follows. The \emptyset (zero) sign indicates that, like sheep, the word is used without a plural, e. g. 'Fifteen springbok were ...' Verbs are marked transitive or intransitive or both, but past tense forms are not given.

Forms which occur usually as prefixes and/or suffixes are preceded and/or followed by hyphens to indicate that these are not normally 'free' forms, e. g. brand-, -bron or -bos-. These are found frequently among the place name formatives listed in Category 27 or in the flora (Categories 13, 28, 32) and fauna (Categories 3, 6). Many forms, of course, e. g. veld and berg appear both free and in compounds.

Below this so-called 'head material' is a number, or numbers, indicating in which category or categories it belongs, e. g. putu would have the numbers 7 (Dishes and Cookery) and 2 (African World) followed by a definition or description of the item. Below this is a passage or passages in which the word is shown in use, followed by the source of the quotation. Lastly between square brackets the etymology is given.

Latin names in the case of flora and fauna are given, usually following the category number or numbers, or else in the body of the definition.

If there is another term used for, or as an equivalent of the headword, this appears in the definition underlined followed by (qv) 'which see' and its relevant category number. It is placed either immediately following the numbers in the form 'Also (called) (known

as) ...' or else, as in the example below, in the body of the definition. In either case it constitutes a cross reference to another item in the text, unless the item is in ordinary type, and without a category number, e. g. at the entry for kaffir beer ... coll. 'Whitewash': or at mampoer ... often called peach brandy.

Example:

putu ['putu] n.

7, 2. Traditional African preparation of mealie meal (qv) 7, cooked until it forms dry crumbs: equiv. of krummelpap (qv) 7: eaten by Africans with meat and gravy etc. or with calabash milk (qv) 7 or maas (qv) 7: it is also a popular breakfast food among whites, served instead of porridge.

Soon one of Mazibe's wives ... entered on her hands and knees. Permitted to kneel but not to stand, she adroitly balanced a baby strapped to her back in a cloth sling, while serving us roast chicken and iphuthu, a kind of hominy that has been a staple Zulu dish for centuries. National Geographic Magazine 6 Dec. 1971

... her first move is to the kitchen where Lukas her cook is preparing breakfast ... Whatever else might be in the offing a large pot of putu - crumb mealie meal porridge - will be ready for eating. Fair Lady Jan. 1972

[Ngu. uphutu = crumb porridge, anything crumbly e. g. earth]

Note: Certain items are cross referenced to others without a full definition particularly in the event of there being several terms for the same thing, e. g.

makataan [,maka'tan] n. pl. -s

14. Citrullus lanatus: see kaffir melon 14, also tsamma melon, karkoer 14.

In the case of an alternative spelling the user is directed to what is probably the commoner form, e. g.

mampara [,mam'parə] n. pl. -s

19, 1. See mompara 19, 1.

PRONUNCIATION KEY

TABLE OF PHONETIC SYMBOLS

Approximate sound values of symbols for South African English

CONSONANTS

[p, b, t, d, g, k, f, v, s, z, h, m, n, l] have their usual agreed English speech value.

Non-English sounds are marked *

r like normal English initial r as in rat. This r in initial position is rolled as in Scottish English by some SAE speakers.

*(r) the parentheses indicate that some speakers omit this sound altogether. This (r) when sounded is rolled as in Scottish English or Afrikaans by some SAE speakers, e.g. poort [pʊə(r)t].

ŋ as in ring

dʒ as in judge

tʃ as in church. This is a frequent SAE pronunciation of *[c], the palatal plosive. (see below)

*c this sound is rare for SAE speakers who usually pronounce it as [tʃ] (see above) or [k]. [In Afrikaans it is spelt tj or dj and sounds like a [k] produced forward on the hard palate e.g. naartjie [narcī].]

θ as in thin, pith

ð as in then, tithe

ʃ as in shine, finish

ʒ as in pleasure

j as in yellow. The Afrikaans spelling is j e.g. ja = yes.

*x as in Scottish loch, German ach. The Afrikaans spelling is g or gg e.g. gogga = insect.

*ʒ as in Welsh Llandudno: found in African language borrowings spelt hl e.g. hlonipa = reverence, kahle = well, also in all Zulu place names containing this combination e.g. Hluhluwe, Mahlabatini, often erroneously pronounced [ʃl] as in German schloss.

Note: In words borrowed from the African languages the c, x and

*for pxii please
turn two pages.*

- e as in pen
- *e as in French mère, German ähnlich, the [e] sound pronounced long. The Afrikaans spelling is either ê as in sê = say or kêrel = fellow, e before r as in ver- = far, occ è as in nè = not so? See also diphthong [ɛə].
- æ as in pan
- *a short as in German ach, Italian altro, French à la mode. This sound occurs with many variations in both Afrikaans and the African languages which contribute to SAE, spelt a. This description is only an approximation since the variants are between the extremes of the [ʌ] of hut, on the one hand and the [ɒ] of hot on the other.
- ɑ as in par, palm, used in this text for most Afrikaans 'aa' spellings and for some a spellings.
- ɒ as in on, sock.
- o as in corn, call. This symbol is also used to transcribe long 'o' sounds in words borrowed from African languages e.g. lobola = bride price.
- *o Similar to [o] but short and pronounced stressed, something like the o in German Gott. The quality and duration of the sound are equivalent to that of the first syllable of authority, pronounced stressed. [This does not make it equivalent in quality or duration to the first syllable of author.] The Afrikaans spelling is o as in koppie = hillock.
- ʊ as in book, pull
- u as in boot, rule
- *u as in German Hund. Similar to the sound in boot, but pronounced short. Spellings are oe as in Afrikaans stoep = open verandah, and u as in kudu (Afrikaans koedoe) in both stressed and unstressed syllables.
- ə as in butter, about. The unstressed central 'neutral' vowel.

q spellings represent clicks of three different basic types.

c represents the alveolar-dental click formed behind the teeth on the teeth ridge, rather like the English 'dismay sound' variously spelt tut-tut, tch tch, tsk tsk.

x or xh represents the lateral click, formed at the side of the mouth, and

q the palatal click formed at the hard palate. Approximations are not available for these.

In the interests of simplicity, therefore, they are all transcribed as [k] sounds, a quite usual way of rendering them.

The presence of a click in a word is indicated by [+] following the transcription thus:

Tixo ['tixõ +]

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

Vowels or diphthongs which have no English equivalent are marked *. The example and/or description following each is the nearest approximation to the sound.

Note: 'high', 'low', 'front', 'back' and 'central' refer to the position of the tongue in the mouth.

VOWELS

*y as in French rue, German über. This is pronounced like the sound in pea but with closely rounded lips. The Afrikaans spelling is uu e.g. suurveld = sour grass veld, occ u e.g. suring = sorrel.

i as in pea.

Note: A form of this sound, very short and slightly lower, is used by most SAE speakers for the pronunciation of final y as in city, unlike the [ɪ] of British English in the same position. Where this occurs in the text the symbol [ɨ] is used.

*ɨ short as in German ich, French riz. The Afrikaans spelling is usually ie as in riem = thong, occ e before tj e.g. ribbetjie = loin chop.

r as in pick.

Note: Unless it is initial or in combination with [g], [k] or [ŋ], preceded by [h] or followed by [ʃ], when the symbol [ɹ] is used, this sound is pronounced in a lower form, further back, see [ɹ̥] below.

*ɹ̥ Similar to the sound in restore, degree pronounced stressed. This is only an approximation: see note on [ɹ] above. The [ɹ̥] symbol is used for i spellings other than the combinations described there, and for the SAE rendering of Afrikaans i spellings, rendered [ə̃] by Afrikaans speakers and some speakers of SAE.

Return back for p. xiii

*ɔ̄ the same vowel stressed, a sound said to be unique to SAE. It is standard in Afrikaans e.g. sin [sɔ̄n] = sentence. Some SAE speakers and most Afrikaans speakers use this sound for i spellings e.g. pit [pɔ̄t] Afrikaans 'stone', 'pip', for which the symbol [ɪ] is used in this text.

*œ as in French boeuf (pronounced short). A short semi-low front vowel with slight lip rounding. The Afrikaans spelling is u as in -rus [-roes] = rest.

3 as in pert, burn, bird, earth

^ as in but

DIPHTHONGS

Note: In the interests of simplicity and convenience the closest English diphthong has been taken as an example wherever possible.

ɪə similar to the sound in pier. Afrikaans spellings ee as in geel = yellow, and e as in brēdie = stew, hotpot, are rendered as a diphthong by SAE speakers, though not always before f. + [These are pure vowels, not diphthongs, for Afrikaans speakers.] †

ʊə similar to the sound in poor. Afrikaans spellings oo as in boom = tree and o as in dominee = minister are rendered as a diphthong by SAE speakers though not always before f. See + above.

Note: These two diphthongs could more accurately be given with their first elements [ɪ] and [ʊ] respectively. However, since [ɪə] as in beer, fear, pier and [ʊə] as in poor, sure, are regular English diphthongs they are given as more convenient approximations to the SAE sounds.

ɛə as in pair, pear. This is also a frequent pronunciation of the Afrikaans long e before r as in kērel, ver, perske. See [e:].

eɪ as in pay. The Afrikaans spelling is y as in vry = ^{to} court, ei as eina = ouch! ey as in brēi = curry (hides),

aɪ as in pie, but of slightly longer duration. The Afrikaans spelling is aaɪ as in braai = grill, or ai as in assegai = spear.

Note: Before -tj or -dj aa and a spellings are pronounced [aɪ] e.g. vaatje = a small barrel (vat), rooibaadjie = redcoat, latjie = twig.

ɔɪ as in ploy, coin. Like the [aɪ] sound this tends to be slightly lengthened.

- əʊ as in toe, coal. This is an approximation to the sound of the Afrikaans ou spellings as in juffrou = mistress (teacher).
- av as in prov
- *œɪ as in French coup d'œil. This sound is similar to that of English day pronounced with rounded lips. The Afrikaans spelling is ui, e.g. muisvoel = mousebird (occasionally uy in proper names e.g. Uys, or in Dutch borrowings.) This is often pronounced [ex] as in pay by SAE speakers.
- *ɪœ as in French mônsieur: the obverse of the [œɪ] diphthong, pronounced like the sound of ear with lip rounding. For Afrikaans speakers this is a pure vowel spelt eu as in deur-mekaar = muddled, verneuk = deceive.
Note: This is often pronounced [ɪə] as in fear by SAE speakers.

OTHER MARKERS

- :
- placed after a vowel indicates that it is of exceptional length.
- ˘
- above a symbol indicates that the sound is short.
- ()
- indicates that the sound within the parentheses is frequently dispensed with or dropped.
- ˑ
- placed below a resonant consonant [m̩] [n̩] or [l̩] indicates that the consonant is syllabic i.e. it serves as vowel and consonant in one, e.g. bʌt̩ (button) lɪt̩ (little).
- ˈ
- placed before a syllable indicates that it carries the primary stress or emphasis in that word, e.g. [ˈbaskɪt] [krɪsˈænθəməm].
- ˌ
- placed before a syllable indicates that it carries secondary stress in that word e.g. [ˈhænd,bæg] [ˌkæbrɪdʒ,lɪf].

Where alternative pronunciations of single syllables occur the alternative is given for the syllable only.

For final syllables the alternative follows a comma and a hyphen thus [(I)nˈdɔbə, -a]: for initial syllables it follows a comma and precedes a hyphen thus [ˌjəˈfræv, ˌjœf-]: for medial syllables it follows a comma and is placed between two hyphens, thus [ˌɑfrɪˈkɑndə(r), -ˈkænd-, -ˈkænd-.]

Alphabetical List of Abbreviations and other Labels.

(Fuller explanations appear under Sections IA, IB, IIA, IIB, IIIA, IIIB in the following tables.)

A	abbr.	abbreviation
	acc.	according to
	<u>adj.</u>	adjective
	<u>adv.</u>	adverb
	<u>adv. m.</u>	" of manner
	<u>adv. p.</u>	" of place
	<u>adv. t.</u>	" of time
	<u>adv.</u>	advertisement
	[A.E.]	African English see IIIA
	Afk.	Afrikaans
	Afr.	African
	agent.	agentive see IB
	analg.	analogy/analogous see IB
	Ang. Ind.	Anglo Indian see IIIA
	angl.	anglicisation see IB
	Arab.	Arabic
	Army	See IIA Sectional
	<u>art.</u>	article see IA
	attrib.	attributive/ly see IB
	Aug.	August
	Austral.	Australian see IIIA
B	Bantu	See IIIB
	Bldg.	Building see IIA Sectional
	Brit.	British see IIIA
C	C	Century see IIB
	Canad.	Canadian see IIIA
	cf.	compare/contrast
	cit.	cited by
	C. of G.H.	Cape of Good Hope
	cogn.	cognate see IB
	Coll.	colloquial see IIA
D	Dec.	December
	demon.	demonstrative
	deriv.	derived/derivatively see IB
	dial.	dialect/al see IIIA
	dimin.	diminutive see IB
	Du.	Dutch, Nederlands
	dub.	doubtful/dubious
E	E.	East/ern
	edit.	edition/edited by see IIB
	e. g.	exempli gratia see IIB

	Eng.	English
	equiv.	equivalent of/to
	erron.	erroneous/ly
	esp.	especially
	etc.	et/cetera
	etym.	etymology
F	Farm.	Farming see IIA Sectional
	Feb.	February
	figur.	figurative/ly
	fr.	from
	Fr.	French
	freq.	frequently
G	Ger.	German
	Gk.	Greek
H	Hong K.	Hong Kong see IIIA
	Hebr.	Hebrew
	Hist.	Historical see IIA
	Hott.	Hottentot see also Nama IIIB
I	ibid.	ibidem, the same see IIB
	idiom.	idiom/atic/ally
	i. e.	id est, that is
	[I.E.]	Indian English see IIIA
	imp.	imperative see IB
	indef.	indefinite see IB
	inflect.	inflection see IB
	<u>intensifier</u>	see IA
	<u>interj.</u>	interjection, exclamation
	intrns.	intransitive see note following IA
J	Jam. E. ^{Jam.}	Jamaican English
	Jewish	see IIA Sectional
	Japanese	(language)
L	Lat.	Latin
	lit.	literally
M	Malay	(language)
	Mar.	March
	Mining	see IIA Sectional
	<u>modifier</u>	noun or other modifying phrase see IA
N	<u>n.</u>	noun
	N.	North/ern
	<u>n. abstr.</u>	abstract noun
	Nama	Hottentot see IIIB
	neg.	negative see IB

	Ngu.	Nguni see IIIB
	<u>n. modifier</u>	see IA
	Nov.	November
	<u>n. prop.</u>	proper noun or proper name see note following IA
	N.Z.	New Zealand see IIIA
O	Obj.	objectionable See IIA
	object	object (of a verb)
	Obs.	obsolete see IIA
	occ.	occasionally
	Oct.	October
	O.E.	Old English (Anglo Saxon)
	O.E.D.	Oxford English Dictionary see note following IIIB
	onomat.	onomatopoeic
	orig.	origin/ally
P	pass.	passive
	personif.	personifying See IB
	phr.	phrase
	pl.	plural
	Port.	Portuguese
	poss.	possibly
	predic.	predicative/ly See IB
	prefix	prefix
	<u>prep.</u>	preposition/al
	presum.	presumably
	<u>prn.</u>	pronoun
	prob.	probably
	pron.	pronunciation
	pub.	published by/in
Q	qn	question
	quot.	quotation
	(qv)	quod vide, which see
R	Reg.	regional See IIA
	rel.	related to/relative
S	S.	South/ern
	S. A.	South Africa
	SAE	South African English
	S. Afr.	South African
	Scottish	see IIIA
	Sect.	Sectional see IIA
	Sept.	September
	sic	thus See IIB
	sign.	signifying
	sing.	singular
	Slang	see IIA

	sp.	spelling
	Span.	Spanish
	Sotho	see IIIB
	subj.	subject
	Substand.	Substandard see IIA
	suff.	suffix
T	trans.	translation of
	translit.	transliteration of
	trns.	transitive see IA
U	Unacctpt.	unacceptable see IIA
	U.S.	United States see IIIA
	<i>usu.</i>	<i>usually</i>
V	<u>vb</u>	verb
	<u>vb intrns.</u>	intransitive verb see note following IA
	vbl	verbal see IB
	<u>vb trns.</u>	transitive verb
W	W.	West/ern
X	Xh.	Xhosa
Y	Yiddish	(language)
Z	Zu.	Zulu
	∅	zero see IB
	~	see IIB
	[[]]	see IIA
	[]	additional information

ABBREVIATIONS AND LABELLING

I Linguistic Functions

A Word Classes (Parts of Speech)

<u>adj.</u>	adjective
<u>adv.</u>	adverb/ial (with verb)
<u>" m.</u>	" of manner
<u>" p.</u>	" of place
<u>" t.</u>	" of time
<u>art.</u>	article (definite or non-definite)
<u>intensifier</u>	"adverb of degree" with adjective or adverb (not verb) e. g. <u>baie</u> (qv)
<u>interj.</u>	exclamation, interjection
<u>modifier</u>	a word or phrase (not an adjective) qualifying a noun
<u>n.</u>	noun
<u>n. abstr.</u>	abstract noun
<u>n. modifier</u>	noun used to modify (qualify) another noun
<u>n. prop.</u>	proper noun or proper name ⁺
<u>prep.</u>	preposition
<u>prn.</u>	pronoun
<u>vb</u>	verb
<u>vb intrns.</u>	intransitive or non-transitive verb [*]
<u>vb trns</u>	transitive verb

+ n. prop. is used both for proper nouns which signify one and only one specific entity or person e. g. Dr Johnson, and for proper names of places or persons which are nevertheless used as common 'count' nouns e. g. 'There is a Rietfontein in every province', or 'There are lots of Browns in the telephone directory.'

* vb intrns. is used both for verbs of complete predication, and for non-transitive verbs which cannot take a passive transformation but nevertheless require a complement.

B Other Linguistic Signals

agent. suff.	agentive suffix, usually <u>-er</u> as in <u>teacher</u> marking the doer or performer of the action designated by a verb.
analg.	analogy, analogous
angl.	anglicisation (of form)
attrib.	attributive/ly; of a noun modifier (see Section IA) or of an inflected form of the adjective e. g. <u>verkrampste</u> (qv)
cogn.	cognate with, used of words of common or related origin.
demon.	demonstrative
deriv.	derived (with <u>fr.</u>) or derivatively
dimin.	diminutive (usually with suff.)

etym.	etymology
idiom.	idiom/atic/ally
imp.	imperative, of verbs and verb phrases
indef.	indefinite/non-definite of articles or pronouns
inflect.	inflected (form), inflection
lit.	literal/ly
neg.	negative, of form or structure
object	object (of a verb), see Obj. Section IIA
partic.	participle or participial, or verb or phrase
pass.	passive
personif.	personifying, usually of suffixes, see also agent. suff. Section IB
phr.	phrase
predic.	predicative, of form of adjective e.g. <u>verlig</u> (qv), or of position of other modifier e.g. <u>These animals are off the veld.</u> (sign. veld-reared)
prefix	prefix
pl.	plural
qn	question
rel.	related to, relative
sing.	singular
subj.	subject of a verb
suff.	suffix
trans.	translation of
translit.	transliteration of
vb phr.	verb phrase, phrasal verb
vbl	verbal as in <u>vbl n.</u>
∅	zero, usually of a plural, e.g. <u>bontebok</u> , usu. names of game, wild animals, fish or birds

Any of these which appear in the head material of an entry may be italicised, e.g. imp. vb phr.

II Usage Signals

A Status Labels

Coll.	Colloquial: informal in speech <u>or</u> writing
Hist.	Historical: of or pertaining to historical institutions or phenomena, the word being still in use, compare Obs. below
Obj.	Objectionable among certain groups
Obs.	Obsolete, no longer in use
Reg.	Regional. This label is at all times tentatively used for SAE.
Sect.	Sectional, jargon of certain occupational, professional, trade or other groups. [see subsection below.]
Slang	Slang usage, seldom found written
Substand.	Substandard usage, usually grammatical, translated structures or transliterated forms, not often nouns.
Unacctp.	Unacceptable: "not in decent use". (Shorter Oxford English Dictionary)

[[]] Double brackets indicate that the label or item between them is tentative and applied or included with reservations
 [] Additional information is enclosed in single square brackets.

Sectional

Bldg. Building trade, plumbing etc.
 Farm. Farming terms, country use
 Mining Terms peculiar to gold and diamond mining
 Jewish Terms in use mostly among the Jewish group
 Army Terms in use mainly in the Army

B Other

abbr. abbreviation
 acc. according to
 advt. advertisement
 Afr. African
 Apr. April
 Aug. August
 C Century e.g. C18
 cf. compare/contrast
 cit. cited by
 C. of G. H. Cape of Good Hope
 Dec. December
 dub. doubtful, dubious
 edit. edition, if preceded by date e.g. 1973 edit.
 edited by if followed by name e.g. edit. Gordon-Brown
 e.g. for example (exempli gratia)
 equiv. equivalent to/of
 erron. erroneous/ly
 esp. especially
 etc. et/cetera
 Feb. February
 figur. figurative/ly
 fr. from
 freq. frequently
 ibid. ibidem, the same, usu. of a source of quotation
 i. e. id est, that is
 Jan. January
 Mar. March
 MS. manuscript
 Nov. November
 N. S. E. W. North/ern, South/ern, East/ern, West/ern
 occ. occasionally
 Oct. October
 onomat. onomatopoeic
 orig. originally
 poss. possibly
 presum. presumably

prob.	probably
pron.	pronunciation
pub.	published by/in
quot.	quotation
(qv)	which see (quod vide)
S. A.	South Africa
S. Afr.	South African
Sept.	September
sic	thus; bracketed after spelling or other error.
sign.	signifying/meaning
sp.	spelling
usu.	usually
~	swing dash used instead of a repetition of the head word.

C Category Numbers

These are more precise usage labels for those who are interested, to show into what section or sections of the vocabulary certain items fall. [These require the ready reference table on the back end papers for simple workability.]

A number preceding a definition or part of a definition is that of the category to which the word belongs. Many words fall into more than one category and are numbered accordingly:

e. g. Assegai n. 20, 2, 26.

~ wood 18

assegai vb trns. usu. pass. 29vb, 20.

Note: A detailed index of these and their component classes precedes the categorised word lists.

- 1 Address, Modes of
- 2 African World
- 3 Birds (non-domestic)
- 4 Church and State
 - 4a Church
 - 4b State, Politics and Law
- 5 Clothing and Footwear
- 6 'Creatures', Non-Domestic Animals, Reptiles etc.
- 7 Dishes and Cookery
- 8 Drinking and Smoking
- 9 Exclamations and Expletives
- 10 Expressions, Idiom, Colloquialisms
- 11 Farming and Domestic Animals
- 12 Fish
- 13 Flowers
- 14 Fruit and Vegetables
- 15 Games, Dances and Diversions
- 16 Health, Moods, Medicine and Witchcraft
- 17 Historical Administration
- 18 House and Garden, Building and Buildings
- 19 Human types : Persons and Family

- 20 Hunting, Weapons and War
 21 Insects
 22 Landscape and Topography
 23 Languages and Tribes
 24 Monetary Units and Measures
 25 Oriental South Africa
 26 Pioneering and Settlement
 27 Place Names
 27a Topographical Nouns, (Town and Country)
 27b Abstract Nouns
 27c Nouns : Flora, Plant Names
 27d Nouns : Fauna, Names of Living Things
 27e Other Nouns and Pronouns
 27f Verbs
 27g Participles of Verbs
 27h Directions, N. S. E. W.
 27i Adjectives, General
 27j Adjectives, Colour
 27k A/P/A. Adjective/Preposition/Adverb
 27l Article
 28 Plants
 29 Syntax: All non-nouns are assigned a 'Syntactic'
 category.
 29adj.
 29adv.
 29art.
 29modifier See IA
 29vb
 29intensifier See IA
 29prep.
 29prn. (for pronoun or pseudo-pronoun)
 29A/P/A Adjective/Preposition/Adverb in the case
 of 'multi-purpose' words which have all
 three functions
 29interj.
 29red. Redundant (often for substandard items)
 30 Trade, Mining and Law
 31 Travel and Vehicles
 32 Trees and Shrubs
 33 Weather
 34 Writing, Education and the Arts

III Other English Dialects and Other Languages

A Dialects and Other Forms

- Ang. Ind. Anglo-Indian English
 Austr. Australian English
 Brit. British English (used of dialect or 'standard')
 Canad. Canadian English

Hong K.	Hong Kong English
N. Z.	New Zealand English
SAE	South African English
U.S.	American English (United States)
Scottish	Scottish English
dial.	Dialect/al usu. non-standard form
[A.E.]	African English, i. e. typical of the English spoken and written by Africans in S. A.
[I. E.]	Indian English, i. e. the forms used by Indians in S. A., mostly Natal.
Jam. E.	Jamaican English

B Languages

Afk.	Afrikaans
Bantu	Bantu languages including the Nguni group
Arab.	Arabic
Du.	Dutch, Nederlands
Eng.	English
Fr.	French
Ger.	German
Gk.	Greek
Hebr.	Hebrew
Hott.	Hottentot
Japanese	
Lat.	Latin
Malay	
Nama Hott.	Nama Hottentot
Ngu.	Nguni (Zulu, Xhosa, Swazi)
O. E.	Old English (Anglo Saxon)
Port.	Portuguese
Span.	Spanish
Sotho	(Sesuto)
Xh.	Xhosa
Yiddish	
Zu.	Zulu
O.E.D.	Oxford English Dictionary, if Shorter O.E.D., Pocket O.E.D. or O.E.D. Supplement, this is specified.

It is to be regretted that in Volumes II and III it has been necessary to insert a large number of handwritten addenda. This has been primarily occasioned by the fact that the full, amended typescript prepared for the publisher only came to hand after the two volumes of Part II were already bound. It has seemed preferable, nevertheless, not to sacrifice this material, once it again became available, to the outward appearance of the work.

Certain other handwritten addenda, it will be seen, have appeared very recently in magazines or newspapers and have been included, usually where illustrative quotations were lacking or inadequate, for the sake of completeness.

The Latin names of the birds and creatures listed in Chapter IV, 4.2, according to the newest available taxonomy, which supersede those given in the text, are written beside the relevant entries, even if there has been no change in the nomenclature.

It is hoped that these expansions and alterations will not be an inconvenience to the reader.

JB.

The present orthographic convention in the scientific names of fauna is that when a species is named for an individual the proper name is given with a lower-case initial letter e. g. Gyps kolbii, Centropus superciliosus burchellii.

In the names of flora, however, proper names of persons are capitalised e. g. Solanum Burchellii, Striga Forbesii, but those of countries or areas are not e. g. Agave americana, Tecoma capensis.

Corrections in the text have been made as far as possible according to this ruling (confirmed 30. 11. 75 by Professor B. R. Allanson, head of the Department of Zoölogy, and former Dean of Science of Rhodes University).

A CONCISE DICTIONARY OF SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH

A

a, art.

29red. see article, redundant.

aand- [ɑ:nt] n. prefix.

28, 27e. see avond-

aandag ['ɑ:n,dax] interj.

9, 30. Attention: used with double intention in advertising 'smalls', primarily in order to head the column alphabetically.

Motoring For Sale Aandag: Aandag: Aandag: Popular Car Sales E. Province Herald 12. 8. 74

[Afk. fr. Du. aandacht cf. Ger. Achtung]

aandblom ['ɑ:nt,blɔ̃m] n. pl. -me

13. Any of several flower species, including varieties of Hesperantha and Gladiolus, which emit their strongest scent towards evening. Also known as aandpypie. [Afk. fr. Du. avond = evening + blōm^(a) = flower, cogn. bloom, pypie cogn. pipe + dimin. suff. ie]

aap [ɑ p] n. dimin. apie pl. -s

6. Monkey: suffixed to the names of some primates or plants; nagapie (qv).6, apiesdoring (qv), aapsekos (food) Gardenia Rothmannia, aapstertsteekgras see steekgras 28; also in place name Apiesrivier 27d. [Afk. fr. Du. aap = monkey cogn. ape]

aapsnuif ['ɑ p,snoeif] n.

28. Lycoperdon hyemale see devil's snuff box 28. [Afk. aap, here prob. = inferior, bogus + snuif cogn. snuff]

aar [ɑ:(r)] n.

22. An underground watercourse often indicated by more luxuriant surface growth above it. Also in place name De Aar 27a. bossie 28 generic name of plants preferring this habitat.

The aarbosje, or "water-finder", Selago leptostachya, ... is a useful forage plant for goats, being a stand-by in times of drought. It is found generally on gebroken veld ... Wallace, Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896.

[Afk. fr. Du. ader = bloodvessel cogn. artery]

aardvark ['ɑ rt,fa(r)k] n. pl. φ, (-s)

6. The African ant-bear Orycteropus afer, a burrowing, insectivorous mammal of nocturnal habits.

... the great ant-eater is found throughout every part of South Africa. This animal ... is called by the Dutch colonists the Aardvark or earth pig. It burrows underground making large holes ... It is destitute of teeth, and lives entirely upon ants. Thompson Travels in S. Africa II 1827

[Afk. fr. Du. erd/aard = earth + vark = pig]

aardwolf ['ɑ (r)t,vɔlf] n.

6. Proteles cristata the hyena dog, maned jackal, often called maanhaar (mane) jakkals. See quot. at wolf 6, also strandwolf 6.

When outspanned for the night, our dogs started an Aard Wolf (Proteles Lalandii) from the long grass, pursued it and brought it to bay. Leyland Adventures in the Far Interior of S. A. 1866

[Afk. aard/erd = earth + wolf = hyena]

aas [ɑ s] n. prefix and n.

(1) Carrion: prefixed to names of plants ~blom (qv) 13, ~bossie 28, ~kelk 28, ~uintjie 28, and bird aasvoël (qv) 3.

(2) 12. Bait: usu. combination rooi-aas (qv) 12.

Fishermen from George who recently made the observation that good old red bait, or "rooi aas" might possibly be an aphrodisiac, are perhaps on the threshold of some scientific discovery! Evening Post 3.3.73

[Afk. fr. Du. aas = bait, carrion]

aasblom ['ɑ s,blɔm] n. pl. -me.

13. Carrion flower: any of several species of Stapelia having a smell like putrid flesh which attracts flies and other insects; see also bokhorinkie 13.

[Afk. fr. Du. aas = bait, carrion + blom = flower cogn. bloom]

aasvoël ['ɑ s,fvɛl] n. pl. -s

3. Vulture: any of several species of large scavenger, including Aegypiidae and Cathartidae esp. Gyps kolbii *Gyps coprotheres (G. kolbii etc.)*

I remember the shining eyes and the scampering shapes of hares and there was the slow but startled flutter skywards of the aasvoëls disturbed from their carrion ... Birkby Thirstland Treks 1936

[Afk. aas = carrion + voël fr. Du. vogel = bird cogn. fowl]

abafazi [ˌaba'fazi] pl. n.

2, 19, (18). Women: ^{a sign} commonly seen on African women's public lavatories. See quot. at fazi 19; 2, (u)mfazi 2, 19,

The first thing that hits the eye are the signboards "Blacks only" wherever you look. Here and there behind some backstreet bush there will be "White Amadodas this way" and "White Abafazis the other way." Drum July 1971

[Ngu. pl. prefix aba + fazi = woman, wife]

abakhweta [,aba'kweta] pl. n. (occ. -s)

2, 19. Recently circumcised Xhosa initiates to manhood, living apart from other people for a certain period and usu. daubed with white clay. cf. Austr. kipper aboriginal initiate.

... this year more than 200 abakwetha were in the bush. Included in this number were many youths from institutions and colleges who took advantage of the long summer holidays to qualify for manhood in the bush. E. Province Herald 16. 2. 74

[Xh. pl. prefix aba + kweta fr. umkwetha = a circumcised youth]

abba ['aba] vb usu. trns. also n.

(1) 29vb. to carry (a child) on the back.

(2) 15. n. a pick-a-back (, piggy-back) ride.

The name given to this new industrial growth point is Babelegi a word which in Setswana is derived from "abba": to carry a baby on one's back. A visit to Babelegi explains the choice ... At Babelegi industrialists and workers really "abba" each other. Panorama Apr. 1974

[Nama Hott. awa = to carry, also Bushman aba = carry]

abelungu [,abe'lungu] pl. n.

2, 19. See quot. at umlungu 2, 19, 1. [Ngu. pl prefix abe + lungu = white people]

ace, (all) on my, adv. m. phr.

10. Also Austral. On my own, or by my ^{self} ~~own efforts~~: see eis, on my.

ach, interj.

9. usu. ag (qv) 9.

"Ach! Don't be so frightened, man" ... "Don't be a blerry fool. Sit!" Gordon Four People 1964

actuaris ['aktju'arɪəs] n.

4a, 19. An official of the Dutch Reformed Church Synod, also occ. actuary.

The Synodical Commission Is composed of the Moderator, the Scriba, the Actuaris, five acting ministers, and three elders or retired elders nominated by the Synod. Cape Town Directory for 1866

[Lat. actuaris = an amanuensis, a keeper of accounts or records]

adjective with infinitive

Substand. 10, 29 adj. Trans. fr. Afk. in inappropriate English contexts, e. g. I am lazy to get up (Ek is lui om op te staan).

The leaves ... soon drop to the ground leaving the tree rather stark and bare but quite capable to withstand even the severest frost. Farmer's Weekly 30. 5. 73

[trans. as above]

administrator, n. pl. -s usu. capitalised.

4b, 19. The chief executive officer in each province "in whose name all executive acts relating to provincial affairs therein shall be done" S. Africa Act 1909.

A Grahamstown resident ... has appealed to the Administrator to request the mayor to call a meeting of ratepayers. ... Mr — is hoping for action from the Administrator in terms of section 259 of the Cape Municipal Ordinance. E. Province Herald 2.8.74

~~advokaat~~ [ˌadvr'kat -vō- -vr-] n.

8. A thick, sweet Dutch liqueur of egg yolks and brandy, see quot.

How can we make our own Advokaat liqueur ^v [sic]? ADVOKAAT
6 egg yolks 1 cup sugar 1/4 teaspoon vanilla essence 2 or more
wineglasses brandy, Farmer's Weekly 27.2.74

[Afk. sp. fr. Du. advocaat abbr. advocatenborrel = advocates + drink]

aeroplane, the, n.

2, 8. See ai-ai 2, 8.

afdak [ˈaf,dak] n. pl. -s.

18, 11. A lean-to, shed or shelter; also loosely used of any plain, sloping roof without a pitch. cf. Ang. Ind. and Hong K. godown, store, warehouse, and Austr. skillion (skilling), lean to.

Nice house, except for the afdak ... Kimberley Informant 1970

[Afk. af = down + dak = roof]

afloop [ˈaf,lʊəp] n.

11. Run-off water from saturated ground, which can fill dams.

After their irrigation turns, the farmers get the afloop ... N.E. Cape Informant 1970

[Afk. af = down + loop fr. Du. lopen = run, flow cogn. lope]

Africa, for, attrib. phr. after n.

Coll. 24, 10, 29adj. Used to indicate a vast, unspecified number or amount e. g. money ~ .

There are still bottles for Africa around but in the not too distant future glass of any variety will be a thing of the past. Cape Argus 3.10.70

African, n. pl. -s and adj.

(1) 19. A black, i. e. negroid, inhabitant of S. A. officially designated Bantu (qv) 4b, 19, by the Department of Interior.

The terms African, Bantu and Native will be used as synonymous terms when discussing the Negroes of South Africa. All white people in South Africa, whether or not born in Europe, are referred to as Europeans. Longmore The Dispossessed 1959

You can imagine the embarrassment when our educated people like teachers, professional men and others have to grit their teeth and speak of themselves and their people as Bantu, whose use is neither African nor grammatical. "We are Africans and want to be called so." Evening Post 16.3.73.

(2) 29adj. Of or pertaining to such persons, their languages or cultures.

Africana [ˌɑfrɪˈkənə, æf-] collective n. usu. capitalised.

18. Books, pictures, furniture and objets d'art of S. Afr. provenance or interest. ~ in the making, used of contemporary art or writing considered likely to last; see quot. at Cape Triangular 18.

Africana is the term used for all those items, large and small, of historical importance and interest to southern Africa, although not necessarily made or manufactured in this country. These rarities and antiquities include stamps, medals, books, musical instruments, implements, costumes, paintings, silver, glass, porcelain, china, carvings, furniture, clocks, watches and other memorabilia of our cultural heritage. The 1820 Feb. 1974

[Lat. adj. Africanus -a, -um = of Africa, African]

African Court Calendar, n. prop.

Hist. Obs. 17. See Court Calendar 17.

Africander [ɑfrɪˈkændə(r), æf-, -kænd-] n. pl. -s, also n. modifier.

(1) 11. Tall, indigenous, humped usu. red (qv) cattle with long horns; particularly hardy and resistant to disease, used as a beef breed and for draught purposes; see trek ox and quot. at red, Zebu 11. Attrib. ~ type cattle.

Afrikander cattle, the only breed indigenous to South Africa, have always been the foundation of the country's beef industry. Panorama July 1971

(2) 11. Often attrib. ~ sheep. The indigenous Cape or fat-tailed sheep (qv) also known as ronderib 11.

Africanders. For Sale Ronderib blinkhaar Africander rams R30 and studs R75. Also young ewes at R25, The mothers of these sheep weigh up to 180lb. live weight. Farmer's Weekly 27.2.74

(3) 19. (obs.) Afrikaner, (qv) 19, see quot. at Dutch 23.

African Hotel, n. Travellers' or

Obs. (18), 26, 31. Colonists' term for a rough-and-ready usu. country hostelry in S. A. cf. Canad. stopping house, keepover.

We put up at an African Hotel. Such places were to be found in all parts of the Colony, from 20 to 40 miles apart, the proprietors of which were invariably large cattle and sheep breeders. Buck Adams Narrative 1884

African print, n.

(1) See Kaffir print 5.

(2) See Swazi print 5.

African time, n. phr.

Coll. and [A.E.] 10, 24, 2. An hour or two late: jocular sometimes disparaging reference to the unpunctuality of Africans (qv) or black people generally.* cf. C.P.T. Coloured People's Time. Informant John Nqobo, Durban.

Two-fifteen African Time means four o'clock. K. Mackenzie A Dragon to Kill 1963

During its brief life [100 years] Afrikaans, once a child of protest and dissent has triumphed over public contempt and private slight, to become the mother tongue of the majority of White and Brown men in this corner of the sub-continent. Sunday Times 17. 8. 75

In 1974 the Pretoria Government Education Department ruled that students in Soweto's schools - about 250 of them serve at least 200,000 pupils in triple shifts - must take some subjects in Afrikaans, the Dutch-based language that is one of the two official languages for white South Africa. Time 28. 6. 76

Afrikaans [ˈɑfrɪˈkɑns] n. prop. and n. modifier

(1) 23. The language of the Afrikaner (qv) people, evolved as a distinct language from what was formerly known as Cape Dutch (qv) 23, one of the two official languages of S. A. (see bilingual 4b). *See addenda p. 581.*

Afrikaans The language of the Afrikaner, a much simplified and beautiful version of the language of Holland, though it is held in contempt by some ignorant English-speaking South Africans, and indeed by some Hollanders. Afrikaans and English are the two official languages of the Union of South Africa. Alan Paton Cry, the Beloved Country 1948
In frequent combination ~ speaking.

... many immigrant wives would like to get jobs, but they don't speak Afrikaans, and find it difficult to get jobs in predominantly Afrikaans-speaking areas in the country. The 1820 Apr. 1971

(2) 23, 29adj. Of or pertaining to the language or its speakers.

Afrikaans words like trek, kop, donga, dorp and drift - hill, gully, village, and ford - used by the war correspondents, brought the African veld into the parlours of Brixton and the pubs of Highgate. Stuart Cloete Rags of Glory 1963

And we were very Afrikaans - but the old type of Afrikaner, not the kind one sees today. Sunday Tribune 1.4.73
[fr. Afrika]

Afrikaans farm n. pl. -s

34. A farm where only Afrikaans (qv) 23 is spoken, open during school vacations to English-speaking children as paying guests, enabling them to combine language learning with a farm holiday.

Addresses of Afrikaans Farms are: ... Grahamstown Headmistress's letter 1973

Afrikander, see Africander

¹Afrikaner [ˈɑfrɪˈkɑnə(r)] n. prop., n. prefix and adj.

(1) 19. An Afrikaans (qv) speaking S. African. See quot. at ¹Dutch 19 and (2) Afrikaans 23, 29adj.

(2) n. prefix 4b. ~ dom [ˌdɔm] n. abstr. the patriotic spirit of the ~ or the ~ nation. cf. Christendom. 4b. ~ skap, the state of being an ~. [suff. cogn. Eng. -ship]

(3) 29adj. Of or pertaining to the ~ people or nation. See (2) Afrikaans 29adj. [Afrikaan(s) + personif. suff. -er cf. Britisher].

²Afrikaner n. pl. -s

13. Any of several indigenous species of Gladiolus including those of the aandblom (qv) 13 having various colours, brown ~, pink ~, also sandveldlelie 13, red ~.

Afrikanerism [ˈɑfrɪˈkɑnərɪzəm] n. pl. -s

23, 34. A linguistic usage transferred from Afrikaans to English cf. Americanism, Canadianism etc. formerly Africanderism (obs).

Afriks ['af,rɪks, 'ɒf-] n. prop.

Coll. 23, 34, among Eng. speaking children: Afrikaans language and literature as a school subject, see also ⁽³⁾Boet 23, 34, (3)Dutch 23. Also Aprix

I got another result today, Afriks, and I got 57% - not bad considering ... Letter Schoolgirl aged 16 9.7.74

[abbr. of Afrikaans]

afslag ['af,slax] n.

Hist. 30. Downward bidding, a term for an early Dutch method of auctioneering, see opslag, also strykgeld 30.

... the property was sold by afslag, or downward bidding. The auctioneer then asked for a buyer at a figure generally about double that of the highest bid. When there was no response he gradually lowered the figure until someone shouted out "Mine" and the deal was concluded. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

[Afk. fr. Du. afslag = reducing auction]

aftelrympie ['aftel,reɪmpɪ] n. pl. -s

34. A 'counting-out' rhyme; a verse, usu. for children, cautionary or mnemonic usu. based on the alphabet or numbers: cf. Rudyard Kipling 'A Counting Out Song' (Eenee, Meenee, Mainee, Mo!). [Afk. af = down + tel = count cogn. tell + rym cogn. rhyme + dimin. suff. -pie]

afterclap n. pl. -s

31, 26. The tailboard or the canvas flap at the rear of the tent of a covered wagon.

He was mending the afterclap of the wagon, stitching it up where it was torn, and they were helping him and playing about him. Stuart Cloete Hill of Doves 1942

[trans. Afk. agter fr. Du. achter = hind + klap = flap]

afterox, n. pl. -en

31, 26, 11. One of the hindmost pair in a span (qv) of draught oxen: equivalent of 'wheeler' in a team of horses. cf. Jam. E. tongue cattle Austr. poler

I remember some of them now far better than many of the men known then and since: Achmoed and Bakir, the big after-oxen who carried the disselboom contentedly through the trek and were spared all other work to save them for emergencies. Fitzpatrick Jock of the Bushveld 1907 1909 edit

[trans. agteros (qv) 11, 31]

ag [ax] interj.

9. Oh: a frequent exclamation expressing various moods often indicating irritation or exasperation if used alone or in combination with man (qv) 19, 9 or sis (sies) (qv) 9, see also quot. at ach 9.

'Ag, old Bushes,' ... 'he won't fight all three of us. And I am myself quite strong. Marie Philip Caravan Caravel 1973

[Afk. fr. Du. ach as in Ger.]

again, adv. particle

[[Substand]] 29red. Used incorrectly or redundantly, not signifying repetition but as a type of intensifier roughly equiv. to 'really' or 'indeed'. In direct trans. fr. Afk. weer e.g. That is something else again (Dit is weer iets anders).

The kudu have magnificent horns but the ewes none, and the impala the same, but the springbok ewes have horns again like the hontebok ewes.
Farmer Carlisle Bridge 28.5.72

Cold in London is nothing new, a cold in the head is something else again. Fair Lady 6.9.71

[trans. Afk. weer = again, yet]

¹agter- [ˈaxtə(r)] adj. prefix

29adj. Hind, rear: commonly prefixed to nouns, usu. with equiv. form with prefix voor- (fore) (qv) cf. fore deck, after deck, e.g. karos 5, see kaross; kis 31, 26, 18, see wakis; laaier 20 (qv); ryer 19, 31 rider; slag (qv) 31; skot (qv) 11, 30.

²agter-

27k. Back, behind: found in place names usu. as adj. prefix to n. e.g. Agtersneeuberg, Agtertang, Agterplaas.

[Afk. fr. Du. achter cogn. after]

agterlaaier [ˈaxtə(r),laɪə(r)] n. pl. -s

20. Rifle: a breech loader: see also voorlaaier 20.

That there should have been an alternative to the rifle was due to the fact that the law was made at a time when only a few burghers possessed breech-loading rifles, achterlaaiers, as we call them. General De Wet Three Years War 1903 cit. C. P. Swart Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934

[Afk. agter fr. Du. achter = hind, rear + laai fr. Du. laden = load + agent. suff. -er]

agteros [ˈaxtər,ɔ̃s] n.

(1) 31, 26. See quot. at after-ox 31, 26.

(2) 10, 19, figur. [Coll.] a plodder; see also sukkelaar cf. Austr. battler: also one who lags behind as in Afk. proverb 'kom ook in die kraal.' roughly equiv. to 'slow but sure'.

[Afk. fr. Du. achter = hind, rear cogn. after + os cogn. ox]

agterskot [ˈaxtə(r),skɔ̃t] n.

30, 11. Final payment: see quot. at voorskot 30, 11.

... woolgrowers were losing interest on the "agterskot" which would only be paid out at the end of the wool season. Evening Post 30.9.72

[Afk. agter cogn. after skot cogn. shot sign. payment]

agterslag [ˈaxtə(r),slax] n. pl. -s

31, 11. The thong or lash of a whip: see quot. at voorslag 31, 11. [Afk. fr. Du. achter = hind + slag = lash]

aia ['aɪə] n. pl. -s

(1) 19. Child's nurse, usu. coloured, or an old coloured woman: see quot. at ayah 19.

(2) 1. occ. mode of address with first name; feminine of outa; see quot. at outa, 1, 19. cf. Ang. Ind. ayah, nursemaid, servant, Hong K. amah, female servant.

[Port. aia = nursemaid prob. fr. Hindi aya = female servant]

ai-ai ['aɪ, aɪ] n.

8, 2. Absolute alcohol used for lacing drinks illicitly and sometimes causing death; also known as aeroplane, the 8 and mpala-mpala.

... a couple collapsed and died in an Orlando West shebeen after drinking a scale of maiza doped with deadly ai-ai. Post 18. 1. 70

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Xh. hayi = no]

aid centre, n.

2, 4b. A centre to which cases of persons arrested on pass offences are referred for investigation and assistance: see also quot. (Time) at pass 4b.

It came to his notice soon after that the identification documents ... had not been re-submitted to the Aid Centre for further investigation. In terms of a Ministerial directive all Africans arrested for petty offences such as a failure to produce a reference book, should first be referred to an Aid Centre so that their cases are investigated. E. Province Herald 8. 3. 74

aikona ['aɪ, kɔnə, ,aɪ'kɔnə] interj.

Coll. 9, 2. An emphatic negative 'never!' or 'not on your life!' cf. Austr. baal, bale.

Boesman: You mean that day you get a bloody good hiding

Lena: Aikona! I'll go to the Police

Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969

Idiomatic? Aikona - it's idiotic! ... If that is the way to teach a boy to speak his home language then, aikona, I'd rather he didn't learn it. E. Province Herald 15. 9. 71

[Ngu. hayi = no + khona = be here, present]

akkedis [,akə'dɛs] n.

6. ^{Reptile:} applied loosely to most small, quick lizards.

Akadijs or properly hagedis is a very vague definition as the name is applied to all species of lizard. Scientific African 1896 cit. Pettman

[Afk. fr. Du. hagedis = reptile, lizard]

akkewani [akə'vɑni] n.

28. A plant of the genus Andropogon with odorous roots used when dried to discourage moth.

The creeping and fibrous roots of this grass have a peculiar and rather ferulaceous smell. By the name of Akarwanie they are known to most colonists, and serve as a sure preventive against the destruction of wearing apparel etc. by moths and other noxious vermin. Ludwig van Pappé in C. of G. H. Almanac for 1856.

[Malay akar = root + wangi = fragrant]

aiderman, n. pl. -men

4b, 9. See raadsheer 4b: not equiv. of Brit. ~ .

alfkoord ['alf,kvə(r)t] n.

12. One of several corruptions of albacore, the edible fish Seriola lalandii also known as halfkoord. [fr. albacore prob. fr. Arab. albuqr = young camel]

algemene handelaar ['alxə,mɪənə 'handəla r] n.

30. See general dealer.

At one time the 'algemene handelaar' was as much a part of the South African countryside as the sunshine and the wide, open spaces. But today there are only a few left. Panorama April 1974

[Afk. algemeen(e) = general + attrib. suff. + handelaar = trader]

alie ['ali] n. pl. -s

15. A marble; cf. Eng. and U.S. ally, blood-ally: see also ghoen, ironie, yakkie. 15. cr. Canad. smoke alley.

... two boys were content to stand looking on. Both had sold all their ghoens and allies to swell the P.E. School feeding fund. E. Province Herald 3.4.72

[fr. Du. albast, Lat albastrum = marble]

alikeukel [,ali'krīœkəl] n. pl. -s

12. An edible periwinkle or sea snail of the Litorinidae, also known as arikreukel, ollycroek; see quot.

The fiesta is one of the social highlights of the year in Mossel Bay. The menu will include Danish mussels, oysters, chokka, crayfish thermidor, nasi goreng and arikreukel, a delicacy much favoured by gourmets. Het Suid Western 17.5.71

[Gk. (h)aliochlos = sea snail]

ali-shop ['ali,ʃɒp] n. pl. -s

30. A usu. Malay (qv) 19, 25 -owned fruiterer's shop. [fr. Ali, Muslim n. prop. + shop]

allemagtig [,alə'maxtɪx] interj.

See magtig 9.

alles- [a'ləs] indef. prn.

27e, ^{29p, 10.} Everything, all: found in place names usu. of farms prefix to partic. as in Allesverloren (lost); also in idioms see below. [Afk. alles cogn. all]

alles sal regkom ['aləs, sal'rex, kōm] idiom.

10, Afk. saying 'Everything will resolve itself, turn out well'. An optimistic or consolatory remark; see come right 29vb, 10, and quot. at moenie worry 29vb, 10. ^X [Afk. alles = everything + sal = will + reg = right + kom = come]

alles van die beste ['aləs, fan dɪ 'bestə] idiom.

10. All the best: usu. a farewell greeting.

There are handshakes, warmly grasped elbows and deep, meaningful looks. Totsiens! Alles van die beste, oom! Cape Argus 28.10.72

[Afk. lit. all of the best]

allewêreld [ˌalə've:rəlt] interj.

9. An exclamation, usu. of surprise cf. allemagtig; see magtig 9.

And what a catch! Alle Wêreld! Surely there had never been such a catch - kabeljou, geelbek, Roman, stompneus, Miss Lucy, Hottentot and steenbras. Meiring Candle in the Wind 1959

[Afk. alle = all + wêreld cogn. world]

alligator pear, n. pl. -s

14. Corruption of anacado pear poss. [I.E.], also Jam. E. and Ang. Ind. 10, 29^{prn.}

all two, prn.

Substand. 10. Both. Both.

We ran and said here come all two hakkelaars to see you. They both talked at once. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

[translit. Afk. altwee = both]

almanac [ˈɔlmənæk, ˌalmaˈnak] n. pl. -s

Hist. 17. The early Court Calendar, directory cum handbook produced at the Cape from 1801 onwards; see quot. at Court Calendar 17, 34.

The South African Journal is also published every two months, besides two almanacks of an excellent character every year. Webster Voyage I 1834

13. Kaffir ~; two flowers Haemanthus Katherinae and H. magnificus the flowering period of which is said to be taken by some Africans to be the correct sowing time for crops. [Du. almanak = calendar]

aloe [ˈæ,ləʊ] n. pl. -s

28. Generic name for a large number of species of African aloe and for certain other superficially similar genera e.g. Agave, the 'American ~' see garingboom, 32, 11; ~ juice 16, 30 still produced commercially esp. fr. the sap of A. ferox for the manufacture of the drug Aloes: see quot. at sea-cat 12.

already, adv. t.

Substand. 29red. 10; used redundantly or in deviant word- or time- sequence in S.A.E. e.g. 'He came when I was asleep already.'

... the old Baas had told her to pay for the sugar and coffee she had bought three weeks ago already! Meiring Candle in the Wind 1959

[trans. Afk. al = already, yet, before now, a particle used for indicating perfective e.g. Ek het dit gedoen = I did it, Ek het dit al gedoen = I have done it (already).]

amaas [aˈmaːs] n.

7, 2. see maas.

amabunu [ama'bunu] pl. n.

19, 2. African name for the Afrikaners (Boers), usu. derogatory.

One chief told me he would like nothing better than to be allowed to lead an impi against the Amabuna (Boers.) Mitford Through the Zulu Country ... 1883 cit. Jeffreys 1970

[Zu. pl. prefix ama + bunu fr. Afk. boer]

amadhlozi [,ama'dlozi] pl. n.

2. Also amatongo^x: ancestral spirits: see quot. at amatongo 2.

To qualify as a top witchdoctor, he had to leave town life to call his amadhlozi (spirits) of his dead ancestors near a spruit at Protea. Post 28. 4. 68^x

^x imishologu and izinyanya among Xh. speakers.

[Zu. pl. prefix ama + (i)dhlozi = ancestral spirit]

amadoda [ama'doda] pl. n. occ. pl. -s

2, 19, (18). Grown men: also sign on African men's public lavatories: see quot. at abafazi 2, 19, (18).

The rite of circumcision is performed on all the young men at the age of sixteen who are thus made men or amadodas. Bisset Sport and War in Africa 1875

[Ngu. pl. prefix ama + (in)doda = grown man]

amagoduka [,amagõ'du:ga, -ka] pl. n.

2, 19, 30 Migrant labourers: 'returning ones' who go home at regular intervals.

Hundreds of Amagoduka - migrant labourers - went on the rampage in Langa on Saturday night hitting everyone in sight with knob-kerries. E. Province Herald 26. 3. 73

[Ngu. pl. prefix ama + goduka = to return home]

amajoni [,ama'dzoni] pl. n.

19, 20, 2. African term for white soldiers, also amasoja.

When the amajoni are mustered ... the trumpet is blown. Mitford Romance of the Cape Frontier 1891 cit. Pettman

[Ngu. pl. prefix ama + (i)joni poss. fr. Johnny, aalg. 'Tommy', or fr. vb. ukujoina fr. Eng. join]

amadumbi [,ama'dumbi] pl. n.

14, 2. See madumbi 14, 2.

amalaita [,ama'laita] pl. n. occ. pl. -s

2 19. Street thugs operating after dark, or stick fighters; see also tsotsi 19, 2.

... he was beaten up by the amelitas, and now he feels that the gay life is overrated ... Cowin Bushveld, Bananas and Bounty 1954

[Ngu. pl. prefix ama + laita fr.]

- layitha (Zu), a street desperado, hooligan, acc. same fr. Eng vb. 'biter' more prob. rel. Eng. 'light' fr. use of flashlight on victims: also poss. rel. 'lout.]

ama'gama, [ama'kabati] pl. n.
See Gaba.

CARISSA

amatungulu ['ama,tũŋ'gulũ] pl. n.

14. 2. The tart-flavoured scarlet fruit of Carissa macrocarpa, a spiny plant popular for hedges: the fruit, also known as Natal plum and noem-noem-bessie or num-num, is edible and used for making jelly and jam.

Carissa grandiflora . . . , called Knum-Knum by the Boers, amatungulu by the Kaffirs a bush with sweet smelling flowers and red gooseberry-like berries with a pleasant flavour. Krauss Travel Journal Cape to Zululand 1838-40 trans. Spohr 1973

[ngu. plant name]

amatungulu
berry-like
pohr 19-
p

amandla [a'mandla] n.interj.

9, 2. Power usu ~ ngawetu; see quot.

'... giving the Black Power salute and shouting in reply to Chief Gatsha Buthelezi's amandla (power) ngawetu (is ours).' E. Province Herald 2.11.73

[Zu. ^{pl. n.} amandla = power]

amanzi [a'mānzǐ, -man-] n.

27a, 2. Water: found in Zu. place names e.g. Amanzimtoti (sweet), Amanzimnyama (black). [Ngu. amanzi = water]

amapakathi [ˌamapa'qatǐ, -'ka-] pl. n.

2, 19. The inner circle of advisers, those closest to the Chief, cf. privy councillors.

Great chiefs (incosee incoolo) are assisted by amapakati or counsellors. These are experienced old men, or wise young ones. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

[Ngu. pl. prefix ama + (i)phakathi = inside one]

amasoja [ˌama'sodza] pl. n.

2, 20, 19. African term for white soldiers: see also amajoni 2, 20, 19. [Ngu. pl. prefix ama + (i)soja fr. soldier]

amatongo [ˌama'tongǔ] pl. n.

2. Also amadhlozi 2: ancestral spirits revered by tribal Africans (qv) 19 as agents of protection, also of prophecy via the medium of the witchdoctor 2, 16, 19. (qv): known among Xh. speakers as imishologu or izinyanya.

And those who died in the fight will now become Amatongo.
And those who escaped, whose national Amatongo looked on them
and saved them, say,
"We have been saved by the Amadhlozi of our people".
When they come back from the army, they sacrifice cattle to
the Amatongo ...

Callaway Religious System of the Amazulu 1869

[Ngu. pl. prefix ama + (i)thongo = ancestral spirit]

amatungulu [ˌama,tʊŋ'gulǔ] pl. n.

14, 2. The tart-flavoured scarlet fruit of Carissa macrocarpa, a spiny plant popular for hedges: the fruit, also known as Natal plum*, is edible and used for making jelly and jam. [Ngu. plant name] * and noem-noem-bessie or num-num.

Zu. loem -thungulu

American aloe, n.

28, 11. Agave americana: see quot. at garingboom 28, 11.

anaboom/anatree n.

32. See apiesdoring 32.

x ~~Cancel quit. (banned text)~~

... used code names... for instance... leader of the banned African National Congress, was known as "the king". The ANC itself was known as "mama" Sunday Times 9.11.75.

... bowls full of sliced paw-paw, oranges, grenadillas, bananas and pineapples. 'Angels' food', said Nan. 'A Ball would not be complete without Angels' Food... Westwood Bright Wilderness 1980

¹A.N.C. ['eɪ, en'si:] n. prop.

2, 4b. The African National Congress now banned in S.A.: having a 'thumbs up' sign and song Mayibuye i Afrika (qv) 9; 2, 4b.

~~Cancelled~~ It was later in 1955 that I joined the African National Congress (ANC). I had for some years been torn between it and the All-African Convention (AAC). Mphahlele Down Second Avenue 1959

[acronym of above]

²A.N.C., n. prop.

2, 4b. African National Council (Rhodesian): see quot. at Zimbabwe 4b, 2.

[acronym of above]

-and-them ['-ən(d) -ðəm] part of n. phr.

Coll. ²⁹prn. See also them, and-.

10. Used preceded by a name to refer to a group of people, not necessarily a family, previously mentioned or known to both speakers as in 'When are Bill-and-them coming?' cf. Jam. E. an-dem either as pl. the cow-an-dem = cows, or John-an-dem = John and company; also Southern U.S. you-all as mode of address to more than one person. [trans. Afk. hulle = them, as in Jan-hulle = Jan and company or Jan and family prefixed by and]

angels' food, n.

7. Fruit salad: also Jam. E. cf. U.S. angels' food (cake); see addenda p. 587.

~~Cancelled~~ We were fortified by luscious coffee and mystic trifle, and angel's food, and ambrosia, and spiced stars. Bloemfontein Post 7. 9. 1912
cit. Pettman.

angler, n. pl. -Ø

12. See monk 12.

Anglikaans [ˌæŋglɪ'kɑns] n. prop.

23. A mythical hybrid language compounded of English and Afrikaans (qv) 23. cf. Canad. Franglish, Franglais.

If Anglikaans includes all these and all departures from traditional English and 'correct' Afrikaans in favour of South Africanisms of every variety, is there any likelihood that Anglikaans will eventually become the dominant South African vernacular? Cape Times 8. 1. 72

[Angl - fr. English (Lat. angl-) + -kaans fr. Afrikaans]

Anglo-Boer War

20, 4b. See Boer War 20, 4b.

animal unit, n.

11, 4b. See stock (unit) 11, 4b.

anker ['æŋkə, 'aŋkə(r)] n.

Hist. 24, 18. 8. An old Du. and Ger. liquid measure formerly in use at the Cape, of between 30 and 40 litres, or a quarter of one aum (qv), also a

keg or cask containing this amount.

LIQUID MEASURE. 16 Flasks, equal to 1 Anker. - 4 Ankers equal to 1 Aum. 4 Aums, equal to 1 Leaguer. S. Afr. Almanac for 1833 Greig.

[Du. anker measure]

antbear

6. See aardvark^x 6.

ante-nuptial contract, n. pl. -s

4b. An agreement made by two persons intending to marry regarding their property and usually also the legal capacity of the wife, the effect being that each retains full control over his or her separate property during the marriage. Persons married in South Africa without an ~ are automatically married in community of property which results in the assets of each of them becoming the common property of both, under the control of the husband. [In Natal until 1956 postnuptial contracts were also permitted.] See also kinderbewys 4b, 30.

ant-heap ['ænt,hip] n. pl. -s

22, 26. Anthill: often hollowed out by early pioneers for use as bake-ovens.

A farmer ... taking advantage of the recent rains started the ploughing of new lands. In ploughing through an ant-heap he cut a large mamba in two. E. Province Herald 11. 3. 1926

At times we baked our own bread in ovens of antheaps. Drum August 1971

[trans. Afk. ^{miershoop} mier = ant + hoop = heap]

anyswortel [,a'ners,vó(r)təl] n. pl. -s

28, 14. Several species of Annesorrhiza having anise-flavoured tubers which were eaten in early times by indigenous tribes and by travellers of the period, roasted in embers or boiled in milk.

'The root of the Anise (anys-wortel) was eaten here roasted, and tasted well; it is either roasted in the embers, or boiled in milk, or else stewed with meat.' Thunberg Travels trans. 1795

[Afk. anys fr. Du. anijs cogn anise + wortel = root]

apartheid [ə'pɑt,heit, a'part(h)eɪt] n.

4b. 'Separateness': in use since the late 1940s sign. racial separation at various levels: grand ~ or separate development (qv) 4b as a major political policy, as in the setting up of African homelands (qv) 4b. or Bantustans (qv) 4b or petty ~ such as separate entrance doors, park benches and other amenities for white and non-white.

As the leader of a Bantustan, you have accepted separate development. Does this mean you accept apartheid? "Stripped of the racial aspects that humiliate and hurt black men, apartheid - or separate development as the government prefers to call it - simply boils down to partition." Gatsha Buthelezi cit. Newsweek 27. 11. 72

For more than a generation, the cornerstone of South Africa's internal policy has been apartheid, or "separate development" for the country's

16 million blacks, 3,000,000 whites, 2,000,000 "coloreds". Time
15.10.73

Petty apartheid was probably the widest front on which a man's dignity was assaulted and ... almost the entire population was acutely aware of how it operated. E. Province Herald 9.11.73

[Afk. apart = separate + n. form + suff. -heid equiv. Eng. -ness, cogn. hood
fr O.E. had = state of being]

apiesdoring ['apɪs,dvɛrɪŋ] n. pl. -s

32. Any of several species of Acacia having high leafy crowns affording cover to monkeys, including A. albida known as anaboom/tree (qv) 32.

[Afk. aap = monkey cogn. ape + dimin. suff. -ie + doring fr. Du. doorn cogn. thorn]

appelkoossiekte ['apəl,kvəs'(s)ɪktə] n.

16. see apricot sickness 16. [Afk. appelkoos fr. Du. abrikoos = apricot + siekte fr. Du. ziekte = disease]

Apple Express, n. prop.

30. The narrow gauge railway between Port Elizabeth and Avontuur, which traverses the fruit-growing area of the Lang Kloof [opened 1905].

Exactly 70 years after the first tiny trains started running on Port Elizabeth's 'Apple Express' railway, powerful diesel locomotives have been introduced to modernise what is probably the busiest and most useful narrow-gauge line in the world. The 1820 May 1974

apricot sickness, n.

16. Diarrhoea, occ. with vomiting, prevalent in the summer stoned-fruit season, and thought to be caused by eating too much/or unripe fruit.^x

... "apricot sickness". The illness gained its name because apricots were the first spring fruits which the early Cape farmers produced. They suffered from the familiar griping pains and diarrhoea, and rightly blamed the apricots. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

Arab (merchant), n. pl. -s

25, 30. See Bombay Merchant 25, 30.

The white colonists, through ignorance and lack of interest, referred to all Indians as coolies. It was only when educated, intelligent Bombay Merchants and shipowners came upon the scene with cargoes of rice and condiments for sale, that the townsfolk learned to discriminate between what they then designated 'Arab merchants' and 'coolie shopkeepers'. Barbara Campbell Tait The Durban Story 1961

arad, n.

7, 25. See borrie 7, also Indian terms 25.

Argentine ant, n. pl. -s

21. Iridomyrmex humilis: a small blackish brown ant introduced into S. A. the U. S. and Austr. from S. America, a common household pest also troublesome in orchards.

apron, n. pl. -s

11, 18. See verandah 11, 18.

arikreukel [ˌariˈkr̥œkəl] n.

12. see quot. at alikeukel 12, and at ollycrook 12

army worm, n. pl. -s

21. The destructive larva of any of several moths, so named from the massed line in which they advance across the veld: also U.S.

ARMY WORM (*Laphygma exempta*) This pest has captured the imagination of the public as its appearance on farm lands, where it is very destructive, is often announced in the press ... The larvae march together in the mass, eating only grass, maize and other members of the grass family. Sima Eliovson The Complete Gardening Book for S. A. 1960.

[see above]

article, redundant

29red. (1) redundant the see third person form of address 29, (2) a or an used redundantly in such phrases as 'a half a mile' where one or other art. is usual or as in 'he wants a sixpence'.

They questioned several people living in the house for many hours and came within a half an hour of making an important arrest. E. Province Herald 12. 3. 74

arvieley n.

¹⁰ See arvie.

A.S.B. [ˈeɪ,esˈbiː, ˈɑ,es-bɪə] n. prop.

34. The Afrikaanse Studente Bond: an organisation of Afk. speaking university students: see also NUSAS. 34.

The Afrikaanse Studentebond (ASB) has come a long way during the past ten years. Having attended eight annual congresses in this period I have no doubt that the ASB is breathing a different spirit today. Sunday Times 14. 7. 74

[acronym of above]

ask, vb trns

Substand. 29vb trans. Used as equivalent of 'ask for' as in 'Go and ask bread'. [trans. Afk. vra = ask for, usu. with concrete object] *

askoek [ˈas,kʊk] n. pl. -s, -ke

(1) 7. Occ. asbrood: dough cake baked in hot embers: see also ² stormjager 7, maagbom 7; cf. Austr. damper, devil-on-the coals, Jam. E. bammy.

Another way of making bread is what is called an Ash cookie. It is something akin to an Australian 'damper'. Browning Fighting and Farming in S. A. 1880 cit. Pettman

On trek, of course, there is still asbrood, dough baked in the ashes... Lawrence Green Karoo 1955

15. ~ slaan n. A lively dance formerly of the Hottentots (qv) 23 in which the clicking of heels was said to sound like knocking ~ s together, now, loosely, to dance a reel.

19. 1. Figur. scamp, imp.

[Afk. fr. Du. as cogn. ash + koek cogn. cake; (Afk. fr. Du. slaan = beat, strike)]

* see quot. at maar 10.

assegai ['æsə,gaɪ] n. pl. -s, also vb trns.

(1) 2, 26, 20. Spear, either short, for stabbing, as introduced by Shaka for the Zulu armies, or long, for throwing, usu. with an iron blade: used from earliest times by Africans both in hunting and war. See (u)mkonto 2, 20.

A police task force ... have made 53 arrests and 83 battle axes, 11 assegais and 73 battle sticks have been confiscated. Daily Dispatch 6.10.71

(2) 29v, 20. vb trns. usu. pass. To stab with an assegai.

The Zulu lives long and if you give a penny to an ancient sitting on the kerb in Durban today you may place it in the hand that assegai'd that Prince: Reed Somewhere South of Suez 1950

[orig. Berber zagayah = lance, spear + Arab prefix al = the]

assegaibos ['æsə,gaɪ'bɔs, ,asə'xɑɪ-] n.

32, 18, 20. Grewia occidentalis, the strong, resistant branches of which were formerly used by Hottentots and Africans for assegai (qv) 20 shafts.

Also known as pylhout (qv) 18. 27c, also in place names Assegaibosrivier, Assegaayenbosch. [assegai (qv) = spear, lance + bos = bush]

assegai wood/hout ['æsə,gaɪ,wʊd, ,asə'xɑɪ,həvʊt] n.

18, (31), 32. The timber of Curtisia dentata or C.faginea used from early times in wagon-making. Also known as assegaiboom. See assegaibos 32, 18, 20.

Rafters of keur-boom taken from the river banks, and Papa has had made for her a set of chairs from assegai-wood grown at Pigot Park, this similar to plain mahogany. Kate Pigot Diary 1826 cit. Fitzroy Dark|Bright Land 1955
[Afk. -hout = wood (timber) + -boom = tree]

atjar See entry on addenda p 581 .

aum [ɔ:m] n. pl. -s

24, 8. An old Du. or Ger. liquid measure usu. for liquor consisting of 4 ankers (qv) i.e. between 120 and 160 litres. See quot. at anker 24, 8: also half ~ , see quot.

WINE MERCHANTS, EXPORTERS, CAPTAINS AND OTHERS are informed, that they can be supplied at the Cape Distillery with good Brandies, at very moderate Prices, by the Half-Aum, and upwards. S. Afr. Almanac and Directory for 1833 Advt Greig

[fr. Du. aam]

auntie ['ɑnti] substand. anti] n. pl. -s

(1) 1, 19. Mode of friendly but usu. respectful address or reference to an older woman, not necessarily a blood relation, with or without a Christian name, esp. among country-bred children; occ. with irony between adults: see quot. cf. Jam. E. aunt, stepmother.

Sorry, Auntie. Better go to Veeplaas. Maybe you're there.
Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edtt.

"This legislation is not aimed at dealing with --- ... if the poor old soul feels like demonstrating I will ask the police not to notice what the poor old Auntie is doing," Mr. --- said. Daily Dispatch 12.5.73

(2) [A.E.] ^{2, 19, 30} A shebeen queen or other dealer in illicit liquor; see also quot. at Ma- 19, 1, 2.

... each time I partake of this brew I like to do it in the privacy of some aunty's place. Drum 8.10.73

[transferred fr. earlier Afk. use; see also tannie]

Australian bug n. pl. -s

21. A scale pest Icerya purchasi, which attacks a great variety of plants; see also mealy bug: U.S. and Austr. Cottony cushion scale.

autumn fever n.

11. See blue tongue 11.

avie ['avi] adv.t.

10. Slang: afternoon; also 'sarvie'; usu. among children cf. Austr. arvo, alto.

Can I play by this avie? Oral informant child 1971

[presum. fr. Eng. after(noon)]^x 'I'm there at the municipal baths one arvey try to catch a tan. Dad -> 9.10.74

avond- ['a,vont-] n. prefix.

Prefix 27e, 28. Evening; prefixed to nouns as in place name Avondrust(rest), or flower name avondbloem (see aandblom); also in Afk. form aand in aandbossie, aandgonna, aandpypie etc. Also place name Aandster(star).

[Du. avond-, Afk. aand- = evening]

avondbloem n.

13. See aandblom 13.

ayah n. pl. -s

19. See aia 19.

... the Malays played an important part in life at the Cape during the 19th century. The women did the cooking and washing and acted as ayahs to the children. Du Plessis The Cape Malays 1944

-baai [ˈ-baɪ] n. suff.

27a. Pay: found in place names usu. suffixed to n. or adj. e.g. Mosselbaai (mussel), Oesterbaai (oyster), Stilbaai (qv) 27i: also die ~, see bay, the, Port Elizabeth.

According to our perceptive informer there should be no P.E. students at Rhodes because of the UPE drawcard - sorry to disappoint you ... but the ous from the 'Baai' are here in droves. Rhodeo Vol 130 No 5 29.4.76

The Transvaal was populated largely by farming folk. They had to travel hundreds of kilometres to "Die Baai" (Port Elizabeth) for essential
Panorama Jan. 1975

B.A.A.B. [bɑb] n. prop. [pl. -s]

4b. Bantu Affairs Administration Board. [acronym of above]

baadjie ['bɑkǃ, -cǃ] n. pl. -s

Coll. 5. Jacket. In combination bloubaadjie 4b, rooibaadjie (qv) 20, 21.

They wear a shirt, with sleeves left wide and open at the wrists; but they wear also shoes unlike the slippers of the Faithful, and baatjies, or hip-jackets, in the pockets of which their hands are inserted in a very Frankish fashion. Cape Monthly Magazine Dec 1861 cit. I. D. du Plessis and Lückhoff The Malay Quarter and its People 1953

[Afk. fr. Malay baju = jacket]

-baai [-bɑr] n. suff.

27a. Bay: found in place names usu. suffixed to n. or adj. e.g. Mosselbaai (mussel), Cesterbaai (oyster), Stilbaai (qv) 27i. [Afk. fr. Du. baai cogn. bay]

baaken ['bɑkən] n. pl. -s

22, 27a^{or e,} 30. See baken 11, 22, 27a^{or e,} 30, also beacon.

baardman ['bɑ:(r)t,man] n. pl. -∅

12. Any of several S. Afr. fishes having fleshy filaments or barbels hanging from the mouth esp. the edible sea fish Sciaena capensis or Umbrina capensis also called tasselfish. 12.

The dikkop and stompneus, of course, owe their names to their shape, while the baardman has a feeler under the jaw. Lawrence Green Grow Lovely, Growing Old 1951

[Afk. baard cogn. beard + man]

baas [bɑ:s] n. pl. -s

1. Master, Sir: mode of address usu. by non-whites to the master or employer, often with definite article in the third person (qv) 29 trans.

occ. my for emphasis or when making a request: see also basie 1, 19.

19. Mode of reference to the master, usu. with definite art. Combinations:

groot(big) ~; klein ~, second in command; makulu (qv) ~ 2, 29adj.

oubaas (qv) 1, 19; wit ~ (qv) 19, 10: see also quot. at kar(r)os 18: cf. Jam. E.

backra when used as equiv. of boss, master. cf. Canad. ogema, tyee, Ang. Ind. sahib.

I therefore took leave of the baas, an appellation given to all the Christians here, particularly to bailiffs and farmers. Trans. Sparrman Voyage I 1786

At length, with a show of confidence, he pushed the money under the glass partition and said, "Please, my baas, a third class return to Umtata." Gordon Four People 1964

[Afk. fr. Du. baas = master, captain (klein = small)]

baasboets ['bɑ:s,bʊts] pl. n.

Coll. Slang. 10. Great friends, boon companions, also in phr. ~ with, ~ again etc. : see bad friends 10, kwaai vriende 10 and bokpal(s) 10.

~~John and M... have been baasboets since they first went to school together.~~ ~~Oral Informant~~ Cape Town 13.8.74

[Afk. fr. Du. baas = chief, master + boet = brother + pl. -s]

baasskap ['ba:s,(s)kap] n. abstr.

4b. Dominion, mastery: usu. in political sense of white supremacy.

The "either or brigade" who said there must be either complete integration or white baasskap ... Star 25.10.72

[Afk. fr. Du. baas = master + suff. -skap = state of being, condition, cogn. Eng. -ship]

babala(grass) [bə'balə] n.

2, 11, 28. Pennisetum americanum, large grasses cultivated largely by Africans for grain similar to kaffircorn (qv) 11, and also for silage. Known as kaffermanna (qv) 11 and kaffir millet.

bab(b)ala(a)s ['babə,ləs] n.

Coll. Slang. 16, 8. A hangover: as modifier see quot. at dronkie 19, 10. cf. U.S. katzenjammer.

... the price of a bout of bacchanalian altar is still the groggy head unsteady hand, furred tongue, rubber knees and the floating stomach - the age old 'babbelas'. Cape Herald 22.9.73

[Afk. fr. Zu. i-babalazi = after-effects of a drinking bout]

babiana [babi'ənə, bab-] n. pl. -s

13. See bobbejaantjies 13. [corruption of Du. baviaan = baboon]

baboon spider n. pl. -s

21. See bobbejaan spider/spinnekop.

baby, n.

30. A sifting machine for set sorting of diamondiferous gravel on alluvial diamond diggings, in the C19; see quot. cf. Canad. grizzly (for gold)

The earth and gravel from the claim was first thrown into a wooden frame with swing rockers ... As a native rocked the frame, which is called the "baby", a stream of water helped to break up the deposit as it was shaken through the grid. I naturally thought the name of this contrivance referred to its likeness to a cradle, but this was not so. An American with the appropriate name of Babe arrived on the diggings in the eighteen seventies and introduced this machine, which was already in use on the Australian goldfields. They used to say that he was the only Babe who had ever rocked his own cradle. H. V. Morton In Search of S. A. 1948

[fr. n. prop. Babe]

backveld ['bæk,felt] n. and n. modifier

22. Rural areas remote from city life: also attrib. ~ farmers etc.: see also bundu, g(r)amadoelas: cf. Austr. outback, backblocks, back country, U.S. boondocks, sticks.

... the sheer weight of ignorance, indolence and prejudice that you find in nine out of ten backveld farmers ... Pretoria might still be more English than the English, but the backveld was Dutch to the marrow ... and seething with discontent. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

[Eng. back trans. Afk. agter + veld = country]

bafta ['baftə, bæf-] n pl. -s

Obs. Cotton material from India, similar to calico. See
quot. at voerschitz.

b [fr. Persian bāfta, woven]

... swapping baftas (calico), punjums (loose trousers),
and voerschitz (cotton gown-pieces), pronounced "foossy", against
oxen and sheep. Duff Gordon Letters 1861-2 1925 edit.

backvelder ['bækfeltə(r), -de(r)] n. pl. -s

19. One from the backveld (qv); a rustic, primitive or unsophisticated person.

... most of them are backvelders, the old, old Dutch type of whose stubbornness we hear so much all through the pages of South African history. Goold-Adams S.A. Today and Tomorrow 1936

[backveld (qv) + personif. suff. -er as in Britisher]

B.A.D. [bi,er'di:] n. prop.

4b. Bantu Administration and Development, a ministerial portfolio.

[.acronym of above]

bad friends, n. phr.

10. Usu. in phr. ~ with: at enmity, not on speaking terms: as n. enemies, usu. temporarily: see also baasboets 10 and quot. at kwaai vriende 10.

[trans. Afk. kwaai vriende (qv) kwaai = bad tempered + vriend(e) cogn. friend(s)]

I'm bad friends with X this term. Schoolgirl 12, 1970

-bad [-bat] n. suff.

27a. Mineral spring: found in names, e.g. Warmbad, of places where there are hot springs: cf. Ger. Wiesbaden etc.

[Afk. fr. Du. cogn. bath]

bafta

bag [bæg] n. pl. -s

24, 11, 30. Unit of measurement usu. of grain holding 90kg, see muid 24: potential yield is calculated as ~ s per morgen (qv) 24, 11: school ~ 18, also book ~ (qv) 18, a satchel or suitcase for books.

Mr - - inspects the freshly-harvested wheat crop which yielded 45 to 58 bags a morgen under irrigation in spite of hail damage. Farmer's Weekly 27.2.74

bagger ['bægə] n. pl. -s

12. Also bagre: a marine fish Tachysurus feliceps thought in the early days to be poisonous, perhaps because of its ugliness.

... the bagre, a very bad species of fish, and supposed to be of a poisonous quality. Percival Account of the C. of G.H. 1804

[unknown]

baie ['baɪə] intensifier. occ. prn.

29, 10. Very: usu. intensifies adjectives, e.g. bang (qv) 29adj. mooi (qv), see quot. below: in Afk. a n./prn sign. much, a lot, esp. in combination

~ dankie (qv) 10, ~ dae 20, see mindae 20 and quot. at varkpan 20.

At length I succeeded and began to operate on the phiz of my sable friend, who appeared to enjoy it very much, exclaiming repeatedly "banya mooi" - very nice. Buck Adams Narrative 1884 edit. Gordon-Brown 1941

... she spoke a few words in English and brought the house down with a Japanese version of "baie dankie." Sunday Times 9.12.73

[Malay banyak = a lot]

bake, vb trns.

Substand. 29v, 7. Fry (in a pan).

Crepes Suzette Heat a very little butter in a small pan ...
Bake over a low flame until underside is light brown. Turn and bake on
the other side. Roll up. Hilda Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

[translit. Afk. bak = fry (also bake)]

baken ['bəkən] n. pl. -s

11, 22, 30. A landmark natural or man-made. A surveyor's boundary
mark, also beacon; 27^a ^{or e} place name Baaken's river.

If the farmer is supposed to have put his baaken, or stake, or
landmark, a little too near to that of his neighbour, the Feld-wagt-meester
or peace officer of the division is called in by the latter to pace the distance,
for which he gets three dollars. Barrow Travels 1801 cit. Pettman

[Afk. fr. Du. baaken cogn. beacon]

bakgat ['bak, xat] interj. or predic. adj. occ. adv. m.

Slang, 9, 10. Fine, great, excellent. cf. Austr. beaut, (bonzer) Σ. Afr. maridadi

It's going to be cold tonight. When it starts pushing and the water
comes back. Boesman's all right. Two bottles and a pondokkie. Bakgat!
Fugard Boesman and Lena 1966, 1973 edit.

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Eng. buck = a dandy]

bakkie ['baki] n. pl. -s

(1) 31, 30. A light truck or van with a cabin and open back for conveying
goods, animals or persons. Commercially hired to farmers and others under
trade name Rent-a-~.

Our XYZ thrives on tough, rugged conditions and feels as at home
in the bundu as the bull leader of a rhino herd. But there the resemblance
ends. On or off the road our XYZ Bakkie is sweet-tempered, comfortable.
E. Province Herald Advt. 21.5.71

(2) 18. A basin or other container.

... Nico ... took to joining Klein Hannes behind the fowl-hok at
five to twelve, carrying a bakkie of laying mash as an excuse. New S. Afr.
Writing 4 (no date) pub. Purnell.

[Afk. bak = container + dimin. suff. -(k)ie]

bakkis [bak(k)ɪs] n. pl. -te

18. A wooden trough on legs in which dough was made and kneaded.

Yellow wood dough mixer or baking trough (bakkis) ... Wm Fehr
Treasures at the Castle of Good Hope 1963

... this large box on legs in which dough was kneaded and the baked
bread was stored ... The lid of the bakkis is detachable ... Bakkiste
have neither handles nor hinges. Baraitser and (O)holzer Cape Country
Furniture 1971

[Afk. fr. Du. bakken cogn. bake + kis(t) cogn. chest]

bakkop (slang) ['bak,(k)ɔp (slan)] n. pl. -s

6. The ringed cobra: see rinkhals 6

For a bite from a bakkop or a puff-adder or a ringhals, a sharp
knife and permanganate of potash crystals are nearly always efficacious.
H.C. Bosman Mafeking Road 1947, 1969 edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. bak = basin + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

baklei [,ba'kleɪ] vb intrns.

Coll. Slang 10. Fight, quarrel, have an altercation, cf. Austr. barney.
[Afk. fr. Du. bakkeleien fr. Malay bakalahi = to fight]

bakoond ['bak,vənt] n.

Hist. 18, 7. Brick or stone oven usu. with an iron door, built either into the side of a wide kitchen hearth or outside the house. Du. form in place name Bakoven.

Until recently bread was still baked in the spacious bakoond which Mr Duckitt showed us in the enormous chimney stack. Farmer's Weekly 25.4.73

[Afk. bak = bake + oond (Du. oven) = oven]

bakore ['bak,vərə] pl. n.

Coll. 16, 10. Protruding ears.

My children say I have bakore so I keep my hair over them. Informant Italian S. Afr. ex Florence 1972

[Afk. bak = bowl + o(o)r = ear + pl. -e]

balie ['ba:lɪ] n. pl. -s

18. Small tub or vat: usu. in combination sout(salt) ~ 18, botter(butter), ~ 18, pekel(pickle) ~ 18, articles in kitchen use in former times.

[Afk. balie poss. cogn. vb bail, or barrel]

baliestoel ['ba:lɪ, stʊl] n.

18. A 'tub chair', a design said to be peculiar to the Cape, in which the back and arms form a single curve: (see quot. at tub chair 18) usu. caned or riempie(d) (qv) 18, 29vb. [Afk. balie (qv) + stoel = chair cogn. stool]

balk [baɪk] n. pl. -e

18. Ceiling or floor beam, baulk of timber. [Afk. fr. Du. balk = beam cogn. baulk]

bamboo fish, n. pl. ∅

12. See karanteen 12, mooinoientjie 12; also stinkfish 12 and bamvoosie 12.

bamvoosie [,bam'vʊəsi] n. pl. -s

12. See bamboo fish.

ban, vb trns.

4b, 29vb To prohibit an individual by means of a ~ ning order from attending or addressing gatherings of whatsoever nature in terms of the Suppression of Communism Act of 1950: also usu. confining or restricting his activities to a defined area.

He was released in 1969 but banned and confined to the Kimberley district. Daily Dispatch 18.5.71

Johannesburg United Party city councillors yesterday called upon the Government immediately to revoke the banning orders on the eight student Nusas leaders. E. Province Herald 8.3.72

banana (boy) n. pl. -s

Coll. 19. Nickname for one born or long resident in sub-tropical Natal; see also blikoor, vaalpens, kaapenaar, 19, cf. Austr. Bananalander, a Queenslander.

Banana Boys Natalians should lose the title of Banana Boys to the new boys of the tropical fruit-growing districts ... Daily Dispatch 25.9.71

bandiet [ˌbanˈdiːt] n. pl. -e

19, 4b. Convict [mistaken in more than one early text for 'banditti' (brigands)] Long term prisoners, we are hired in gangs as farm labour for which they receive a small wage! See quot. at Katkop

Two redoubts were accordingly marked out: ' and with Schimmers, ~~the active German miller~~, and a party of banditti, as the Dutch call convicts ... the bush was soon cleared away for these works. Alexander Western Africa 1837

The Boers not infrequently shut their doors in his face, telling him he is a "bandit" or convict. Bishop Gray Journal Part II 1851

[Afk. convict fr. Du. bandiet = robber, brigand, cogn. bandit]

bang [ˈbaŋ] adj.

Coll. 10, 29adj. Scared, afraid. 19, 1, broek coward, funk, see papbroek 19, 2, ie(s) 19, 2, slang: persons who visit shebeens (qv) 30,8,2 in groups for self protection.

Don't be bang ... we are not murderers, not even of women and children. Stuart Cloete Rags of Glory 1963 *See also quot. at addenda p 581.

[Afk. bang = afraid, (broek = trousers, cogn breeches)]

bangalala [ˌbangaˈlala] n.

16, 2, 28. Aphrodisiac prepared usu. from the powdered roots of certain species of Rhyncosia a decoction of the roots in milk is also used.

Khotso sold at a price the potion that he claimed gave him his immortality. His virility, he claimed, came from the herb ibangalala, and you could buy that from him too. Scope 8.9.72

[Zu. bangalala - plant name fr. vb u(lu)bangalala = to rage furiously]

bank [baŋk] n.

18. Bench usu. in dimin. form, see bankie, or in combination stoep (qv) 18; tuin(garden) 18; sit 18, seat; rus 18 (qv) 18. [Afk. fr. Du. bank cogn. bench]

banket [ˈbæŋkɪt, ˌbaŋˈkɛt] n. and n. modifier

30. Gold-bearing conglomerate.

These river pebbles of resistant quartz were to become embedded in a matrix of quartz particles ranging in size from sand to clay and this formation is called banket from the Dutch word, 'banquet' - confectionery. It is derived from the appearance that can be compared to almonds lying in a brown sugary base. The 1820 Feb. 1974

From the beginning, reef mining on the Witwatersrand was predominantly a capitalistic venture. The 'banket' reef had to be mined, crushed in stamps and pulped in order that its gold content could be extracted. Cambridge History of the British Empire VIII 1936

[Afk. fr. Du. banket = confectionery cogn. banquet]

bankie ['bāŋki] n. pl. -s

18. A low, usu. oblong stool, often with sectioned seat of cane or riempie

(qv) 18. [Afk. fr. Du. bank = bench + dimin. suff. -ie]

... large yellowwood table; a bunkie. [sic pron. sp.] ... Grocott's Mail Advt. 30.8.74

bantu [bāntũ, ban-, bæn-] pl. n. (also errone. pl. -s and angl. sing. n. with indef. art.) freq. capitalised.

19, 4b. Black people: official designation of Africans (qv), i. e. negroid races, by Government: see quot. at African 19. Also attrib. as in ~affairs 4b; ~beer (see tshwala) 8, 2; ~education 4h, 34 ; ~languages 23.

[fr. Bantu pl. prefix aba- with -ntu stem sign. 'person', sing. um(u)ntu: see munt(u) 19.]

bantustan, n.

4b. Term used for an African homeland (qv) 4b: see quot. at -stan 10.

[Hindi -stan = country of]

barberton ['bābətən] n. prop. usu. capitalised

8. An illicitly concocted liquor sold in shebeens (qv) 8, 30: see also shimiyaan 8, 2, cf. Austr., N.Z. Hokonui (place name) illicit spirits.

The ingredients of barberton drink are uncertain but it must contain yeast and mealie-meal ... A policeman's evidence that a concoction of which he produces a sample is barberton is prima facie proof of this fact. Sissöä S. Afr. Judicial Dictionary 1960

[fr. name of town Barberton, Transvaal]

Barberton daisy ['bābətən-] n. pl. -ies

13. Gerbera Jamesoni, a daisy-like flower usu. red or coral coloured abundant in the Barberton district: numerous hybrids of many colours have been developed.

Double Barberton Daisies. - XYZ Nurseries can now supply a limited number of various high quality Barberton daisy plants. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 30.5.73

baruti [,ba'ruti] pl. n.

2, 1, 19, 4a. Priests: see quot. at moruti 2, 19, 4a [Sotho pl. prefix -ba + (mo)ruti = a priest]

basboom ['bas,bvəm] n.

32. See wattle 32. [Afk. bas = bark + boom = tree cogn. Ger. Baum]

basela [,ba'se:la] n.

2, 24, 10: see bonsella 2, 24, 10.

basie ['ba:si] n. pl. -s

1. Affectionate dimin. form of baas (qv) 1, 19 usu. addressed to a child, or by an old servant to a younger member of his employer's family.

Put your ear to the ground, my basie, and you will hear them coming. K. McMagh A Dinner of Herbs 1968

[Afk. fr. Du. baas = master (cogn. boss) + dimin. suff. -ie]

Basta(a)rd ['bɑstəɹd; 'bɑstɑɹd] n. prop. pl. -s usu. capitalised.

(1) 23. Also Baster: a member of a coloured tribe descended from the union of whites with Hottentot women usu. known as the Rehoboth ~ s living in the Rehoboth area of S.W.A. from 1868.

In this territory the term 'baster' when it is ascribed to a person's race is well known to refer to members of the Rehoboth Bastard Community. Sisson S. Afr. Judicial Dictionary 1960

(2) Hist. used of any established half caste or other mixed race, including the Griquas (qv) 23.

Oct. 1811 The existence of this little community of Hottentots, was well known to the colonists under the name of the Bastards, because the whole of them were at that time, all of the Mixed Race. Burchell Travels I 1822

[Du. bastard Afk. baster = bastard]

baster ['bɑstə] n. pl. -s

(1) n. prop. see Basta(a)rd 23. (2) 32, 18. n. prefix in numerous plant names esp. of timber trees e.g. ~ swartstinkhout 18 (see stinkwood); ~ geelhout 18 (see yellowwood), usu. sign. false, mock, non-genuine hence inferior, cf. aap-28.

(3) One of the seven race classifications (qv) 4b used on personal identity cards relating to S. Africans who are not 'Asiatic', 'Chinese', 'Bantu' or 'White': see quot. at classification 4b. [see at Basta(a)rd 23]

Basotho [,ba'sutʊ] pl. n. [erron. pl. -s]

23. The people of Lesotho (qv) 2: see quot. at Mosotho 23. [Bantu pl. prefix ba + (mo)sotho] freq. among whites sign. a single citizen of Lesotho (formerly Basutoland)

*

Basuto blanket [ba'sutʊ] n. pl. -s

5, 2. A many coloured blanket with either geometric or animal designs forming part of the dress of Basotho (qv) 23 tribesmen. 18. Popular also for bedding in S.A. [Earlier spelling of Basotho]

Basuto pony [ba'sutʊ] n. pl. -ies

11. A hardy, surefooted mountain pony orig. bred in Lesotho (qv) usu. smallish, between 13½ and 14½ hands high, and esteemed for powers of endurance.

* Basuto [,ba'sutʊ] pl. n.

23. Earlier sp. form of Basotho (qv) 23.

baralux
See dassie Vanger

bath, n. pl. -s

18. Freq. a galvanised wash-tub: see quot. at zinc.

battle stick n. pl. -s

2, 20. African weapon used in the sport of stick fighting, also in faction fights (qv) 2.

A police task force of about 60 from Umtata have made 53 arrests and 83 battle sticks have been confiscated. Daily Dispatch 6.10.71

[fr. Ngu. induku = stick for fighting or walking]

baviaan ['bavi:an, ,bavi:a:n] n. prefix

27d Baboon: usu. prefixed with possessive -s to n. in place names e.g.

Baviaanskloof, Baviaansriver. spider 21 see bobbejaan spider/

spinnekop; stouw 28 see bobbejaantou 28; baviaanboud 20: see snaphaan 20.

A large kind of monkey, with a long greenish-brown fur (Cercopithecus ursinus), called Baviaan by the colonists, inhabits this mountain. Burchell Travels I 1822

[Du. baviaan fr. Fr. babouin = baboon]

see also baai

Bay, the n. prop.

Coll. [Reg. E. Cape] 27, 10. Port Elizabeth cf. Berg, the 27, 10.

From the Bay to Grahamstown, roasted coffee had been issued to the men; ... McKay Last Kaffir War 1871, 1970 edit.

[abbr. Algoa Bay]

bayete [,bai:'je:te, -de] interj.

2, 9. Zulu royal greeting orig. only for the paramount chief: latterly as compliment to a few favoured persons.

... the catering staff of the motel - about 20 Zulus - appeared and greeted their Paramount Chief with shouts of "Bayete" ... Rand Daily Mail 28.7.71

The Zulus in the play Umabatha will give Princess Margaret a full-throated greeting of "Bayete" when she goes on stage ... Daily Dispatch 7.4.72

[Zu. bayedede = Hail (your Majesty)]

beach thongs, pl. n.

5. Sandals for casual wear consisting of a sole and two thongs from between the big and second toes to the sides, formerly called Indian sandals: see champals 5, 25, also slip-slops 5.

Beach thongs are very popular with the out-crowd especially the type with the flowers on top. Personality 5.6.69

beacon, n. pl. -s

18, 11: see also baken 18, 11.

The beacons of new farms, still unfenced, were piling up on the veld ... Daily Dispatch 29.7.72

beadwork, African, n.

2, 5. Beads worked into ornamental geometric designs in which colour and pattern have definite significance: love messages and tokens can be exchanged by means of articles: see also quot. at Ndebele 23; cf. Canad. wampum beads/belt/reader.

Fine beadwork in bright colours and complicated designs is not only an artistic decoration but also has a symbolic meaning. Panorama September 1973

Could any bead workers send me specimens, fully described, of the purposes, colours and meaning of design ... There should be plenty of DRUM readers who understand the language of beads. Drum 22.4.74

beast, n. pl. -s

11, 2. 11, a single head of cattle: see quot. at biltong 7. 2, Royal ^{*} an ox slaughtered by hand by warriors at a Zulu coronation ceremony. ^{*}
beast - As employed in South Africa this word is restricted to bovine animals, a cow, ox or bull. Pittman Africanisms 1913.
 The guests drank 100 gallons of beer and ate two beasts. Drum Nov. 1964 ~~Cancel~~.

[Afk. bees fr. Du. beest = head of cattle, animal, prob. cogn. Lat. bos cow, cattle]

See also quot. at -bok.

beaten out, partic. phr.

11, 29adj. see tramped out 11, 29adj.

bechu, n. pl. -s

5, 2. see beshu 5, 2.

Bechuanaland, n. prop.

23. see Botswana 23.

becreep [bɛ'krip] vb trns.

20, 29v. To stalk, creep up upon. 5. ing cap (obs.): a camouflage covering for hunters (qv) 19, 20 made of animal skin: cf. U.S. 'Davy Crock' cap, Canad. creep = stalk.

... my Gun in her hand ready to give it to me in case any Kaffer or Kaffers should try to becreep us. Goldswain Chronicle 1836

[translit. Afk. bekruip fr. Du. bekruipen = to stalk]

-bedacht [-bɛ'daxt] partic.

27g. Mindful, prepared; in place name preceded by adv. Welbedacht.

See also -gedag, gedacht.

[Du. vb partic. of bedenken = to consider]

beefwood, n.

18. Red-coloured wood of the Casuarina used for panelling in Dutch furniture: also Austr. see quot. at bluegum.

Some time ago Dr. Purcell examined one of the supports of this early jetty and found that it was made of beef-wood, the Casuarina equisetifolia which was frequently used for panels in old Cape furniture. Fairbridge Lady Anne Barnard at the Cape 1924

[fr. colour]

By week's end blacks - angered by the mindless vandalism - turned on the rioters. Residents of one township beat off a gang that tried to wreck a beer hall. Time 28.6.76

* Benoudheidsfontein

beerdrink, n. pl. -s

15, 2. A ceremonial or social occasion for the drinking of African beer; see (u)tshwala. 2, '8.

Two tribesmen were killed and three others injured when two groups clashed at a dance and beerdrink in the Flagstaff district. Daily Dispatch 20. 4. 71

[prob. trans. Xh. intselo = beer drinking]

beerhall, n. pl. -s

8, 30, 15. African drinking establishment, municipally owned, for the sale of 'Bantu beer': see maiza, (u)tshwala, kaffir beer 2, 8.

Closing beerhalls on Sundays would simply encourage shebeens, Bloemfontein's UBS was told this week. Post 6. 6. 71

begging-hand, n.

13. Herschelia spathulata and H. (charpentieria): see oupa-en/met -sy-pyp 13.

begrafnisrys [bə'xrafnɪs, rɛɪs] n.

7. Lit. 'Funeral rice' yellow rice (qv) or geelrys (qv) with raisins, still a favourite Sunday dish: also begrafniskoek (cake) 7.

After a funeral there was always the special begrafnisrys, yellow rice with raisins. Lawrence Green When the Journey's Over 1972

[Afk. begrafnis = funeral, burial cogn. grave + rys cogn. rice]

-bek [bek] n. suff.

10. Suffix as in grootbek 19, 10, dikbek 10, geelbek 12, 19 all (qv).

[Afk. bek = mouth (vulgar as mouth of person, standard as mouth of animal); cogn. beak.]

bell See addenda p. 581

beneek(t e) [bə'nɛək(t e)] adj.

Slang 10, 29adj. Contrary, impossible, unreasonable, crazy.

I think your Məm has told you that I have left XYZ as I had begun to realise that it was wragties a beneekte joint. Letter Port Elizabeth Informant 28. 8. 63

Must I tell you why? Listen! ... We're whiteman's rubbish. That's why he's so beneeked with us. He can't get rid of his rubbish. He throws it away ... His rubbish is 'people. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[Afk. beneuk (as above) + attrib. suff. -te]

benoudheid [bə'nəʊt, heɪt] n. and n. abstr.

16. Anxiety, nervousness, tightness in the chest: also in place name 27e Benoudheid (Anxiety, Oppression), Benaawdheidsfontein.

She smiled kindly at Bonaparte ... quickly returning with a bottle of red drops in her hand. 'They are very good for 'benaawdheit; my mother always drinks them,' she said, holding the bottle out. Schreiner Story of an African Farm 1883

In combination ~ druppels 16 one of the (Old) Dutch Medicines (qv) 16 used as a sedative for nervous conditions, also for colic: see quot. above.

[Afk. fr. Du. benaawd = suffocating + heid = -ness]

-berg- [bɜg, be:rx] n.

- (1) 22. Mountain: usu. prefix in numerous plant and animal names indicating a hilly or mountainous habitat: adder 6, Bitis atropos; lelie (qv) 13; veld 22¹¹, mountainous farming land usu. fit only for grazing; wind (qv) 33.10, 27(a) Berg, the, n. prop [Reg. Natal] The Drakensberg.

Some years ago Nomkubulwana was said to have revealed herself to some natives over the Berg to whom she transmitted a sealed package ...
Lantern 1966

[Afk. berg = mountain]

(2) -berg-, n. prefix and suff.

27a. Mountain: found in place names as prefix or suff. to other n. or adj. e.g. Bergvliet, Bergplaas, Bergville, Katberg, Sneeuwberg, Dwarsberg, Swartberg. [Afk. berg = mountain]

berghaan ['be r'x,ha:n, bɜg-] n.

3. See dassievanger 3. [berg = mountain + haan = cock]

berghaas ['be r'x,(h)ɑ:s] n. pl. -e

2. Mountain hare also called springhare/haas (qv) 6. [Afk. berg = mountain + haas cogn. hare]

bergie ['bɜgi, 'berxi] n. pl. -s

Coll. 19, 10 [Reg. Cape] A vagrant living usu. on the slopes of Table Mountain, Cape Town; cf. Austr. bushy/ie, bushranger.

Sergeant M. listed^{ne} to — explain how easy it was for vagrants and "bergies" from the nearby slopes of Table Mountain to make their way through the bushes ... E. Province Herald 5.2.73
[Afk. berg = mountain + personif. suff. -ie (qv)]

berglelie ['be rx,lɛəlɪ, bɜg-] n. pl. -s

13. Any of several bulbs with large showy lily-like flowers usu. of the Amaryllidaceae, including Vallota speciosa the George (Knysna) lily, and species of Nerina (qv) 13. [Afk. berg = mountain + lelie cogn. lily]

bergsysie ['be r'x,sɛrsi] n. pl. -s

3. The bully seed eater Serinus sulphuratus, also S. alario known as dikbekkie or dikbeksysie. See (2) dikbek 3.

bergwind ['bɜg,wɪnd, 'be rx,vɛnt] n. pl. -s

33. Hot, dry wind occ. even in winter in certain parts esp. the S. W. Cape. cf. Austr. brickfielder, Canad. Chinook wind (warm dry wind in winter or spring). Deriv. rare adj. bergish.

Sweat it out in the berg wind yesterday? Well, at least the wind that blew in East London is not as bad as the Khamsin, a wind that blows frequently in the Western Desert and Egypt. Daily Dispatch 11.5.71

[Afk. berg = mountain + wind]

berry wax, n.

Hist. 18. High quality wax produced by boiling the berries of Myrica cordifolia, used for polishes and candles in the early days: see also quot. at nooi 1, 19, and (2)mevrouw 19.

... the vegetable wax which the Vrow Alleng's slaves were stewing from berries, of which I saw a stock of green dull candles made. Lady Anne Barnard Letters and Journals 1797-1801

besembos ['bɛsəm,bɔ̃s] n.

(11) 28. Any of several varying species of shrub of which brooms are made: the ~ of the Karoo including several species of Rhus: a problem in the control of plant migration (qv) 4b. [Afk. fr. Du. cogn. besom (broom) + bosch cogn. bush]

beshu ['be:ʃu] n.

5, 2. A skin covering worn over the buttocks by men: the rear part of the umutsha: see moochi 5, 2.

Under the shirt-tails and in place of trousers was the traditional "bechu" or fringed apron of oxhide as worn by generations of warrior ancestors. Evening Post 14. 11. 70

[Zu. ibeshu = skin covering for the buttocks]

best, adj.

10, 29adj. Substand. usu. among children: favourite, the one best-liked: e.g. "My ~ subject" not necessarily that in which highest marks are scored, but the most enjoyed: ~ colour, etc. [poss. by analg. best friend]

betoger [bə'tvɛxə(r)] n. pl. -s

Coll. 19. A political demonstrator cf. demo. betoging n. and vb partic.

[4b. Political demonstration or demonstrating.

I desperately needed some material for my weekly funnies, and in order to crack a few jokes at your expense and that of my attorney. Love and kisses, all you blerrie betogers. Rhodeo 13. 5. 71 (Student newspaper)

[fr. Afk. betoo = demonstrate + agent. suff. -er]

beton [;bə'tɔ̃n] n.

31. Usu. ~ road: road laid in concrete slabs, seamed down the middle and at regular intervals. [Afk. beton = concrete]

bewaarplaats [bə'va:(r),plɑ(t)s] n. pl. -en

Obs. 30. Tailing site: dumping or storage site of a mine on which mining was not permitted.

In South Africa this term is applied to certain pieces of land granted under Government licence to be used as dumping places for debris or slimes from the mines. Originally the sites thus granted were not supposed to be auriferous ... as the result however of improved methods of gold recovery not a few of these bewaarplaatsen have now become very valuable. Licences for such bewaartplaatsen ceased to be issued in 1902. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Du. bewaar = preserve + plaats = place hence depository]

bewertjie(s)gras ['bɛvə(r)kɪs, -cɪs, (xras)] pl. n. or n.

28. Trembling grass: the graceful Briza maxima and B. minor. [fr. Afk. bewe = shake, tremble + agent. suff. -(e)r + dimin. suff. -tjie + pl. -s = "little tremblers"]

bhuti ['bu:tɪ] n.

2, 1. see buti 2, 1.

bhaja n. pl. -s. ^

bi-ah ['bi:a] n. pl. -s

Slang. 2, 8. Also be-ah: African journalese, presumably beer: see quot. at mahog(a) 2, 8. [presum. fr. pron. of beer]

¹bibi ['bɪ,bɪ] n. pl. -s

19, 2. [now rare] An African woman: see also Mary, fazi. cf. Aust. gin, = aboriginal woman. [Zu. (i)bibi = an inferior wife attached to one of the chief huts in a Zu. kraal]

²bibi 25, 1. Mistress of an Indian household: as informal title 'wife of' [Hindi fr. Per. bibi = lady]

biesie(s)- ['bɪsɪ(s)] n. pl. -s

(1) 28. Rush: prefix to names of species of Bobartia e.g. biesie(s)goed.

(2) 27c. Rushes, reeds: found in place names as prefix to other n. e.g. Biesiesfontein, Biesiespoort, Biesiesvlei: see also -riet- 28, 27c.

[Afk. fr. Du. biesje = rush]

biliary, n.

11. Abbr. of ~fever, freq. errone. 'billery': piroplasmosis carried in S. A. by infected ticks esp. to dogs and cats. [fr. adj. biliary = of or pertaining to bile, gall bladder etc.]

bilingual, adj.

4b, 23, 34. In S. A., proficient in both official languages, English and Afrikaans (not in any two languages): see quot. at wag-n-bietjie 9, nogal 9. [Afk. tweetalig]

biltong ['bɪl,tɒŋ, 'bɪl,tɔŋ] n.

7, 26 Sun-dried salted strips of boneless meat cut usu. from the haunch of buck or beef: game ~, beef ~, also ostrich ~ (qv): see also toutjies 7, Cape biltong and quot. at stellasie 18 and wildebeest 6: cf. U.S. jerky/charqui (dried meat usu. beef), Jam. E. jerked hog, jerker pork, Canad. dry meat

'... a good supply of Bel Tongue and bread was set before us. The old lady told us that her present husband was a Dutchman - I had guessed that the moment I saw the Bel Tongue as this kind of meat is seldom found in the houses of Englishmen. It is made from beef cut from the very best beast procurable, cut into long strips and dried.' Buck Adams Narrative 1884

'Ah there, Piet! - be'ind 'is stony kop. With 'is Boer bread an' biltong, an' 'is flask of awful Dop ...' Kipling The Five Nations 1903

[etym. dub. prob. Du. bil = buttock + tong = tongue (here a strip or fillet) (bil poss. cogn. piel = penis fr. Lat. pilum = arrow)]

binne ['bɪnə] prep./adv.
²⁹adj. adv.

27k, Inside: found in street names e.g. Binnesingel: also in korn 9
 come in(side). [Afk. binne = inside]

biocafe ['baɪ,əʊ'kæfeɪ] n. pl. -s

15. A cafe cum cinema offering continuous performances in which the patrons may watch a film while having light refreshments. [abbr. of bioscope = cinema (SAE) + cafe]

bioscope ['baɪə,skəʊp] n. pl. -s

(1) 15. A cinema, picture house: sometimes also equiv. of 'the movies' as in (Substand.) Let's go to ~ (part omitted).

... at the Zeerust bioscope during the last Nagmaal they showed a film about an English lord who had his portrait painted. Bosman Unto Dust 1963

(2) poss. figur. usu [A.E.] 10. A spectacle, show, performance in the non-theatrical sense.

Those two that had the fight because somebody grabbed the wrong broek? That ou trying to catch his donkey. Or that other one ... It was Bioscope man! And I watched it. Beginning to end ... Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[fr. bioscope = cinema projector. Gk. bios = life + skopein = to look at]

biriani [ˌbɪrɪ'ɑːni] n.

7, 25. An Indian dish often served on festive occasions: occ. vegetarian but usu. made with spiced marinated chicken or mutton cooked with rice, often with saffron, and masoor 7 (brown lentils). Commercially available in tins sp. breyani.

Biriani is the dish royal amongst all the exotic rice dishes of India, and remains "the dish" to serve on all best and auspicious occasions. Whether one serves it to welcome house guests on their first day, or whether it be the main course of the menu in formal entertaining ... the painstaking care which the housewife will take in the preparation of Biriani will commence when she selects her ingredients. Nothing but the best will do. Indian Delights edit. Zuleika Mayat 1961

[unknown prob. Urdu/hindi]

biskop ['bɪs,kɔp] n.

12. A fish so named for the gravity of its expression: see musselcracker 12. [Afk. fr. Du. bisschop cogn. bishop]

bite one's teeth, vb phr.

Substand. 10, 29vb. To set one's teeth, be resolute (usu. in the face of misfortune). cf. vasbyt (qv) 10, 29vb, 20, Brit. bite on the bullet, Austr. to crack hardy/hearty, endure patiently.

General Smuts appealed to the farmers to be calm and to bite their teeth. The Star 16.6.34 cit. C.P. Swart Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934 [trans. Afk. op jou tande byt]

bitter(karoo)bos [ˈbɪtə(r)(ka,rʋə),bɔ̃s] n.

(1) 11. Chrysocoma tenuifolia a pernicious weed or 'plant pest' of the Karoid regions, which has spread over much veld (~ veld 11) owing to overstocking; it can be toxic to small stock and is the cause of kaalsiekte, alopecia (baldness) in lambs and kids transmitted through the milk of the ewes: see also bloedpens 11.

The most reliable method of preventing the disease is not to allow pregnant ewes and goats access to "bitterbossie veld" for a period of at least 14 days before they are due to lamb, and for at least 14 days after lambing. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

[Afk. bitter + bos cogn. bush]

bittere(i)nder [ˌbɪtə(r)'eɪndə(r)] n. pl. -s

19, 20. A die-hard of the Anglo-Boer War; one who will not accept defeat. cf. handsupper (qv) 19, 20.

Others who surrendered - "hands-uppers" - thought the continued resistance madness and felt that the "bitter-enders" would be responsible for the ruin of their country. Keppel-Jones Short History of S.A. 1948

[Afk. fr. Du. bitter + Du. eind = end + personif. suff. -er as in Britisher]

blaasop(pie) [ˈblas,ɔ̃p(i)] n. pl. -s

(1) 12. see quot. at toby fish 12, cf. Jam. E. balloon fish.

Certain members of the sunfish group - the blaasops or puffers are poisonous. Sunfish are non-poisonous, but tough and tasteless. Lawrence Green S. Afr. Beachcomber 1958

(2) 21. Pneumora scutellaris a grasshopper-like insect with an air-filled inflated body: also known (onomat.) as gonya 21.

(3) 6. Breviceps ^{ad}dispersus ~~adpersus~~ a burrowing frog which has a habit of blowing itself up if alarmed.

The Blaasop ... often digs its way into a white-ant hill, and then comes out with the first rains. Panorama Sept. 1973

[Afk. blaas = blow + op = up + dimin. suff. -(p)ie]

blaauw- [bləʋ] n. prefix

27, 29 Prefix. Blue: see blou.

black, n. pl. -s and n. modifier

19, 23. Formerly (Hist.) equiv. of African (qv) 23, 19 sign. a member of the negroid races: now used in SAE esp. by non-white (qv) speakers and the press as in U.S. also Brit. sign. any person of colour however palely complexioned (formerly U.S. colored): occ. used in form non-black by black writers.

Students at the University of Natal Medical School, following the trend in other parts of the world, have decided to call themselves 'black' rather than non-European students. In keeping with this decision they have decided to rename their section of the University of Natal (Black Section). It was previously known as the non-European Section. Mr. -- said that the students no longer wished to be referred to as 'the negative of another group'. He said that, in future, 'other students will be referred to as 'non-blacks'. ' Daily News 9.6.70

Also in phr. to go ~ 29vb sign. to be proclaimed or zoned (qv) 29vb, 4b as an area exclusively for black occupation: see quot. at X.D.C. 4b.

PEDDIE DECLARED BLACK VILLAGE ... It was business as usual yesterday in Peddie after an nouncement by the Mayor of Peddie, -- that the village would go Black from September. E. Province Herald 2.8.74

[fr. black as in ~ power, ~ consciousness etc.]

¹blackjack ['blæk,dzæk] n. pl. -s

28. The spiky, adhesive seeds of the weed Bidens pilosa which clings firmly to trousers and stockings often in large numbers.

Black jacks. - Bidens pilosa, L. The hooked seeds of this weed are so called because of their colour. ... The Kaffirs call them Umhlaba-ngubo, "the blanket stabbers". Pettman Africanderisms 1913

... the paths are full of blackjack and weeds. ... I spent quite 10 minutes pulling off blackjacks from my skirt and stockings. Grocotts Mail 19.4.74

²blackjack, n. pl. -s

^{4b}, 19. A member of the African Municipal Police, so called on account of their black uniforms: flying ~ s - the flying squad of the same force.

... a DRUM reporter who tried to enter the building was shooed away by a city council blackjack. Drum 1973

blackleg/quarter, n.

11. See sponssiekte 11, Brit. quarter evil.

Black Sash, n. prop.

4b. A women's political organisation, founded in 1955, the members of which wear broad black diagonal sashes on vigils: the ~ also sponsors research into racial questions.

Their first title, in full, was the Women's Defence of the Constitution League. Less formally, they were known in some circles as "Weeping Winnies" - but one name which has stuck is the Black Sash. The name, in fact, is now official. Cape Times 22.5.70

black spot, n. pl. -s

4b. Black-inhabited areas surrounded by white-occupied territory or areas zoned for white occupation.

Since 1948 an estimated 175,788 Bantu people have been moved from black spots, small scheduled areas and outlying parts of other scheduled areas and resettled in the Bantu homelands. Evening Post 17.2.73

blacktail, n.

12. The S. Afr. marine fish Diplodus capensis, also known as dassie (qv), having a black spot at the end of the tail - hence the name kolstert [^{AFK} kol = spot + stert fr. Du. staart = tail]

blackwood ['blæk,wʊd] n. pl. -s

32, 18. Acacia melanoxylon: a hardwood tree and its timber, orig. native of Austr.: also known errone. as swarhout (qv) 18 and as stinkboontjie on account of the unpleasant smell of the seed when crushed.

For instance, the blackwood is a tall, pyramidal tree, not unlike

blesbok/buck ['bles, bɔk] n. pl. ∅

Damaliscus dorcasphillipsi

+ Damaliscus dorcasphillipsi

+ Georchus capensis

Fulica cristata

blesbok/buck ['bles, bɔk] n. pl. ∅

S.Afr. antelope Damaliscus dorcasphillipsi, characterised by a large white blaze on the face.

[Afk. fr. Du. bles cogn. blaze + bok cogn. buck]

a beech in its compact foliage, but infinitely more graceful and feathery in its branchings. Life at the Cape [by a Lady 1870 1963 edit.

blanke ['blankə] n. pl. -s

19, 4b. White person, European (qv) 5: seen in combinations slegs ~ s, ~ s alleen (Whites only) in places restricted to whites, and nie ~ s (non-whites) where whites are not permitted.

... I still have my South African identity card with the words 'White-Blanke' on it. Sunday Times 8.10.72

... although Chief Minister of -- he is denied some of the privileges enjoyed by some White hobos. Because of "Blankes - Nie Blankes" signs there are places he just cannot enter. He is Black. Drum 8.11.73

[Afk. blanke = white (n.) cogn. Fr. blanc]

blatjang ['blat,jaŋ] n.

7, 25. Chutney or other spiced vinegar relish not equiv. to the Malay fish condiment of the same or similar name.

... here and there 'Blatjang' (a sort of chutney) was made from dried apricots, raisins, curry powder, cloves and other ingredients. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

[Malay blachan various sp. forms]

bleddy, adj.

10, 29 adj. See blerrie.

blerrie/y, adj.

Slang. 10, 29 adj. equiv. of bloody; see also quot. at betoger 19, 4b, plaasboer 19 and ach 9; cf. Brit. blurry, Austr. plurry.

The blerry women talked all the time and stirred up trouble. Drum 22.11.72

[corruption of blerry]

bles- ['bles-] n. pref.

Flaze, prefixed to the names of several animals and birds which have a white mark on the head: as ~ bok (buck) Damaliscus

dorcasphillipsi, ~ mol (mole) Georychus capensis, ~ hoender (q.v.). See quot. at splinter new.

[Afk. fr. Du. bles = blaze]

bleshoender ['bleshʊn(d)ə(r)] n. pl. -s

3. Coot: so named from the white 'blaze' on its head: also place name Bleshoender 27d.

There is also a shooting season of three months as these lakes are well known for their bleshoenders, duikers and certain types of wild duck. Personality 5.6.69

[Afk. bles cogn. blaze + hoender = fowl]

ve a
hoender (q.v.)

Blikkiesdorp ['blɛkɪsdɔ̃(r)p] usu. n. prop.

10. Fictitious prototype of a dreary 'one-horse' town; also occ. a slum area: see gopse 10, 22, dorp 10, 22, 27.

Are you bored stiff by that routine job somewhere in Blikkiesdorp? Fair Lady 6.9.71

[Afk. blik = tin + dimin. suff. + pl. -(k)ies + dorp = town]

Blikoor ['blɛkʷə(r)] n. prop. pl. -ore usu. capitalised.

Coll. 19. One born or long resident in the Orange Free State: occ. used of a Transvaler also, cf. Austr. cornstalk (New S. Wales).

For the past 50 years and more Free Staters have been known among Dutch-speaking South Africans as Blikore (tin ears) Transvalers as Vaalperse and Cape Colonials as Woltone. The Star 1.5.34 cit. C.P. Swart Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934

[Afk. blik = tin + ore = ears (oor + pl. -e)]

bliksem ['blɛksəm, -sm] n. and interj.

Slang. 1, 9, 10. An abusive mode of address or reference to someone roughly equiv. of 'bastard', 'blackguard'.

... became so enraged that he threw a heavy desk blotter ... and swore at him, calling him "jou bliksem". Sunday Times 2.9.72

[Afk. bliksem = lightning]

blik, skop die vb phr.

15. See skop die blik 15.

blikskottel ['blɛkskɔ̃tɪ] n.

(1) Slang. 1, (19), 10. An abusive mode of address (or reference) to someone, occ. jocular as in 'blighter'

'Don't think you can get away with your rudeness, you blikskottel.' ^{Oxal} Port Elizabeth Informant 1970.

cf. bliksem 1, 19, a stronger term.

(2) ^(yare) A utensil: see skottel 18.

[Afk. blik = tin + skottel = dish cogn. chattel]

blind, adj.

22, 29. adj. Of or pertaining to an estuary or river mouth which lacks access to the sea, except in times of flood: as in Blind River (East London). *

blink- [blɛŋk] adj. prefix

(1) 29. adj. Shiny, gleaming: prefixed to certain nouns e.g. ~ klip (qv) 30, ~ haar (qv) 11, ~ blaarboom 32 Pterocarpus rotundifolius.

(2) 27i. Shining: found in place names Blinkwater Cape, Blinkwater, Transvaal.

[Afk. fr. Du. blinken, to shine, glitter]

* ... we drove past the Gamtoos mouth without seeing it. It has become so badly silted up that a ridge of sand between the blind mouth and the beach completely cut off sight of the river. E. Province Herald 19.7.73

blinkhaar ['blɪŋk,(h)a:r] modifier

11. Sheep breed: see ronderib, (2) Africander.

The ram is a treasure to be protected [Karakul ram] against leopards and jackals; the rest of the flock of Afrikander, Persian or Blinkhaar ewes may cost no more than ten shillings each. Lawrence Green Where Men Still Dream 1945

[Afk. fr. Du. blinken = shine + haar cogn. hair]

¹blinkklip, ['blɪŋk,klɪp] n.

30. (Hist. poss. obs.) Powdered micaceous ore, used as a cosmetic, valued for the native trade.

Hundreds of pack-oxen were continually moving off to the westward, loaded with the most valuable effects of the inhabitants ... red paint-stone, powder of the blink-klip, corn, carosses &c. &c. Thompson Travels I 1827

[Afk. blink = shining fr. Du. blinken + klip = stone]

²blinkklip(pie) ['blɪŋk,klɪp(i)] n. pl.

30. A diamond: often with dimin. suff. -ie.

There are Hottentots still living who remember Luderitz; they say he had two little boxes of 'blink klippies' (shining stones) and that he carried these diamonds with him when he sailed down the coast in an open boat on an exploring voyage. Lawrence Green Where Men Still Dream 1945

[Afk. blink = shining + klip = stone (+ dimin. suff. -ie)]

bloedpens ['blʊt,pe:ns] n.

11. Dysentery in lambs usu. caused by the ewes' eating bitter bush/bos (qv)
28, 11. [Afk. bloed = blood + pens = belly]

bloedsap ['blʊt,sap] n. pl. -s

4b, 19. see sap 4b, 19.

-bloem- [-blʊm-] n. prefix and suff.

13. See -blom 13. 27c. Flower: found in place names e.g. Bloemfontein, Bloemhof, Zonnebloem (Sunflower).

Our blood 'as truly mixed with yours - all down the Red Cross Train, We've bit the same thermometer in Bloeming-typhoidtein. Kipling Five Nations 1903

[Du. bloem = flower cogn. bloom]

[[Bloemfontein Appreciation, the, n. prop.

20, 34. A military exercise in use in certain British military colleges including evaluation of maps drawn by British engineers of the Anglo-Boer War period. Informant Brigadier J. B. Kriegler]

-blom [-blʊm] n. suff.

13. Flower: suffix to numerous flower names, e.g. aand ~, botter ~, gou(d) ~ etc. also -bloem as in avond ~ 13. [Afk. fr. Du. flower cogn. bloom]

-blommetjie [-blōmīkī, 'cī] n. pl. -s

13. Little flower: see blom. [Afk. blom = flower + dimin. suff. -(m)etjie]

bloodwood, n.

18, 32. The tree Pterocarpus angolensis and its timber which has a dark red colour: see kiaat 18, cf. Austr. bloodwood any species of eucalyptus having red sap. [trans. Afk. bloedhout]

blou- [bləʋ-] adj. prefix

(1) Blue: prefix to very numerous flower names: often sign.

blue-purple, blue-green, mauve etc. ~ tulp, ~ aalwee(aloe), apple,

~ disa: also to the names of animals and birds e. g. ~ bok (q. v.) the

(buck) Cephalophus monticola, ~ valk (falcon) Elanus coeruleus,

~ kraan(crane) Anthropoides paradisea, ~ aap(~~vervee~~ monkey)

Cercopithecus oethiops etc. eg.

(2) Blue: found in place names prefixed to n. Bloukrans, Blouberg, Bloudrif, Flouhaak.

bloubaadjie ['bləʋ, bəʋkī, -cī] n. pl. -s

4b, 19. A provincial traffic policeman, so called from his blue uniform: a ~ usu. drives a blue provincial administration car.

... there were only two deaths in the Southern Cape over Easter ... We believe that the main credit for this must go to the 'bloubaadjies' who were to be seen on active duty every few miles along the Garden Route ... Het Suid Western 26. 4. 73.

(2) Coll. 4b. A convict serving between nine and fifteen years, classified as an Habitual Criminal in terms of the Criminal Procedures Act of 1955: also blourokkie.

Oppas they don't get you. Blourokkie next time they catch you stealing. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969

[Afk. fr. Du. blauw cogn. blue + baadjie (qv) = jacket (rok = dress + dimin. suff. -(k)ie)]

bloubok ['bləʋ, bōk] n. pl. -s, ∅

6.† Cephalophus monticola; also blue buck, the smallest of the S. Afr. antelopes, bluish-grey to brown in colour and about the size of a hare. [Afk. fr. Du. blauw cogn. blue + bok cogn. buck]

bloubos ['bləʋ, bōs] n.

32. See bluebush 32.

bloubossie [bləʋ, bōsī] n. pl. -s

28, 11. Any of several species and genera esp. Pteronia incana a troublesome weed which encroaches on the ∅ veld (qv). [Afk. fr. Du. blauw cogn. blue + bos cogn. bush + dimin. suff. -(s)ie]

bloudraad ['bləʋ, drət] n.

[prob. Sect. Country use] Galvanised wire used for numerous purposes on farms and among country people. us purposes

If you can get a bit of bloudraad we can fix this trailer quite firmly. George, Cape. Jan. 1976 's quite

[Afk. lit. 'blue wire', draad, wire, cogn. thread]

bloudruk ['bləv,drœk] n.

5. More often known as German print (qv), also Kaffir print (qv). 5.

Paris fashion plates had not reached the 'Backveld', dress materials being limited to the 'Dutch' and 'German' Blaudruck print, checked Gingham, Kapje Sis (a light cotton dress material always with a very small pattern) ... Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

[Afk. fr. Du. blauw = blue + druk = print]

blougat ['bləv,xat] n.

Coll. Sect. Army. 19, 20. ^{Also blouie: a} A national serviceman who has completed his basic three months' training: ^{^ see quite at} also blouie: see ou man 19, 20. [Afk. blou = blue + gat = bottom, backside]

×

blouie ['bləvɪ] n. pl. -s

19, 20. See blougat.

Attention roofies, blouies and oumanne, you will read this. Scope 10.1.75

bloukom ['bləv,kɔm] n. pl. -s

32. Also bloekom erron: see blue gum.

blourokkie ['bləv,rɔki] n. pl. -s

4b, 19. See (2) bloubaadjie 4b, 19.

blueback, n. pl. -s

(Hist.) 24, 17. Paper currency which was worth far less than its face value issued by the Transvaal (old S.A. Republic) Government in 1865: see Zuid Afrikaanse Republiek 4b: cf. U.S. greenback dollar (note).

The Republican paper currency was worth as little as its "goodfors", pound "Blue-back" notes were fetching a shilling apiece. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

bluebuck, n. pl. ∅

6. See bloubok 6.

bluebush, n. pl. -es

32. orig. any of several species of Diospyros, shrubby trees of overall bluish colouring, later applied to other plants of similar colouring: also Austr. (variety of saltbush with bluish foliage).

blueground, see p42

bluegum, n. pl. -s

32. Used loosely of any of several species of Eucalyptus; also a place name 27c Bluegums: also Austr.

The day was a blazer and we were glad that the big meeting of the day was to be held within the shade of the bluegum and beefwood trees ... R. Y. Stormberg Mrs Pieter de Bruyn (.1920)

blue soap, n.

Mottled blue soap made of animal fat and orig. vegetable lye; see ganna and brakbos, still in regular use all over S.A.

[... a species of soap made from the fat of beef and sheep, with the ashes of some particular plants; it resembles in appearance a bluish mottled marble. Percival Account of the C. of G.H. 1804]

What most women had ... were ... mealie meal, samp, flour and sugar ... sugar beans ... yeast, long bars of blue soap and washing powder. E. Province Herald 5.7.75

I was carrying a leg of lamb and memories of women who can still make a cake of blue soap, smooth as marble, delicately mottled and veined with blue. Sunday Times Mag. 16.5.76

blue ground, n.

42

30. Dark greyish blue diamondiferous clay of volcanic origin occurring in pipe-like formations usually below surface layers of yellow ground (qv) 30: also known as blue earth, 'the blue', Kimberlite (qv) 30.

... but the greatest proportion of diamonds were found in the unique geological formation of pipes of blue ground running deep into the earth. De Kiewiet History of S.A. Social and Economic 1941

blue soap, n.

18. Mottled blue soap made of animal fat and, orig., vegetable lye^k, still in regular use all over S.A. See quod., addenda p 587.

stet [...] a species of soap made from the fat of beef and sheep, with the ashes of some particular plants; it resembles in appearance a bluish mottled marble. Percival Account of the C. of G.H. 1804

blue tongue, n.

(1) 11. A disease of horses, also known as autumn fever, in which the head and/or tongue become swollen: see ²dikkop.

(2) 11. A serious virus disease of sheep which can also affect cattle.

Death, like a hailstorm in the wheat, rinderpest among the cattle, blue tongue among the sheep, could come at any moment. Uys Krige The Dream and the Desert 1953

[trans. Afk. bloutong fr. Du. blauwtong]

blushing bride, n. pl. -s

13. Also Pride of Franschoek: Serruria florida a member of the protea family with drooping pale pink heads, hence the name; cf. Jam. E. shame-lady (plant) .

... the "Blushing Bride" has reappeared in the Kloof fairly recently in great profusion. The delicate shrub has pink flowers, the colour of a blush. According to Franschoek custom, a man takes off his hat when he encounters the "Blushing Bride." Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

[Afk. skaamblom 'bashful flower']

bo- [bu:, bʁə] prep. and adj. prefix

(1) 27k. Upper, top: found in S. Afr. place names as adj. with n. e.g. Boplaas.

(2) 27k. Above: found in place names as prep. with n. usu. hyphenated e.g. Bo-Wadrif, Bo-Kouga: see also boven. [Afk. fr. Du. boven = above]

boardman, n. pl. -men

19, 2, 4b. A member of a location (qv) 4b, 22 management board, or an Urban Bantu Council: see U.B.C. 4b.

Veteran Mamelodi Advisory Boardman W.M. — is going to ask the Board to press for women to be allowed to vote for hobbies in Board elections ... Post 30.5.71

bobbejaan [bɔ̃bə'ja:n] n. prefix

28. Baboon: prefixed to numerous plant names often sign. bogus, inferior, e.g. ~ tou (qv) 28, ~ appel (apple) 28. 27d also in place names Bobbejaanstert(tail), Bobbejaanskloof; also Du. form Baviaanskloof, Baviaansriver. [Afk. fr. Middle Du. babiaen]

bobbejaan spanner [bɔ̃bə'ja:n -] n. pl. -s

18. A monkey wrench.

Ouma was always prepared for any eventuality. In the black back which never left her side she kept bandages and medicine, needle and thread, and even a bobbejaan spanner. New S. Afr. Writing Vol. 3 (no date) pub. Purnell

bobbejaan spinnekop [bɔ̃bə'ja:n 'spɛnəkɔp] n. pl. -s

21. Baboon spider: a large hairy spider (also Du. baviaan spinnekop).

Where the outspan place is are many spiders. The baviaan spinnekops [sic] with long brown hair on them. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

[Afk. fr. Middle Du. babiaen = baboon + spinnekop = spider]

bobbejaantjie [bɔ̃bə'jaznkɪ, 'tʃi] n. pl. -s

13. The various species of Babiana, the bulbs of which are said to be eaten and enjoyed by baboons. [Afk. bobbejaan fr. Middle Du. babiaen = baboon + dimin. suff. -tjie]

bobbejaantou [bɔ̃bə'ja:n,təʊ] n.

28. Any of several liane-forming plants including Scutia myrtina, katdoring 28; also called monkey rope(s) 28 and baviaanstouw 28, which can form an *almost* impenetrable undergrowth of long twining stems and do considerable harm to forest trees. [Afk. fr. Middle Du. babiaen = baboon, here poss. sign. spurious or inferior + touw = rope]

bobotie [bə'bu.ti, -'bʋə] n.

7. A traditional Cape dish of curried minced meat sometimes including dried apricots and/or almonds, covered with a savoury custard preparation: *see quib, at borie: cf. U.S. bobotee, a similar dish from the S. States*
Traditional South African dishes, including bobotie, were served ... Daily Dispatch 4. 4. 72

[etym. dub. prob. fr. Malay boeboe, bubu fr. Javanese boemboe = spices, or poss. burbur = pulp, soup] * cf. Canad. rubaboo

bode [bʋədə] n. pl. -s

4b, 19, 17. See bo(o)de 4b, 19.

boeboes [bʋ, bʋs] n.

28, 11. R(h)enosterbos (qv) is so called in the E. Cape. [fr. Xh. name ibhubhusi]

Furniture was mainly of wood indigenous to the Transvaal such as
tambotie, boekenhout (South African beech), Landekod (leadwood),
Knoppiesdoring (knobthorn) - red and white syringa.
Panorama Jan. 1975

boep [búp]

Coll. Slang. Paunch, pot belly: a beer ~ - beer drinker's belly;

on ~ slang, usu. children, pregnant: cf. Austral. bing(e)y, Jam. E.

bangbelly, bang-gut. [P. H. Voopans, panned]

Tight trousers remain for formal wear: ... for heaven's sake, if you're fat don't wear your trousers tight. Everywhere we've got to look at three layers of boep sticking out now. Darling 9.6.76

boedelkamer ['būdl,ka mə(r)] n.

Hist. 17, 30. The court having the handling of insolvent estates; cf. Brit. and U.S. slang boodle, caboodle.

A court called the Boodle Kaamer, comprised of a president and two members, has the regulating of all insolvent estates. James Ewart Journal 1811-1814

[Du. boedel = property, estate + kamer cogn. chamber fr. Lat. camera]

boegoe ['būxū] n.

28, 16. See buchu 28, 16. 27c Buchu (qv) in place name Boegoeberg.

boekenhout ['būkən,həvt] n.

32, 18. The tree Rapanea melanophloeos and its timber, also Faurea saligna, both having some similarity to the European beechwood: 27c. in place name Boekenhout; cf. Austr. beech for similar trees.

Forest. - Felling of Timber: - Keurboom and Beukenhout this month. Oak in March or April, the other Cape timber all the year round.

S. Afr. Almanac for 1833 (Greig)

[fr. Du. beukeboom = beech]

boeke vat ['būkə ,fat] vb phr.

^{29vb}
4a, ^ Family prayers usu. in the evening: see quot.

When I was a small boy on the farm in the Free State my father observed the old Boer custom of "boeke vat" performing religious devotions after the evening meal! The books of course, were the Bible and the hymn book. E. Province Herald 29. 8. 74

[Afk. boeke = books + vat = to take]

bo-en-onderdeur [bʋə n̩ ɔ̃n(d)ə(r), d̩œ(r)] n.

18. Lit. 'above-and-below-door'; see stable door 18 and quot. at onderdeur 18.

[Afk. fr. Du. boven = above, upper + en = and + onder cogn. under + deur cogn. door]

boep [būp] n.

16. Coll. Slang. Paunch, pot belly: a beer ~ - beer drinker's belly: *

cf. Austr. bing(e)y, Jam. E. bangbelly, bang-gut. * on ~ slang, usu. children,

feet Tight trousers remain for formal wear: ... for heaven's sake if you're pregnant. don't wear your trousers tight, everywhere we'd get to look at, these lads

boer [bʋə, bu:r] n. pl. -s, -e

Dating 9.6.76

(1) 19, 4b. An Afrikaner (qv) often in a political sense, see Boerenasie 4b.

(2) (Hist.) often in combination Dutch ~: the early Dutch inhabitants of the Cape.

In a large house near the banks of this river inhabited by a Dutch settler of the name of ... we took up our abode for the night, where we experienced that hospitality so proverbial in the Cape Boers. James Ewart Journal 1811-1814

(4) 20. A soldier on the Republic side
Ubique means the dancing plain that changes rocks to Boers.
Kipling Five Nations 1903

World War II - even the Great War - also proved that "Boer and Brit" can work together harmoniously. Evening Post 29. 4. 72

(5) 4b. boer; ^{Prison warders or} Slang: the police
[Afk. fr. Du. boer = agriculturist]

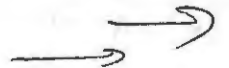
boer- [bʊə, bu:r] n. prefix

compounds: prefix freq. Hist. as in brandy

... asked her whether she had not heard of white people hereabouts ... in the years before 'lo ma Bunu' (the Boer) and the Red Coats had fought. McMagh, Dinner of Herbs 1968

Warders generally are boere ... you're a canary if you talk ... to the boere
S.A. Gaol Argot, English Usage in S.A. Vol 5 No 1 May 1974

Boerboel x Mastiff pups; excellent farm and watch dogs
Advt. Grocott's Mail 18.6.76



boerebeskuit ['bu:rəbə,skœɪt] n. pl. ∅

7. Country-style bun rusks, sweetened or unsweetened commercially available in various flavours, often made of mosbolletjies (qv) 7.

[Afk. boere = farmers', country + beskuit = rusk cogn. Fr. biscuit]



Boerechurch ['bu:rə,tʃɜ:tʃ] n. prop.

[A.E.] poss. obj. 2, 4a. African usage for Dutch Reformed Church (qv) 4a.

The two Black ministers of the Black congregation Ds Molopi and Ds Meje ... said they had to weather criticism from their people about the "Boerechurch", but now they were able to hold their heads high. E. Province Herald 27.8.74

[Afk. boere sign. Afrikaner (modifier)]

boerehaat ['bu:rə,ha:t] n. or n. prop. usu. capitalised.

4b. Political term coined in the early seventies sign. hatred of or hate campaign against the Afrikaner (qv) 19: see also (1) Boer 19.

"Boerehaat" made its first appearance at Caledon a week ago when Mr. --, Nationalist MP for --, claimed that a deliberate attempt was being made to discredit and destroy the Afrikaner. Sunday Times 22.10.72.

deriv. er one who hates the Afrikaner.

It certainly needs courage to speak up for the rights of the English section. Proof of this was the roar of "boerehater" which greeted Mr. --. Life presumably becomes very simple when a person who stands up for the elementary rights of the English section can be easily dismissed as a "boerehater." Sunday Times 1.9.74

[Afk. boere = Afrikaners + haat = hate]

boereliedjie(s) ['bu:rə,lkɪ(z), -ci(s)] n. usu. pl.

15. Afrikaans folk songs usu. fairly simple in words and structure: see also boeremusiek 15. [Afk. boere = folk, country + lied = song + dimin. suff. -jie + pl. -s cogn. Ger. lieder]

boeremusiek ['bu:rə,mœsɪk, -mə-] n.

15. Rhythmic country-style dance music played usu. by a boereorkes (qv) 15; cf. U.S. blue-grass music.

... a dance hall where liquor is banned and young people dance to boeremusiek on Saturday nights - has started a bitter feud in the town. *Dominee says boeremusiek sessions will encourage evil. Sunday Times 10.9.72

[Afk. boere = country people + musiek cogn. music]

Boerenasie, (the) ['bu:rə,nasi] n. prop.

(1) 4b. The Afrikaner people as a whole usu. esp. supporters of the Nationalist (qv) Government: see Afrikanerdom.

(2) 4b. A political organisation.

[Afk. Boere = Afrikaners + nasie cogn. nation]

boereorkes ['bu:rə'ɔ̃r,kəs] n.

15. A band, consisting usu. of a concertina or piano accordion, mouth organ, fiddle and/or guitar, sometimes a piano, playing boeremusiek (qv) 15 or boereliedjies (qv) usu. for dancing. [Afk. boere = country people('s) + orkes = orchestra, band]

boereraat ['bu:rə,vɑ:t] n. pl. -rate
 16 A country remedy or 'simple': see also vald remedy: quot. opposite page.

boeresaal ['bu:rə,sɑ:l] n. pl. -s

11, 18. A hall in a country town: poss. property of a Farmer's Co-op.
 The venue is a boeresaal at -- in the sticks. Cape Times
 3.7.71

boereseun ['bu:rə,siõn] n. pl. -s

19. An unsophisticated country boy: not derogatory, not equiv. of hayseed, hick etc. [Afk. boere = country(people) + seun = boy cogn. son]

boeresport ['bu:rə,spɔ̃(r)t] n.

(1) Traditional Afrikaner games; see jukskei, volkspele, also Kussingslaan sep p 590

There will be boeresport for children and adults, a gymkhana, jukskei and a watermelon feast in the afternoon and a braaivleis at night. Evening Post 5.2.72

(2) Slang: flirtation, cuddling.

[Afk. boere = of or pertaining to the (-l) Boers (qv) + sport = games, amusements]

boeretroos ['bu:rə,trɔ̃s] n.

7. Coffee: [Afk. boere - Afrikaner + troos = comfort, consolation]

See quot. at addenda p.587.

boer(e)vrou ['bu:r(ə),frəv] n. pl. -s

(1) 19. A countrywoman, understanding the domestic arts, soapmaking, sausage-making and other occupations befitting a farmer's wife: see quot. at vrou 19. (2) 19, 10. Coll. (poss. ironically) a narrowminded country woman of few ideas and limited taste. [Afk. boere = farming folk + vrou = woman]

boerewors ['bu:rə,vɔ̃(r)s] n.

7. Orig. home made country sausage, now commercially available everywhere, much in favour for braais (qv) 15 consisting usu. of a mixture of beef and pork.

She also ... makes her own boerewors. "I practically have to seduce the butcher to give me the skins for this" she said. Daily Dispatch 24.7.71

Boerewors. 10lb beef, 6lb pork (the Voortrekkers used lean and fat game instead). Hilda Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

[Afk. boere = farmer's, country + wors = sausage cogn. Ger. Wurst]

Boer goat ['bʊə, gəʊt, 'bu:r-] n. pl. -s

11. The hardy, indigenous S. Afr. goat.

The Boer goat, which is termed the native goat to distinguish it from the recently imported Angora, is a strong, coarse, hardy energetic animal, strongly resembling the English goat. Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

[Afk. boer = 'country' sign. indigenous + goat]

boermeel/meal ['bʊə(r), mɪəl, bu:r-] n.

7. Wheat flour containing a proportion of brown, both bran and wheat germ hence bread, scones etc: see quot. at roti 7, 25. [Afk. boer = country style + meel = flour cogn. mill vb = grind]

boerperd ['bu:r, pe rt] n. pl. -e and n. modifier

11. A gaited horse described as 'almost indigenous' dating back to the time of Lord Charles Somerset and descended from English thoroughbreds.

[There are only two breeds of gaited horses in S.A., the American saddle horse and the boerperd.] Hence championships, shows etc.

Her research included an in-depth study of part-bred horses which included the Old Cape Horse from which the Boerperd originates. Farmer's Weekly 9.5.73

The best child's five gaited riding horse ... Vonk a boerperd gelding. Ibid 24.4.74

[Afk. boer = Afrikaner, indigenous + perd fr. Du. paard = horse]

boerverneuker ['bu:rfə(r), nʌəkə(r)] n. pl. -s

19, 30. A usu. itinerant merchant trading on the ignorance and credulity of unsophisticated rustics.

But supposing you're only a poor bloody Jew in a donkey-cart, who's not a Boer-verneuker come to skin them but a harmless bloke that can tootle a song and play the concertina? Brett Young City of Gold 1940

[Afk. boer = countryman + verneuk = cheat, deceive + agent. suff. -er]

Boer War, n. pl. -s

20. The South African War(s) of 1888 and 1899-1902 between the British and the Boers (qv) 4: also known as Anglo and (Afk.) Vryheidsoorlog (qv) 20, 4b.

Upon sections of South Africa's population the years immediately before and after the Boer War saw descend a dull apathy, even an indifference to the aspirations of civilized men. De Kiewiet History of S. A. Social and Economic 1941

boesman ['bʊs, man] n. pl. -s

[A.E.] 1, 19. A derogatory mode of address or reference to a Coloured person i. e. one of mixed blood, by an African (qv) 19.

I'd like to ask Mr Mpanza why do most Africans refer to Indians and Coloured as 'Boesmans' and 'm'kula's'? These are everyday terms of abuse used by a majority of people. Post 16.5.71

[Afk. for Bushman fr. Du. Boschjesman (*Zu. fr. coolie)]

boesman(s) ['būs,man(s)-] n. prefix, adj.

29^{adj.} Prefix to numerous plant names 28 e.g. ~s amandel (almond),
~sgras, ~stoontjies (little toes) etc. [Afk. for Bushman (qv) fr.
Du. Boschjesman]

boet(ie) ['būt(ī) n. pl. -s

(1) Coll. 1, 19. Mode of address or reference to a friend, not necessarily a brother: ~ie to or of a younger person or a child: also ou~ (qv) as term of affection between friends (see also swaer 1, 19), or to an elder brother (see also ousus): klein~ to or of a younger brother: see quot. at ouboet 1, 19, cf. buti (qv) 2, 1, and Austr. bing(h)i, brother.

(2) boetie 2, 1, 19. erron. for buti (qv) 2, 1, 19.

(3) Boet n. prop. 34, 23. Coll. among children: Afrikaans (qv) 23 language and literature as a school subject, e.g. 'I came bottom in Boet'. See also Afriks 23, 34. [Afk. boet = brother (+ dimin. suff. -ie)]

boetebos(sie) ['būtə,bōs(ī)] n. pl. -ies, -se, -ø

11, 4b, 28. A plant pest Xanthium spinosum, a type of burr weed the fruits of which do serious damage to fleeces: [its eradication was made compulsory on pain of a fine by legislation in 1860] see proclaimed weed 4b, 28, cf. Austr. Bathurst burr, Xanthium.

Boetebossi ..., Xanthium spinosum, so called from the fact that a fine is the penalty for failing to keep one's land free from this pest. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Afk. boete = fine + bos cogn. bush (+ dimin. suff. -ie)]

boetie [būtī] n. pl. -s

See (1) boet and (2) boet 1, 19: also b(h)uti 2, 1.

boetie-boetie ['būtī,būtī] modifier usu. predic.

Coll. 10. Over-friendly, flattering or 'all over' some one, often with an ulterior motive. [Afk. boetie-boetie speel (play) = to 'butter up' or flatter] Jam. E. baba-lad vb flatter.

bof [bōf] n. pl. -s

Slang. 19,10,usu. among children: an effeminate person or homosexual, hence adj. ~ish: vbl n. boffing: see also moffie; cf. Jam. E. bef, a fool.

The acting in (name of play) was brilliant - one almost forgot that they were just some old bofs. I really enjoyed it. Letter Schoolgirl aged 16, 9.7.74

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Brit. slang boffing = masturbation or Du. boef = rogue, villain]

bog [bōx] vb trans. and intrns.

Coll. 10, 29vb. To play truant, 'bunk' school: see also stokkiesdraai 10, cf. U.S. to bag school.

I asked where she was and the children said she wasn't sick she must be bogging - playing truant. Informant Port Elizabeth Schoolteacher July 1971

[unknown]

bok [bɔk] n.

(1) Slang. Lover, see bokkie. [Afk. bok = flame, beau]

(2) Slang. One who is eager, a 'keen starter': also as adj. equiv. of 'keen.' [Unknown: poss. as at (1) bok]

Who? Me? I'm a bok for having fun and all, but I'll have to keep this one quiet ... Darling 29.1.75

bohaai [,bũ'hɑɪ] n.

Coll. 10. A disturbance, fuss, to-do, racket: see quot. at volksleier 19, cf. Austr. to kick up Bobsy-die fr. Brit. slang Bobs-a-dying, Jam. E. rig-jug, bangerang noise, disturbance, quarrelling, Ang. Ind. bobbery

In all this controversy ... one cannot but suspect that much of the bohaai comes from people hurt because their clothes have been stolen while they were bathing. Cape Argus 19.12.70

[Afk. bohaai = fuss, noise, also hoehaai cf. Brit. hoo-ha, prob. cogn. Fr. brouhaha]

-bok [-bɔ̃k] n. suff.

2. Buck: suffixed to names of most varieties of S.A. antelopes e. g.

spring ~ , bles ~ , bonte ~ , blou ~ , all (qv) 6. ^x [Afk. bok cogn.

buck] ^x ... they called ... horned cattle beasts, the whole family of antelopes boks ...
Troschichtenstein Travels I 1812

bok [bɔ̃k] n.

(1) Slang. 19, 15. Lover, see bokkie. [Afk. bok = flame, beau]

^x(2) Slang. 19, 15. One who is eager, a keen starter: also as adj. equiv. of 'keen'
[Unknown: poss. as at (1) bok]

'bok [bɔ̃k] n. prop. pl. -s

15, 19. Abbr. of Springbok: a member of a S. Afr. national or international sports team: freq. capitalised Bok.

... on five overseas tours, the Boks captain has been a back and on five tours a forward. Evening Post 29.4.72

Italian ban may hit rugby Boks. E. Province Herald 22.8.74

bokaal [,bũ'ka:l] n. pl. -s

18. A large, lidded, glass goblet, occ. used as a loving cup and freq. engraved.

At the dinner which followed a Cape wedding a large bokaal ... was passed round the table so that each guest might drink the health of the family. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

[Du. bokaal = beaker fr. Gk. baukalis, vessel for liquids, cogn. Ger. Pokal = drinking cup]

bokbaaivygie ['bɔ̃k,baɪ'feɪxɪ] n. pl. -s

13. See vygie 13.

bokbaard ['bɔ̃k,ba:rt] n.

Coll. 16. Goatee beard, *see L*

And a beard like a tramp ... 'But it's a bok-baardjie Pa. All my friends are growing them. New S. Afr. Writing (no date) pub. Purnell ~~Cancel~~

Mr. O'— has grey hair and a grey bokbaard. He is about 5ft 6in tall. Col. — ... is tall and clean-shaven ... : Het Suid Western 3.10.74

[[28. Also a plant name, Festuca caprina, a grass]]

[Afk. fr. Du. bok = goat + baard cogn. beard]

Malaconotus zeylonus

bok pal(s) ['bɔk ˈpæl(z)] n. usu. pl.

Coll. Great friend(s): see baasboets.

[Afk. bok cogn. buck + Eng. pal(s)]

bok-bok ['bɔ̃k, bɔ̃k] n.

15. A boys' game of great antiquity, similar to leap frog [illustrated in Breughel's painting of children's games]. Brit. High (Hey) Cockalorum.

Bok-Bok, that most popular game among South African boys with its quaint formula - Bok, Bok, staan styf Hoeveel vingers op jou lyf? followed by the collapse of the mound of players - has its foundation somewhere in the Middle Ages. V. de Kock The Fun They Had 1955

[abbr. formula quoted above sign. ~~~~ stand rigid, how many fingers on your body? In Roman times: Bucca Bucca quot sunt hic? - How many are here?] [etym. dub. poss. cogn. buck]

bokhorinkie ['bɔ̃k, hvərɛŋkɪ] n. pl. -s

13. General name of several plants having fruit or leaves similar to little horns, also given to the aasblom (qv) several species of Stapelia with foetid-smelling flowers. [Afk. bok = goat + horing = horn + dimin. suff. -ie]

-bok(ke)- ['bɔ̃k(ə)] n. sing. or pl.

27d. Buck, goat: found in place names usu. with n. e.g. Boksburg, Cold Bokkeveld, Bokfontein, Bosbokrand etc. [Afk. fr. Du. bok = buck, goat]

bokken(s) ['bɔ̃kəm(s)] n. freq. pl.

7. Also bokkoms: salted, sundried fish, often haarders (qv), also known as Cape Biltong; cf. Canad. Digby chips salted dried herring fillets.

Some people call it "Cape biltong", but as a rule it is better known as bokkem - delicious dried fish which is peculiar to the Western Cape Province. Panorama June 1970

[Du. bokkem/bokking = salt herring prob. rel. Italian baccala, Port. bacalhau = dried salt cod]

bokkie ['bɔ̃kɪ] n. pl. -s

Coll. 1, 19, (15). Usu. a term of endearment as address or reference to the loved one, or Coll. Slang, 19, 15. Boy- or girl-friend, lover: see kêrel 19, 15: occ. a coarse familiarity, see quot. cf. Jam. E. bucky = a man.

Someone bumped into her. "Sorry, Bokkie," he said, leering at her. "Where are you going, Bokkie?" he asked. Meiring Candle in the Wind 1959

[Afk. bok = buck + dimin. suff. -(k)ie]

bokmakierie ['bɔ̃kma, kɪrɪ] n. pl. -s

3. Telephorus zeylonus, a large green and yellow shrike with a loud distinctive call also known as kokkewiet (qv) 3 from the cry of the male 'bacbakiri' and that of the female 'couit couit'. Also Jan pierewiet, Jan frederik.

In the English countryside the peacock's cry announces changing weather; in the Cape the call to heed is that of the bokmakierie. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

[onomat.]

bok pal(s) ['bɔ̃k 'pæl(tɪ)] n. un. pl.

Coll. 19 Great friend(s): see baasboets.

[Afk. bok cogn. buck + Emp. pal(s)]

bombella (train) n. pl -s

A third class train used by Africans: see mbombela.

[Afk. bombella, railway truck for Africans, thought to be fr. Yh. word meaning packed or stuffed (not traceable)]

All those who were grown up found it more profitable to go to a recruiting office and join the Bombella train, that took them to EGoli, Johannesburg, the city of gold. Westwood, Bright Wilderness 1970

Boland [^{southern part of the}'bɒləlant] n. prop. usu. capitalised.

27. The Western Cape Province: often used as a modifier e.g. farmers, climate; also a peach variety.

19. ers, the people of the area.

... delicious dried fish peculiar to the Western Cape Province. There it is eaten by discerning "Bolanders". Many of the inhabitants of this region have this delicacy strung up on their back verandah... Panorama June 1970

[Afk. bo fr. Du. boven = upper, top + land = region]

bollemakiesie [ˌbɔləma'kisi] n. pl. -s

15. Somersault, head over heels. cf. Austr. head over turkey.

That poor girl did a bollemakiesie over her partner and fell flat on her face. King William's Town Informant 1970

[Afk. bollemakiesie = somersault etym. dub. various Du. forms]

bolo ['bɒv, lɒv] n.

7. A forequarter cut of beef.

... usually you'll pay a little less for them than for hindquarter cuts. Bolo is a forequarter cut. It tastes like topside, and is cooked the same. Sunday Times 6.2.72

[etym. dub. Afk. bladstuk = a cut from the shoulder]

bomb, n. pl. -s

24, 8. A 1.125 litre bottle.

Bombay Merchant, n. prop. pl. -s

Obs. 30, 25. An Indian merchant, also known as an Arab merchant in the early days in Natal; usu. Muslims and of the passenger (qv) class: see quot. at Arab.

*

bond, n. pl. -s

30. Usual S. Afr. term for a mortgage bond on property, normally subject to set rates of interest: also kusting(brief) 30.

Bond [bɔnt] n. prop.

4b. Abbr. for either of two political organisations, the Afrikaner and the Broeder, occ. for other organisations with -bond suff. when mentioned in context.

Dr. --, MP, head of the Broederbond, says that the Bond, like any other organisation, has a right to make representations on policy to the Government. Sunday Times 24.9.72

[Afk. bond = league cogn. Ger. Bund]

^(train)
bombella [ˌbɔm'be.la] n.

2, 31. A third class train used by Africans: see mbombela 2, 31.

See addenda p 587.

[Afk. bombella 'stuffed in' for mbombela (qv) 'overcrowded African workers' train, acc. Boshoff and Nienaber for the word mean 'stuffed in', not traceable]

bones, pl. n.

16, 2. The bones of elephants, baboons and monkeys representing the ancestors, parents and children respectively used by witchdoctors for purposes of divination.

A reputed 'inyanga' ... when asked how bones are read, stated that the secret ... lay in the position in which the bones lay after being 'thrown' on a sacred mat. The 'patient' breathes his spirit on to the bones as they are placed in the cupped hands of the diviner. The diviner does the same. .
Bona Mar. 1974

bones, throw the vb phr.

16, 2. See quot. at bones 16, throw the bones 16, 29vb, also (2) dolos 16: cf. Austr. to point the bone, Canad. throw medicine, [Brit. 'playing the bones' old busker's art], see quot. at gumboot dance 2, 15

bonsella [ˌbɒn'selə] n. pl. -s

Coll. 2, 24. A present, gratuity: also basela; potlatch (orig. gift: money or goods), *And. Ind. baksheesh*, *Canad. buckshee*.

South Africa's brandy distillers are to receive a bonsella worth between R350 000 and R400 000 a year from taxpayers ... Sunday Times 5.9.71

[Zu. ibhanselo = a gift, (ukubansela vb) Xh. ukubasele = to give a present, token of gratitude]

Bonsmara [ˌbɒns'mɑ:rə] n. prop.

11. A S. Afr. bred cattle strain, a beef breed: see quot.

Delegates to the conference look at Bonsmara bulls ... The Bonsmara is an indigenous South African breed which combines three parts Shorthorn and five parts Afrikaner blood. Panorama June 1974

[fr. n. prop. J. C. Bonsma]

bont [bɒnt] adj.

29adj. Pied, variegated, multi-coloured, sometimes gaudy: in combination ebok (qv) 6, daeraad 12 (see daeraad), paling 12, rok(qv) 12, tick (qv) 21, (e)veld (qv) 22.

[Afk. bont = pied, multi-coloured]

bont(e) [bɒnt(ə)] adj. prefix

27j. Coloured, pied: found in place names prefixed to n, both predic. form and attrib. inflect. e.g. Bontrand, Bonteheuwel.

bontebok [ˌbɒntə,bɔk] n. pl. -s

6. The rare S. Afr. antelope Damaliscus pygargus with a coat of reddish chocolate colour, white rump and a long white blaze down the face: now stringently protected,

Among the buck recently placed in the reserve are four bontebok from Bredasdorp. The bontebok nearly met the same fate as the quagga and other interesting animals. It was estimated not so long ago that there were hardly more than two dozen bontebok left in South Africa - and that meant in the whole world. Lawrence Green Tavern of the Seas 1947

[Afk. bonte attrib. adj. = pied + bok cogn. buck]

bont tick [bǒnt-, bɔnt-] n. pl. -s

21. The parasitic S. Afr. tick Amblyomma hebraeum which transmits heartwater (qv) is a disease of sheep, goats and cattle.

The kudu is a carrier of the bont tick (Amblyomum Hebraeum) which tick spreads the deadly heartwater disease. Grocott's Mail 14. 4. 71

bont(e) veld ['bǒnt(ə),felt] n.

22. (1) Veld (qv) in which acacia trees abound, also called elandveld 22 or thorn veld 22.

bontrok ['bǒnt,rɔk] n. pl. ∅

(1) 12. One of the names of the marine fish usu. called Zebra (qv).

(2) bontrok(kie) 3. A species of stone-chat: Saxicola torquata.

[Afk. bont = colourful, pied + rok = dress, fr. Du. rok = coat (+ dimin. suff. -ie)]

bo(o)de ['brɔdə] n.

Hist. [[obs.]] 17. The messenger of the court.

... one of my Hottentots was sent with a packet of letters to a farm-house ... where the Tulbagh Boode who was to forward them to Cape Town, was expected to arrive on his way from Hantam. Burchell Travels I 1822

The officers of the Court consisted of a Fiscal ... and some minor officials such as the Bode (Sheriff) etc. L. H. Meurant Sixty Years Ago 1885

[Du. and Afk. bode = messenger]

book, n. pl. -s

Substand. 15. Often used sign. magazine or other bound newspaper: also comic ~, a comic or strip cartoon paper: also substand. Brit.

... a carrier bag containing the dagga the police had found. Some of the drug was placed in a tin and some mixed with cigarette tobacco and placed in a comic book. Daily Dispatch 11. 3. 72

book/bag, n. pl. -s

18, (34). A satchel or other case for school books.

I took the headmistress the bookbag we all used at — as a pattern. Oral Informant: Woman ex Johannesburg 1974

[trans. Afk. boeksak = satchel]

Book of Life, n. prop.

4b. A comprehensive personal identity document for White South Africans, initiated in 1971, including driving and gun licences and details of marital status.

The six foolscap-page form which people in South Africa will have to complete for the "Book of Life" - the Government's new super-identity-card - will pry deeply into personal affairs. Sunday Times 14. 11. 71

Dendrohyrax arboreus

Dispholidus typus

Bophuthatswana [bõ'pütatswana] n. prop.

The homeland (q. v.) within the Republic of S. A. of the Tswana (q. v.) people as distinct from Botswana (q. v.).

[fr. Tswana]

There, at the edge of Bophuthatswana, homeland of the Tswana, the Bantu Investment Corporation (BIC) has established industries providing employment for the inhabitants of Temba, a town in the area.

book pass n. pl. -es

[A.E.] 2, 4b. See pass 4b, reference book 4b.

-boom [bʋəm] n.

(1) 32. Tree: suffixed to the names of numerous S. Afr. trees e.g.

Kaffir ~ (qv), denne (qv) ~, bas ~ (see wattle) etc., all 32.

(2) 27c. Prefix or suff. found in place names with n. or adj. e.g. Boomplaats, Maroelaboom, Wonderboom.

[Afk. fr. Du. boom = tree cogn. Ger. Baum]

(3) Slang. 8, 16, 10. Dagga, Cannabis sativa, Indian hemp, marijuana, bhang: cf. Brit. and U.S. grass, pot etc. Combination ~ tee 16.

Most widely used names in South Africa are pot, grass, weed, tea or boom ... Daily Dispatch 4.9.71

... she and a boy friend went to a party ... They went into a barn a few yards from the farmhouse and drank "boom tea" (tea made from dagga). Some of them were "feeling a bit funny". Cape Times 20.7.71

[etym. dub. boom = tree cogn. Ger. Baum, see etym. at muti]

boomdassie [ˈbʋəm,dasi] n. pl. -s

6. The tree hyrax: see dassie 6. [Afk. boom = tree cogn. Ger. Baum + dassie = hyrax fr. Du. das = badger + dimin. suff. -ie]

boomslang [ˈbʋəm,slɑŋ] n. pl. -s, -e.

6. The greenish tree snake Dispholidus typus which preys upon birds: its bite is poisonous but said to be rare in human beings on account of the rear placing of the fangs: it varies from 2 to 3 metres in length.

Skaapstekers and boomslange are venemous, but they are back-fanged snakes and not aggressive, so we do not worry about them. The 1820 Apr. 1971

[Afk. boom = tree cogn. Ger. Baum + slang = snake]

border area, n. pl. -s

4b. See quot.

A border area is 'one where development takes place in a European area situated so closely to the Bantu areas, that families of Bantu employees engaged in that development, can be established in the Bantu areas in such a way that the employees can lead a full family life.' Tomlinson Commission Report 1946.

border industry, n. usu. pl. -ies

4b, 30. White owned and white managed enterprises at the edges of African homelands (qv) i. e. in a border area (qv).

The city is also the hub of many new border industries ... In recent years the potential of the growing border industries has been investigated and found to be so promising that East London may well develop into one of the Republic's most important growth points. Panorama May 1973

Ploceidae Fam.

borrow, vb trns.

[A.E.] Used by Africans sign. lend, cf. SAE lend = borrow as in
'Please borrow me five rand.' Also slang, see quot.

[Ngu. (uku)boleka = borrow/lend]

Myrt's main claim to fame is this floor length fun fur
what she'll always borrow you for special occashuns if you ask nice.
Darling. 3.9.75

Y etym.

✓ bosduif Columba guinea

✓ bosbok Tragelaphus scriptus sylvaticus

✓ bosvark Potamochoerus porcus koiropotamus

[[bore, vb intrns.

29vb trans. drill, as for oil, coal etc. [translit. Afk. boor = drill n. and vb.]]

borehole, n. pl. -s

11. In S.A. a well drilled to tap an underground water source usu. operated by means of a windmill-type pump. cf. Austr. bore waterhole for cattle, artesian well. Also in combination ~water (and windmill water).

... all good vlel lands with abundant stock water from permanent fountains and borehole. Daily Dispatch 11. 3. 72

Water Supply: Strong permanent boreholes, Centrifugal pump with Lister engine. Windmills with catchment dams. Farmer's Weekly 27. 2. 74 Advt.

borrie ['bɔ̃rɪ, 'bprɪ] n.

(1) 7. Turmeric: yellow coloured spice used in geelrys (qv) 7 and other

S.Afr dishes: called by the Indians in S.A. arad: see Indian terms 25. Ang. Ind. purre

(2) n. prefix to plants, fruits etc. of deep yellow colouring: see quot. at patat 14, ~sweet potato 14, ~quince 14, ~hout (wood) 18 and ~vink (finch) 3.

[Afk. fr. Malay boreh = turmeric]

borrow, vb trns.

[A.E.] 2, 10, 29vb. Used by Africans sign. lend cf. SAE lend = borrow (qv): as in 'Please borrow me five rand. [Ngu. (uku)boleka = borrow/lend]

~~Also slang: see addenda p. 587.~~

borsdruppels ['bɔ̃rs, droepəls, 'bɔs, drəpɪz] pl. n.

16. A Dutch medicine (qv) 16 for the relief of asthma and other tightness of the chest: see benoudheid 16, 27b.

Why should Oom Piet, who had for years bought his borsdruppels just as regularly and from the same place as he ordered his tobacco now be prevented from doing so. Sunday Times 24. 6. 34 cit. C. P. Swart

Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934

bos [bɔ̃s] n. prefix and suff.

(1) Prefix in names of flora and fauna sign. forest e.g. ~lelie (lily) 13, ~buchu (qv) 23, ~duif (qv) 3, ~bok (qv) 6, ~luis (qv) 21, ~vark (pig) 6.

(2) 28. Suff. sign. bush in numerous plant names: see bloubos, taaibos, bitterbos etc.

... in none (of their gardens) are any of the elegant tribes of heaths ever seen under cultivation; and it is a curious fact that, among the colonists, these have not even a name, but, when spoken of, are indiscriminately called bosjes (bushes). Burchell Travels I 1822

(3) 27c. Wood, forest: in place names with other n. Boshoek, Boskuil, Bosspuit, Blouleliesbos.

[Afk. bos fr. Du. bosch = wood, forest, cogn. bush]

Columba quinea

boslemmer ['bɔs,lemə(r)] n. pl. -s

See Hernhutter. [Afk. fr. Du. bosch cogn. bush + lem = blade, cutter]

For a fine fat sheep Mr S — was satisfied to take two
Gnadenhal knives, called here boschlemmers, the goodness of which
has long recommended them to the inhabitants of the Colony.
Latrobe Journal (1815-16) 1821

bosbok ['bɔ̃s, bɔ̃k] n. pl. -ke

(1) 6. see bushbuck.

(2) 27d. Bushbuck: in place name Bosbokrand.

[Afk. bos fr. Du. bosch = forest + bok cogn. buck]

bosbouers ['bɔ̃s, bəʋə(r)s, -z] n. usu. pl.

19, 10. Foresters: used in a somewhat derogatory sense of the primitive, uneducated people of the forest areas of the S.W. Cape.

There was reported to be much fear and bitterness among the Knysna "bosbouers". Some had received white identity cards, but the majority had been classified as Coloured. S. Afr. Institute of Race Relations Survey 1969

[Afk. bosbou = forestry + personif. suff. -er]

-bosch- [-bɔ̃ʃ -, 'bɔ̃ʃ -, -bɔ̃s-] n. prefix and suff.

27a. Wood, forest; found in place names with n. or adj. e.g. Boschheuwel, Rondebosch, Stellenbosch: see also -bos- 3. [Du. bosch = forest cogn. bush]

See quot. at addenda p 581.

bosduif ['bɔ̃s, doeif] n. pl. -we [-və]

3. The speckled Cape rock pigeon: troublesome to grain farmers. [Afk. fr. Du. bosch = wood + duif cogn. dove = pigeon]

Boskop ['bɔ̃s, kɔ̃p] n. prop.

34, 23. Place name: site of the discovery of the skull of ~ man of the late Pleistocene period orig. described as Homo capensis a separate species, now regarded as a strain of Homo sapiens fr. which the Bushmen and Hottentots are prob. descended, hence ~ race: deriv. ~ oid, adj. characterised by a skull of the type of that of ~ man: see also Kromdraai and Swartkrans-man 23, 34, and (2) Stellenbosch

Boskop strain persists ... Prof Raymond Dart ... said that Boskop man found in different parts of southern Africa was the ancestor of the Bush - Hottentot type and that there existed a Boskop strain in the African population. Boskop man was alive and well and living in southern Africa more than 20 000 years ago ... E. Province Herald 21.8.74

[fr. Boskop, Transvaal]

boslemmer ['bɔ̃s, lemə(r)] n. pl. -s

18, See Hernhutter 18. [Afk. fr. Du. bosch cogn. bush + lem = blade, cutter]

For a fine fat sheep N/S was satisfied to take two Gradenthal knives, called here boschlemmers, the goodness of which has long been recorded from the inhabitant of the colony Latrobe Journal (1815-16) 1821

bosluis ['bɔ̃s, loeis] n. pl. -3

21, 11. Tick occ. erron. 'louse'. 3. ~ voel, see tickbird 3.

The animals most common in Natal are such as are found in other parts of Africa. Serpents are abundant and some are poisonous ... Insects abound ... the most troublesome insect to man and beast is called the bush tick. C. of G. H. Almanac for 1856. *Cancel.*

[Afk. fr. Du. bosch cogn. bush + luis = tick cogn. louse]

B.O.S.S. [bɔs] n. prop.

4b. Bureau of State Security: also attrib. ~ Bill.

The Prime Minister ... is to be asked in Parliament to clear up allegations that Boss has been secretly funding Shaka's Spear, the Zulu opposition party. Allegations that Boss opened a bank account for the party ... E. Province Herald 15.5.74

[acronym of above]

boss boy, n. pl. -s

19, 30. A man, usu. African, in charge of a gang of mine- or other workers: see also induna 2.

Kibuko had been a boss-boy of authority and strength that had won the respect and admiration of the people of Pomelo. Griffiths Man of the River 1968

botel, n.

30. See rotel 30.

Botha('s) Babe(s) ['bɔtə -] n. prop. usu. pl.

Coll. 19, 20. Members of the women's army at the Civil Defence College at George C.P. so named after the Minister of Defence at the time of its inception: see also soldoedie 20, 19.

The Civil Defence College for Girls in George made history again this week by creating the first corporals among the "Botha Babes". Daily Dispatch 18.8.71

[fr. n. prop. P.W. Botha]

'bɔtsw

Botswana [ˌbɔtswənə, -ənə] n. prop.

23. The country of ~~the Tswana (qv) 23 people~~ formerly known as Bechuanaland: see Lesotho 23, Kwazulu 23.

botter ['bɔtə(r)] n. prefix

(1) 29. Prefix. Butter: prefixed to names of articles for or containing butter, e.g. ~ bak (qv), ~ balie (qv), ~ vaatjie (qv) all 18:

With the botterbak goes the botterspaan or wooden butter-hand, consisting of a wide, spade-like paddle with raised edges and a thick handle. Baraitser and ~~Ol~~holzer Cape Country Furniture 1971

(2) 28. Prefixed to plant names sign. usu. yellow colour or buttery smell or taste, e.g. ~ blom (any of many species, buttercup, Cape daisy etc.), ~ boom (tree) Cotyledon paniculata. cf. Austr. butter-, Brit. buttercup etc.

[Afk. botter cogn. butter]

botterblom ['bɔtə(r),blɔm] n. pl. -me, -s

13. Gazania uniflora: see gousblom 13.

bottle brush, n. pl. -s

32, 13. Any of several species of Greyia the scarlet flowers and filaments of which resemble the Australian bottlebrush, a species of Callistemon: also one of the Proteaceae, Nimetes argentea, the silverleaved ~.

Another indigenous shrub with red flowers is the Greyia Sutherlandii or Natal bottlebrush. It has an interesting, rather gnarled growth habit and bears red flowers in early spring. Evening Post 11. 3. 72

bottle store, n. pl. -s

8, 30. A shop, usu. retail, in which bottled liquor is sold: see also off-sales
8, 30. cf. Brit. wine merchant.

... on the day before Christmas I had met the Archbishop in the bottle store and had said to him, Your Grace, I am surprised to see you here. Alan Paton Kontakion 1969

boud [bɔrt] n.

7. [Prob. Sect. country use] A cut of lamb or mutton, leg, haunch: [Afk. been, leg (cogn. bone) is sometimes regarded as shank only]. [Afk. boud = buttock]

[[boulder, n. pl. -s

19, 10. Children's slang presum. extension of rock (qv).]]

-boven ['bɔvən] prep.

27k. Above: found in S. Afr. place names as suff. to nouns usu. with hyphen e.g. Waterval-boven, Welgemoed-boven: cf. bo- 27k. [Du. boven = above]

boy, n. pl. -s

Obj. 19. Used alone to refer to a grown man, usu. African, who is a servant, even by older Africans: now regarded as a discourtesy by many S. Africans.

19. in combination seldom intended as offensive: garden ~, house ~, flat ~, delivery ~ etc.: see also girl 19.

I am sure ill-feeling between Blacks and Whites can soon end if the Blacks are prepared to complain when addressed by nasty names such as boy, girl ... Drum 8. 10. 72

[fr. old style Colonial (esp. Ang. Ind.) term boy for a native servant prob. fr. bhooi a low caste servant] ~~Cancel. See addenda p. 587.~~

boys' meat, n.

7. Cheaper cuts: now usually called rations (qv) 7.

... used for soups and stews frequently sold to Kaffirs as "Boys' meat". Mary Higham Household Cookery for S.A. 1939 edit.

braai [braɪ] vb trns. and intr.

To grill meat, poultry or fish usu. in the open air over the coals of a wood or charcoal fire. See quot. at vleis. cf. U.S. barbecue (vb).

[Afk. vb braai fr. Du. braden = roast, grill, cogn. broil]

... Murder and Robbery squad is urgently seeking members of a group of ... coloured people who were braaing ... on Sunday while two white men were assaulting a ... white woman near by. Cape Times 14. 1. 75

... saying the cops had braaied boerewors whereas X said it was meat. Drum June 1976

group of assaulting

braai, n. pl. -s.

(1) 15. Angl. of vb as n. A gathering at which the main feature of the meal is braai'd meat: see also (1) braaivleis; cf. U.S. barbecue and Austr. orig. U.S. cook-out.

What do you need for a great braai? Chops, boerewors and ... mieliepap. Crumbly or 'stywe' pap, you can't call your braai South African without it. Sunday Times 14.11.71

[abbr. of (1) braaivleis (qv)]

(2) 18. Any of several gadgets or pieces of equipment from built-in brick or stone fireplaces to small portable Japanese Hibachi (charcoal stoves) on which meat may be grilled: [occ. spelt "bri" commercially]: ^{as modifier} see just at skinder.

Laze in the sun around the beautiful pool ... or entertain your friends on the patio with its built in braai ... Cape Argus Advt. 3.10.70

... Also faggots (stone walling) used for fire-places and braais. Daily Dispatch 14.7.71

braaivleis ['braɪ, fleɪs] n. pl. -es

(1) 15. Used with art. a/the: an informal outdoor social gathering or picnic at which the meat is cooked on a (2) braai or fire.

Under braaivleis the Cape Times has the second earliest dated entry, with a reference to a braai in aid of war funds in 1942. (The dreaded braaivleis - South Africa's secret military weapon?). Cape Times 2.7.73 [fr. Afk. braaivleisaand = braai = grill + vleis = meat cogn. flesh + aand = evening]

(2) 7. (Occ.) Used without art. to sign. the braai'd meat itself: see also (braai)ribbetjie 7.

... at the evening outspan the 18 members of the party will have a staple diet of braai-vleis. Evening Post 3.4.71

[Afk. braaivleis = grilled meat cogn. Ger. Fleisch, flesh]

braak [bra:k] vb

^{29vb.} 11, [^] To break up virgin or fallow land: as n. in place name Die Braak (fallow land). [^] Combination ~ land: see quot. at ouland 11, cf. Austr. to break in (virgin land): (also Suurbraak.)

Ploughing of virgin soil or braaking is done in September after rains. Wallace's Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

Lands braaked during the winter absorb much of the rain falling after braaking, and a number of braakland plant-weeds can develop and thrive ... When all has been said and done the plant-growth on braaklands is sparse and not all that occurs is edible. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

[Afk. fr. Du. braak = breaking]

braambos ['brɑ:m,bɔ̃s] n.

28. Bramble, blackberry: any of several species of Rubus esp. the R. pinnatus. 27c. Also place name Braambosspuit.

The fruit of the Bramble or Blackberry bush (Braambosch), ripens in the month of January. It is equal in flavour and taste to that of Europe. The roots are astringent, and used in the form of a decoction against chronic diarrhoea etc. Cape Almanac for 1856

[Afk. fr. Du. braam cogn. bramble + bos cogn. bush]

brak [bræek, brak] adj.

(1) 29adj. 11. Brackish: of or pertaining to water or soil containing alkaline salts.

... we procured each of us a draught of very brack water; which, bad as it was, somewhat relieved our thirst. Thompson Travels in S. Africa 1 1827

Soils are generally termed "brak" whenever they contain an injurious excess of various salts. Sometimes also they are dangerously alkaline. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

... he wondered what those lands were like that the holy woman's followers had sold. Maybe it was just brak soil, and with ganna bushes. Bosman Jurie Steyn's Post Office 1971

(2) 27i. Brackish: found in S. Afr. place names with n. usu. pertaining to water e.g. Brakpan, Klein Brakviver, Brakspruit, Brakwal.

[Afk. brak = saline, alkaline]

brak(kie) ['brak(ɪ)] n. pl. -s, -ke]

11. Nondescript mongrel dog: often used derogatively, equiv. of 'cur.'
cf. U.S. pooch, Austr. mong, Brit. dial. tyke.^{*} Also ~kie a friendly mode of addressing an unknown dog. ^{*} Ang. Ind. pye-/pi(e)-dog.

I had a dog in Korsten. Just a brak. Once when we were sitting somewhere counting our bottles and eating he came and looked at us. Must have been a kaffer hond. He didn't bark. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969 1973 edit.

[Du. brak = setter cogn. archaic Eng. brach = hound]

brakbos(ie)/bush ['brak,bɔ̃s(ɪ)] n. pl. -ø, -s, -es!

28. Generic name for many species, some of which grow and flourish in brak (qv) soils, others esp. various Salsola which produce vegetable lye used in the early days for soap making. See ganna 28, 32, also quot. at (1) brak 11.

The part where we now halted was covered principally with such shrubs and plants as afford alkali: these were the Kanna-bush and another whose name of Brak-boschjes (brackish bushes) indicates that their nature has been well observed by the inhabitants. Burchell Travels II 1824 cit. Pettman

... grazing consists of healthy Karoo bushes, brak, ganna ...
Farmer's Weekly 2.2.74 Advt.

brand- [brant] n. prefix.

27e. Fire, burning: found in place names with n. e.g. Brandberg, Branddraai, Brandkop, Brandrivier.

28. Prefix to names of plants and flowers sign. either burning quality of sap etc. or a habitat of burnt ground e.g. brandlelie (qv) 13, brandgras (grass) brandneutel (nettle), brandbessie (berry) etc.
[Afk. blaze, fire cogn. Eng. (fire)brand]

brandewyn ['brandə,veɪn] n.

8. Afk. brandy. 28. Prefix to plant name bos Grewia flava and its fruits bessie (berry) from which an inferior 'brandy' was distilled.
[Du. brandewijn fr. brantwyn = burnt wine]



brandhoutboom ['brant,ɦʊt,bʊm] n.

32. See kreupelboom 32.

brandlelie ['brant,li:li] n. pl. -s

13. Any of several species of Cyrtanthus, esp. C. angustifolius, also rooipypie (rooi = red + pypie = little pipe), whose typical habitat is burnt veld.
[Afk. brand = fire + lelie = lily]

brandsiekte ['brant,sɪktə] n.

11. Scab, a highly contagious skin disease affecting sheep in S. A. Failure to report the disease renders the farmer liable to penalty.

They are subject also to a cutaneous disease that works great havoc ... It is called by the farmers brandt-siekte or burning disease. Barrow Travels I 1801 cit. Pettman

[Afk. fr. Du. brand = burning, fire + ziekte = disease]

brandsolder ['brant,sɔldə(r)] n.

18. A layer of bricks and clay laid over the ceiling of upper storey rooms to catch burning thatch in the event of fire. [Early insurance companies at the Cape quote lower premiums for houses built with s.]

De Protecteur Fire and Life Assurance Company ... Allowances made, as formerly, for substantial Brandzolders. C. of G. H. Almanac for 1845

Fire was an ever present threat to town and city. To prevent it destroying his all-but-replaceable furniture the farmer had a 'brandsolder' built into the roof. This was a layer of clay or thin bricks at ceiling level to catch the burning thatch. Sunday Times 6. 8. 72

[Afk. fr. Du. brand = fire + zolder = loft]

brandywine, n.

Obs. 8. Brandy: see quot. at tiger's milk 8.

From the refuse of the wine press, a strong spirit is distilled called brandy wine, in general use by the boors and the farmers. James Ewart Journal 1811-1814

[fr. Du. brandewijn = brandy; see brandewyn 8]

bray, n. and vb

23,(29v): A speech mannerism: erron. sp. form: see bry 23

bread, n. pl. -s

7, 29 Trans. substand. Equiv. of 'loaf of bread' with plural 'breads'.

I'm off to town - do you need any breads or milk or anything?

~~Oral Informant~~ April 1974.

[Afk brood = a loaf (of bread) with pl. brode = loaves]

Breakwater, the, n. prop.

Hist. 4b, 30. A convict station established at Cape Town in 1860 for prisoners sentenced to hard labour, i. e. building the Breakwater for Table Bay harbour:

[time on the ~ was a common penalty for IDB (qv) 4b, 30] see quot. at L.D.B. 4b, 30.

Breakwater Convict Station: SHORT, John, Superintendent Convict Department, Breakwater. Cape Town Directory for 1866

It was not until 1923 that the Breakwater Prison was finally evacuated. Then it became a native location, and a government research laboratory was built in the old punishment yard. Lawrence Green Tavern of the Seas 1947

bredie ['brɪədɪ, 'brɪdɪ] n. pl. -s

7. A ragout or stew of meat, usu. mutton, and vegetable(s) named after the vegetable used as in tomato ~ 7, hotnotskool (qv) 14 ~, spinach ~ 7: see also quot. at wateruintjie 14: cf. Canad. burgoo.

The Cape bredie is a stew in which the vegetable has been reduced to a fairly thick consistency ... tomato is the most popular among these bredies. Farmer's Weekly 25.4.73

[Afk. bredie prob. fr. Port. Bredo = ragout]

breed(e) ['brɪəd(ə)] adj.

27i, 29adj. Wide, broad: found in place names e.g. Breede river. [Afk. breed cogn. broad]

breipaal ['brɛɪ,pa:l] n.

(1) 18, 11. The device for breying riems, see brey, something like a gallows with a wheel for twisting the thongs.

(2) 27e. A place name Breipaal.

[Afk. brey (qv) + paal cogn. pole]

→ *bre*

brey, brei [breɪ] vb trns.

(1) 29vb, 18. To curry hides by scraping, twisting and working until pliable by hand.

The Hottentots can't 'bray' the skins as the Kafirs do ...
Lady Duff Gordon Letters 1861-62

to riems. To twist hide thongs, see riem, on a wheel (see breipaal 18, 11) under pressure to render them soft and fit for tying and other uses.

Mrs. K. was braing of reims, and making a kid kraal. Shone
MS. Diary Transcript 18.7.1862

(2) 23. Erron. form: see bry (in speech) 23.

[Afk. brei = curry (vb) fr. Du. bereiden = prepare]

breyani [ˌbreɪˈɑni] n.

7, 25. An Indian dish: see biriani 7, 25.

breipaal

bringal ['brɪŋˌdʒɔl] n. pl. -s

14. Also brinjal: Solanum melongena aubergine or egg fruit, long pear shaped or globular purple vegetable used fried or as an ingredient of curries and similar dishes. Also Ang. Ind., Jam. E. brown-jolly.

Many of the most common plants grown belong to this family - [Solanaceae] including potatoes, tomatoes, brinjals and green peppers. Evening Post 30.6.73

[fr. Port. bringella = egg-fruit]

Broederbond ['brʊdə(r),bönt] n. prop.

4b. A largely secret Afrikaans (qv) 19, 4b organisation with limited membership, also known as the Bond (qv) 4b.

The Broederbond, a secret society composed of Afrikaners holding key jobs in all walks of life, has been subject to the same tensions and divisions as the Nationalist Party ... Sunday Times 5.3.72

er, n. pl. -s. A member of the er. Broeder - a member of the er.

During World War II the Smits Government made disclosures about the Broeders and banned public servants from belonging to it [the Broederbond] on the grounds that it was a subversive body. Sunday Times 24.9.72

[Afk. fr. Du. broeder cogn. brother + bond = league, fellowship cogn. Ger. Bund]

broedertwis ['brʊdə(r),twɛs] n.

4b. Political term 'brothers' quarrel' usu. referring to a split in the ranks of the Afrikaners. [Afk. fr. Du. broeder cogn. brother + twis(t) = quarrel]

broek [brúk] n. pl. -s, -ø

5. Trousers, pants, knickers for either sex; in SAE usu. with pl. marker -s. Also in dimin. ies (qv) 5, and in combination klap (qv) 5.

Figur. Slang. bang 19, 10. Coward, 'scaredy cat'; see bang [Afk. bang = afraid, scared]: pap 19, 10. Coward, poltroon; see pap 29adj. 10. [Afk. pap = flabby]: see also quot. at loop 9 and (2) bioscope 10.

... a clear memory of two little outjies in khaki broeks. Fugard The Blood Knot 1968

[Afk. broek = a pair of trousers, cogn. breeches, breeks]

broekies ['brúkiz] pl. n.

5. Knickers usu. for children: in combination children's, dresses with matching, also [[now obs.]] shu-shu, 'Hot pants' [fr. Xh. shushu = hot], see quot. at shu-shu 29adj. 2, 33.

There were cries of goodbye and the little girls blew kisses to us; they had on new print dresses and broekies that Estelle had made for them ... Rooke A Lover for Estelle 1961

[Afk. broek = trousers + dimin. suff. -ie + pl. -s]

brom [bröm] vb intr.

Coll. 29vb, 10. (Slang): to complain, make a fuss.

Aug. 1974 *Oh lord, what's X bromming for now? Grahamstown mother
K. didn't br - we had my car so I had to walk to
the hairdresser, bromming all the way
can tell you. Grahamstown 30.5.76*

[Afk. brom = growl, mutter]

brommer ['brömə(r)] n. pl. -s

21. Large noisy (bluebottle) fly or other buzzing insect [in O.E.D.* as brummer]

27d. Also in place name Brommersvlei. [Afk. brom = mutter, growl + agent. suff. -er] *1972 Supplement A-G.

bromvoël ['bröm,frəl] n. pl. -s

3. Usu. the turkey buzzard or ground hornbill Bucorax cafer, so named on account of its loud booming call: also any of several other noisy birds including the mahem (qv) 3: see also rainbird 3

... and if a person kill by accident a mayhem, (or Balearic crane) or one of those birds which the Colonists call brom-vogel, (a species of tucan), he is obliged to sacrifice a calf or young ox in atonement. Thompson Travels in S. Africa II 1827

[Afk. brom = growl, mutter + voël fr. Du. vogel cogn. fowl]

-bron- [brön] n. prefix and suff.

27a. Source, spring: found in place names as suff. to n. or adj. also prefix

e.g. Heilbron [heil = salvation, welfare], Suurbron, Brondal. [Afk. bron = source]

broodboom, Kaffer, n. pl. -bome. ['kafə(r)'bræt,brəm]

32. Any of several species of Encephalartos esp. E. caffer and E. cycadifolius, often loosely called 'cycads', with large female cones part of which is edible.

[Afk. brood = bread + boom cogn. Ger. Baum = tree]

bruidskis ['broeits, kɪs] n.

18. A dowry chest: see kist 18. cf. Austr. glory box, U.S. hope chest, Brit. bottom drawer, [A.E.] wedding box. [Afk. bruid = bride + possessive suff. -s + kis fr. Du. kist cogn. chest]

bry [breɪ] vb intrns. and n. also erron. forms bray, brey and brei.

(1) 29vb. To burr in speech with a rolling guttural 'r'.

(2) 23. A speech mannerism common in S.A. esp. in the Malmesbury district hence Malmesbury ~ in which the articulation of 'r' is not unlike that of Parisian French.

But I've heard some strange Afrikaans in my time, not excluding the "Malmesbury brei" of the late Field-Marshal Jannie Smuts. Daily Dispatch 11.11.71

[Afk. bry fr. Du. brijen fr. brouwen to speak thickly]

buchu ['bʊxʊ] n.

16, 28. Several species of Rutaceae the leaves of which have been used medicinally for stomach complaints since C17, also used cosmetically mixed with sheep's fat by the Hottentots for anointing their bodies. Also extended to a number of other species. ~ leaves 16 are obtainable from the range of (Old) Dutch medicines (qv) 16; species of Agathosma, Barosma and Diosma used medicinally freq. as diuretics; ~ brandy 16, 8. An infusion of ~ leaves in brandy used mainly internally but also as a specific (sometimes in vinegar not brandy) for bruises and sprains.

For cuts and bruises they use the leaves of the buku, and one or two other plants, with good effect. Thompson Travels in S. Africa II 1827 [fr. Hott. buku, plant name]

buchu karoo bush ['bʊxʊ, ka'ru:, -rʋə] n. pl. es

28. Several aromatic shrubs of the Karoid area some of which constitute a problem of plant migration and depletion of or encroachment on the (2) veld (qv) 11.

buck, n. pl. -s

Obs. 11, 26. Used by the Settlers sign. 'goat'.

Cut 50 lambs again today & about 150 Buck kids, purchased yesterday 97 Buck and kids Buck kids & lambs 255 Old Bucks ... total in Buck krall ... Collett MS. Diary 13.10.1838

[fr. Du. bok = goat]

In combination ~ fat Hist. 7, 16. Goat's lard formerly much favoured for a variety of culinary and medicinal purposes.

We suffered exceedingly when we had buck-fat plasters put on our chests and some meddler-old crone suggested that we be rubbed with honey backed front. Mc Nagh A Dinner of Herbs 1968 p. 24

bucket, n. pl. -s

(1) [Prob. obs.] 24. Measure for potatoes (by retail) approximately 5kg.

(2) 24, 11. Measure used on farms for rations, usu. mealie meal (qv) 7 or mealies (qv) 14, cf. bag, pocket 24, potwan (a) 24, 2.

In the early days of the Colony the bucket was often found to be a convenient measure when bartering. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[lit. a bucket]

We outspanned a mile or so farther on, drawing the five wagons up close together and getting what shelter we could by spreading buck-sails. Bosman Mafeking Road 1947

bucksail, n. pl. -s

31. The canvas covering or 'sail' of a buckwagon (qv) 31, 26.

... Yankee Moore, whose store - a bucksail tent furnished with a counter of empty Rynbende gin-cases and seats scooped out of the piled sack of mealie-meal - was ... the busiest commercial establishment at de Kaap. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

[fr. Afk. bokseil = bucksail, seil = canvas, tarpaulin]

buckwagon, n. pl. -s

[[Hist.]] 31, 26. A large, somewhat clumsy transport wagon, for carrying heavy loads, the 'buck' being the overlapping side rails or frame projecting beyond the wheels.

... and wait until help came along in the shape of some Boer's springless buck-wagon. Travelling on the buck-wagon was extremely dangerous. This type of farm wagon has its brake control situated at the back, in the form of a long wooden bar stretching across the two back wheels ... Klein Stagecoach Dust 1937

[fr. Afr. bokwa, bok = buck + wa, fr. Du. wagen cogn. wagon]

buffalo grass, n.

11, 28. A large leafed fodder grass; any of several species of Panicum and others, including Eragrostis; see oulandsgras 11, said to have been favoured originally by the buffalo: also buffelsgras 11, 28.

I looked promptly in the direction he was pointing and about two hundred yards away saw a stembuck standing in the shade of a mimosa bush feeding briskly on the buffalo grass. Fitzpatrick Jock of the Bushveld 1907, 1909 edit.

buffel(s)- ['bœfəl(s)-, 'bɛfəl(z)-] n. prefix.

(1) 28. Buffalo: prefixed to plant names e.g. ~gras (see buffalo grass); ~sdoring (thorn) (qv). ~horing (horn). Also 3 ~svoël (bird).

(2) 27d. Buffalo(s): found in place names prefixed to n. Buffeljagsrivier, Buffelsbaai, Buffelsvlei.

[Afk. fr. Du. buffel = buffalo]

buite- ['bœitə] adj. prefix.

27k. A/P/A. Outside, outer: found in street names e.g. Buitekant Straat (kant = side), Buitensingel (qv). [Afk. fr. Du. buiten = outside]

bula party ['bulə,patɪ] n. pl. -s

2, 16. A group of persons who go together to consult a witchdoctor (qv) 2, 16, 19. [Ngu. ukubhula = to consult (a diviner)]

bully, n. pl. -s

12. See ³dikkop 12.

-bult- [boelt] n. pl. -e, -s

(1) 22. A low ridge of ground or hillock usu. sandy rather than rocky.

I was horrified to see what I took to be our herd of dairy cows grazing on a rise or 'bult' (as these are called locally) which I had sprayed on the previous day. Blackwood's Magazine 1926 cit. O.E.D. Supplement 1933. *See quot. at addenda p.581*

(2) 27a. n. prefix and suff. Ridge: found in place names e.g. Droëbult, Bultfontein.

[Afk. fr. Du. bult = hump, hunch]

bundu ['brndũ] n.

22, 31. Wild, open country remote from civilization and cities: see also backveld 22. cf. Austr. back of Bourke, boo-ay, outback, N. Z. woop-woop, U.S. boondocks, Canad. the sticks.

... he can work in the big city for the wife and children he left in the bundu. Drum 22.1.73

X, well-known ... Game Ranger: "I drove ... over a thousand square kilometres of the most rugged country in the Transvaal. Through dried-up river beds and trackless bundu where you'd expect only a rhino to be at home. E. Province Herald Advt. 21.5.74

29vb. ~ bash usu. vbl n. ~ bashing. Travel or travelling over very rough or difficult country. cf. Austr. bush walking* Also 19 ~ basher^X, one who enjoys ~ bashing and rough or spartan travelling conditions. cf. Austr. bushwalker, [*also Canad. to 'siwash it.']. * see quot. p.581.

"Bundu-bashing" in pursuit of live game to sell. Mr Atherstone says a four-wheel drive vehicle is completely worn out after two seasons of this work on his game ranch. Star 22.6.72

[prob. fr. Shona bundo = grasslands: dub. but poss. rel. boondocks fr. Tagalog bundok = a mountain]

Bunga [bũnga, brũgə] n. prop.

4b, 2, (18). The chief Council of the Transkeian Government, loosely used, largely by whites, sign. the building housing the administrative offices.

Local councils and the Bunga catered to a limited extent for the tribesman and the reserve dweller, but those participating in the modern economy had access only to the dimly lit advisory ante-chambers of power. Daily Dispatch 20.5.71

[fr. Xh. ibhunga = council meeting]

bunny chow, n.

[I.E.] 25, 7. Prob. reg. Natal. Vegetarian curry of beans and dhal 7, see Indian Terms, sold usu. as 'take-away' food in a hollowed half loaf of bread.

Notice:

Bunny Chow - cents. Indian shop window ~~board~~ Durban November 1972.

[fr. bhannia various sp. shopkeeper caste (vegetarian) + chow = food (prob. fr. Peking Chinese chiao)]

burfee ['bʊ(r),fɪ] n.

7, 25. A milk fudge freq. spiced with elachi 7: see Indian Terms 25.

-burg [-bʌg, -boerx] n. suff.

27a. City: found in place names e.g. Johannesburg, Middelburg, Lydenburg, Steynsburg. cf. Edinburgh: see also -stad, -dorp. [^{Du.}O.E. burg, burh = city cogn. borough, Ger. Burch]

burgher ['bʌgə] n. pl. -s

Hist. 17, 19. A citizen of the Cape Colony, who was not a servant of the Dutch East India Company: also a citizen of one of the Transvaal and Free State republics. ~s were liable to ~ duty 20, military service, hence ~ commando (qv) 17, 20; the ~ Senate 17 dissolved in 1827, consisted of seven members, ~ was responsible for civic affairs and was housed in the Stadhouse/huis (qv) 17, 18. A free ~ 19, 17 was one who was free from the control of the Dutch East India Company in the C17 and C18. ~ ship, the rights and privileges of being a ~. See also quot. at veld-cornet 17, 19 and wardmaster 17, 19.

At the Searches of Shops, to be effected as aforesaid from time to time, by two Commissioners of the Burgher Senate, or by the Fiscal and two Commissionares as aforesaid, at times not fixed and without previous notice. African Court Calendar for 1819.

[Du. burgher = citizen cogn. burgess]

bush, n.

(1) 22, 26. Used of both bushy and wooded country: cf. Austr. bush.

(2) 11, 28. bush n. suff. any of numerous varieties of low indigenous shrub which intersperse the grass of the veld e.g. Karoo ~, many of which are edible and many inedible or 'plant pests' e.g. bitter ~ (qv) 11, 28, some varieties of blue ~ (qv) 11, 28.

bush-, n. prefix

As in Austr. a prefix to other n. ~ baby (qv) 6, ~ buck (qv) 6, ~ cart (qv) 20, ~ mechanic (qv) 19, 10, ~ pig 6, ~ soil (qv) 11, 18, ~ tea (qv) 7, ~ veld (qv) 22.

bush baby, n. pl. -s

6. See nagapie 6.

bushbuck, n. pl. -∅

6. Any of several S. Afr. antelopes of medium size preferring for their habitat dense bush and woodland, but very fierce if disturbed, e.g. Tragelaphus scriptus, Strepsiceros scriptus and Scriptus sylvaticus.

Mr. —, manager of the Krugersdorp Game Reserve, was rushed to hospital ... after being attacked by an enraged bushbuck yesterday afternoon. E. Province Herald 27. 3. 73

[fr. Afk. bos (Du. bosch) cogn. bush + bok cogn. buck]

bush cart, n. pl. -s

20, 31. A sturdy mule-drawn conveyance bought in large numbers for the U.D.F. (qv) 20 by Oswald Pirow when Minister of Defence.

The last seven of the bush carts ordered for the army by Mr. O. Pirow, K.C. when he was Minister of Defence, will be sold at a War Stores Disposal Board auction here on Monday. More than 200 have already been sold and others are still being used by the U.D.F. for the carting of garbage. E. Province Herald 24. 1. 48

Bushman, n. pl. -men

(1) 23. A primaeval indigenous tribe of nomadic hunters of Southern Africa now largely living in the Kalahari desert: see quot. at Boskop 23.

We saw in prison these Bushmen . . . this poor hunted race is now become almost extinct in this quarter. In color they resemble the Hottentot, but are more diminutive, and are easily distinguished by their greater activity, quicker eye and sprightliness of countenance. Phillips Occurrences in Albany and Cafferland 1827

In combination: ~ paintings 34: lively primitive scenes of hunting etc. still found in caves all over S. A.; ~ hunting 20, 10 [[Coll.]] hunting by unfair means such as digging a game pit by a waterhole ~~presum.~~ a trick employed by the ~; ~ rice 21, termites.

Here they feasted on the roasted white ants called "Bushman Rice". Lawrence Green Karoo 1955

[Du. Boschjesman, Afk. Boesman]

(2) 23. The Khoisan language of the ~ characterised by numerous clicks.

bush mechanic, n. pl. -s

Slang. 19, 10. A very rough and ready workman cf. Austr. bush carpenter, poss. also Brit. jerry builder.

bush soil, n.

18. Soil rich in natural compost from wooded or bushy areas, favoured for potting and gardening purposes.

Best clean bush and black garden soil: Phone XYZ. E. Province Herald Advt. 15. 8. 74

bush tea, n.

16, 7. The dried leaves, or an infusion of them, of any of several shrubs having medicinal or stimulating properties esp. rooibostee/tea (qv) 7, 16.

In most of these Colonial stores bush tea can be bought. It costs sixpence a pound, looks like the clippings of a privet hedge, including the twigs, and is said to be a tonic. Everyday Life in Cape Colony by X. C. 1902 cit. Pettman.

[prob. fr. Afk. bossietee]

bushveld, n.

22, 11. Veld (qv) 22, 11 composed largely of bush, often of a thorny or scrubby character. cf. Canad. bushland.

Even when the Boer took his herds to the bushveld, the young people had a gay time indeed. V. de Kock The Fun They Had 1955

In combination Ben n. prop. 15, 5. A comic strip character in the Farmer's Weekly, or a hat of the style worn by him.

busy, adj.

(1) 29red. trans. Used redundantly in SAE with an -ing form of the verb to indicate progressive aspect, sign. 'in the process of' or equiv. e.g. ~~We're busy waiting for him now.~~ *

This dreadful cattle disease [rinderpest] had swept down Africa and was now busy decimating their herds. Personality 21.8.71

[trans. of besig (om:te) which replaces in Afk. vb phr. the Du. pres. partic. (suff. -end(e) equiv. of Eng. -ing): it is retained only as modifier e.g. lopende water, running water.]

(2) Equiv. of 'engaged' e.g. 'His line's busy, will you hold on please?' [trans. Afk. besig cogn. busy]

busy with, adj. phr.

29. trans. as in 'He's busy with another call/patient etc. at the moment' sign. 'engaged upon', 'occupied with'. See also busy 29red. trans. adj.

He said most members of the administration staff were busy with the investigation. E. Province Herald 28.2.74

[trans. Afk. besig = busy, engaged, occupied + met = with]

[[butcher bird, n. pl. -s

Non SAE. 3. See Jan Fiskaal 3]]

butchery, n. pl.

30. A butcher's shop, where meat is sold, not an abattoir or place where slaughtering takes place.

The Paarl butcher, Mr. —, who was found dead on the floor or his butchery on Sunday morning, appears to have been strangled. E. Province Herald 6.11.73

[prob. fr. Afk. slagtery = butcher's shop]

buti ['buti] n. pl. -s

(1) [A.E.] 1, 2. A frequent mode of address to African men by other Africans; see also tata, sisi: cf. Austr. (aboriginal) bing(h)i, Jam. E. baada, brother

'Have a double brandy' He knocked that off without wincing. 'Aha. We call it gologo, from gog. But Bhuti, I am struggling here. Todd Matshikiza Chocolates for my Wife 1961

72

(2) 19. in the form boetie (also sissie, see sisi) a courteous mode of reference to servants at schools or universities (esp. E. Cape) by children, staff or students, poss. to avoid the term boy (qv) 1, 19. cf. occ. U.S. use of "brother" as substitute for "nigger". "He's gone where the good brothers go" (Song, Uncle Ned).

Warning: Only "Boeties" in (school) overalls should be allowed to carry luggage into the Houses at the beginning of term. Grahamstown Headmistress's letter 1973

[fr. Afk. boetie = brother]

butter, household, table, n.

7. Table ~ 1st - 2nd grade (not choice grade), household ~ 3rd grade (cooking butter).

Almost all accumulated stocks of table butter in South Africa had been sold out and only household butter and butter being turned out by the creameries was available. E. Province Herald 24. 4. 74

button spider, n. pl. -s

21. Either of two poisonous S. Afr. spiders Latrodectus indistinctus or L. geometricus characterised by a red mark on the underside of the abdomen and closely rel. to the American black widow spider.

But let's disregard snakes. Let's say that miraculously you escape all hurt from the snake world. That still leaves you in grave danger of meeting a button spider. Cape Argus 14. 2. 73

[prob. trans. Afk. knoop = button + dimin. suff. -ie + spinnekop = spider]

butter-bread, n.

[I.E.] 25, 7. Indian term for bread and butter comparable with Sanskrit dvanva structure a man-tiger = a man and a tiger. [cf. O.E. athum-swerian = son-in-law and father-in-law].

butter chilli, n. pl. -s

[I.E.] 25, 14. S. Afr. Indian term for capsicum, green or sweet pepper, as opposed to the hot red chilli used chopped or powdered in curries. cf. Jam. E. Indian pepper, capsicum.

by, prep.

Substand. 29prep. . . sign. either 'beside' (alongside) or 'with' or 'at' e.g. 'He lives by the station' or 'Can I play by Justin this avie?'. 'She's by Annie's place this afternoon.' cf. Austr. locative on a place equiv. of 'at'.

Daniels What time did he miss the man - Was he at the shooting match by your place did he say he was then on his journey James Hancock's Notebook (MS.) 1822

Because the water drips directly by the plant, only the root area is irrigated and no water is wasted on 'dead' areas. Farmer's Weekly 1974 (date mislaid).

[transference of Afk. by = beside, with at]

by-and-by, n.

[A.E.] Hist. Obs. 20, 2. Cannon, field gun: thought to be onomatopoeically named: various explanations have been suggested - slow firing, reluctance to explain now, but bye and bye etc.

By and By. - The name by which cannon are known to the natives of Natal. It is said that inquiring in the early days what these cannon were, they were informed that they would learn by and by, hence the name, which seems to the native to represent the noise of the explosion - a primitive striving after meaning. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Ngu.^{Xh.} mbyai-mbayi = cannon. Zu. umbayimbayi]

bywoner [beɪ, vɔnə(r)] n. pl. -s

19, 11. A sub-farmer, authorised squatter or share cropper working part of another man's land, giving either a share in his profits or labour or both in exchange. See also poor white: also occ. figur. sign. second class citizen or dispossessed person.

... the great body of landless bywoners who eked out an existence by the grace of the landowners ... Native labour prevented the great body of bywoners and poor white from becoming an established and recognised class of labourers and wage-earners. De Kiewiet History of S. A. Social and Economic 1941 ... *bywoner existence not envisaged. Farmer's Weekly Advt. Jan. 1975.*

[Afk. by = with, at + woner = dweller fr. Afk. woon = live + agent. suff. -er]

C.

calabash ['kælə, bæʃ] n. pl. -s

14, 18. The bottle gourd much used by Africans for receptacles etc.

...gave me some calabashes, and a slave taught me how to clean and prepare them. Nothing keeps water, wine, fruit, butter, so cool in summer as these receptacles, which are sometimes very large, and cannot receive injury as glass or stoneware would by being tossed about. Lady Anne Barnard Letters and Journals 1797-1801

In combination ~ milk 7, 2. Milk soured in a scooped out ~, see maas 7, 2.

She then gave him a basin of coffee, some calabash milk and some flour porridge sprinkled with sugar. F. C. Metrowitch Frontier Flames 1968

~ piano 15: also kaffir piano (qv) 15 and mbira (qv) 15, 2: see quot. at mbira.
~ pipe 8. A tobacco pipe made of a small dried ~.

No farmer in my young days ever puffed away at anything except a pipe - preferably a calabash grown in the Western Province. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

[prob. fr. Arab. qa'rah yabisah = dry gourd]

call, vb trns.

[A.E.] and [I.E.] 2, 29vb. equiv. of invite.

Why will people go to shebeens to buy liquor at inflated prices for cash even when bottle stores are open? Why not buy it and call friends if they need company and drink at their homes ... Daily Dispatch 21. 10. 71

[Ngu. ukubiza = to call, also invite]

camelsfoot, n. pl. -s

32. The flowering tree Bauhinia also Pride of de Kaap which has leaves the shape of a ~ print.

camelthorn(tree), n. pl. -s

32. See kameeldoring (boom) 32.

came there, vb phr. usu. past tense

Substand, 29vb. Arrived: past of 'come there'

(prob. trans. Afk. toe ons daar kom = when we arrived (there)). [Also occurs in the present tense with future reference, e. g. as soon as we come there:]

see quot. at stick fast 29vb trans, 31,

[trans. as above]

camp, n. pl. -s

- (i) 11. A fenced enclosure for grazing, equiv. of paddock; land ~ 11 a fenced field for cultivation (see also land 11), grazing ~, veld ~ see (2) veld 11 cf. Austr. camp mustering or resting place for stock.

Six land camps and four veld camps jackal proof fencing in very good condition with abundant stock water. Daily Dispatch 4. 3. 72

[Afk. kamp = large paddock or run fr. Lat. campus cogn. Fr. champs = field]

can [kæən] n. pl -s

A glass jar usu. of 2 litre capacity, a container for wine.

[translit. Afk. kan, jar]

... sat in the kitchen drinking a can of wine Mrs B. had bought ... The three accused left the house shortly afterwards and went on a spending spree ... buying chips and several cans and bottles of wine. Het Suid Western 10.3.76

(2) vb trns. often pass.

11, 29vb. Also camp off, to divide (land) and enclose with fences.

The rest of the farm will be camped off in due course and eventually there will be 16 camps to accommodate the system ... Farmer's Weekly 3.1.58.

[presum. fr. n. camp (qv)]

can [kæn] n. pl. -s

→ canaribyter, n. pl. -s [kə'nari,bɛɪtə(r)]

3. See Jan Fiskaal 3.

Fiscal and Canary-byter were the appellations given to a black and white bird (*lanius collaris*) ... Trans. Thunberg Travels I 1795

cancerbush, n. pl. -s

32, 16, 28. Also kankerbos (sie): Sutherlandia frutescens: a shrub the leaves of which were believed by early colonists to cure cancer; used also by the Hottentots for wounds and internally for fevers. [Not to be confused with (1) kankerbos Euphorbia ingens, see naboom 32]

Then there is the kankerbos, which has failed to provide a cure for cancer. ... early Afrikaans cookery book ('Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek', 1898) advised the silvery kankerbos leaves for ordinary stomach troubles. Long before that Thunberg the botanist records that the leaves, dried and powdered, were applied to sore eyes. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

[^{trans.} Afk. kanker cogn. cancer + bosch cogn. bush (+ dimin. suff. -(s)ie]

canopy, n. pl. -ies

31. A cover of fibreglass or metal for the rear section of an open bakkie (qv) 31 or pick-up, converting it into a non-saloon vehicle which looks nevertheless not unlike a station-wagon: not equiv. of old style 'canopy' or hood for an open tourer or 'convertible'.

Motor Sundries Canopies Best value for money available, stylish and strong, the only canopy which carries SABS glass-fibre laminate mark of quality, see our new models. Cape Herald Advt. 14.9.74 *

[prob. fr. earlier usage above]

canteen, n. pl. -s

Hist. 8, 30. Any drinking shop or public house, prob. fr. military usage. cf. Canad. saloon.

You'll find him up in the canteen if he's still alive. ... They walked round the scattered tents, flashing the lantern-beam into each. At the top of the rise stood one larger than the rest which a notice-board, crudely inscribed, announced as the Square-face Canteen. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

keeper 19, the proprietor of a keeper, a publican.

Johnstone, Mrs, dealer, high-street
Jolly, John Canteenkeeper, east-barracks.

Cape of Good Hope Almanac for 1843 (Albany Division Directory)

wine 8, cheap wine supplied in bulk to wine s.

[Fr. cantine canteen (military); Italian cantina = cellar; Spanish cantina = small barroom]

Cape, n. prop. prefix

(1) Freq. prefixed to a variety of items, flora, fauna, household equipment etc. sign. of or pertaining to the Cape Colony e. g. ~biltong 7, ~boy 23, 19, ~cobra 6, ~coloured 23, 19, ~Corps 20, ~doctor 33, ~Dutch 19, 23, ~foot 24, ~gooseberry 7, 14, ~honeysuckle 13, ~salmon 12, ~sheep 11, ~smoke 8, ~triangular 18 all (qv)

(2) Found in place names, also in Afk. form Kaap; Cape St. Francis, Cape Agulhas, Kaap de Goede Hoop, sign. a promontory.

Cape biltong [- 'bɛltɔŋ] n.

7. See quot. at bokkem(s) 7.

Cape boy, n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. (Obs.) 23, 19. A Coloured (qv) 19 person of mixed descent: see also (2) Bastaard.

The "Cape-boys" form a mixed so-called "bastard" class, descended from a variety of races, including Bushmen, Hottentots, Mosambiques (with short woolly hair) and Malabarics (with long smooth hair), the latter having been brought to the country as slaves in the early days. Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

[[(2) Hist. (Obs.) A St. Helena/Cape half breed.

... the island of St. Helena has added a bastard black element whose descendants are known as Cape Boys. Charles du Val With a Show through S. A. I, 1882.]]

Cape Brandy, n.

8. Brandy distilled at the Cape from the earliest days after the establishment of vines: see Cape smoke 8, dop 8.

... the simple fare, which, served up twice a day, forms, with tea-water and the soopie or dram of Cape Brandy, the amount of their luxuries. Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827

Cape cart, n. pl. -s

31. A two wheeled hooded horse drawn carriage.

A Cape cart is quite a colonial institution. It is a highly decorated dog-cart with seats capable of being reversed, as in a mail phaeton, and covered with a painted canvas hood, sunblinds in front and rear, and supplied with side curtains like a Hampton Court van. These carts are very light and very strong. Life at the Cape by a Lady 1870 1963 edit.

[mistrans. of Afk. kapkar kap = hood + kar = cart]

Cape cobra, n. pl. -s

6. Naja nivea: see mfezi 6, 2.

Cape Coloured, n. pl. -s

23, 19. See Coloured 23, 19.

Cape Corps, n. prop.

20. Any of several Coloured or Hottentot regiments which fought in the Kaffir (Frontier) wars, World Wars I and II or subsequent military action.

A selection board for the Southern African Cape Corps Service Battalion will visit Grahamstown next Friday. Any young coloured men interested in applying should be at the Grahamstown Police Station at 9 am next Friday. Grocotts Mail 14. 8. 73

Cape Doctor, n. prop.

33. The South easter (qv) 33 so called at the Cape from early times as it was believed that in suddenly cooling the air it dispersed or blew away disease and germs during the hot summer months. cf. Jam. E. Doctor (wind from the sea) Undertaker (wind from the land).

Without the south-easter (or 'Cape Doctor') they must have fevers, etc.; and, though too rough a practitioner for me, he benefits the general health. Lady Duff Gordon Letters 1861-62 1925 edit.

The "Cape Doctor" is the name of Cape Town's private and personal monsoon, the South-Easter. It ... is called the "Cape Doctor" because it always blows seaward and is said to carry away all the germs with it. H. V. Morton In Search of S. A. 1948

Cape Dutch, n. prop.

(1) 23. An early term for the Afrikaans language, known as ~ when still regarded as being a dialect of Dutch: see also (2) Dutch 23 and Taal 23.

She sat on a chair in the great front room with her feet on a wooden stove, and wiped her flat face with the corner of her apron, and drank coffee, and in Cape Dutch swore that the beloved weather was damned. Olive Schreiner Story of an African Farm 1883

(2) The early Dutch colonists at the Cape, also attrib. of or pertaining to the same.

... he would find it useful to avail himself, in all ordinary affairs, of the experience of the Cape Dutch colonists in his vicinity - a class of men not deficient in shrewdness, and who, if civilly treated, will be found generally useful and friendly neighbours. Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

Cape Dutch adj. usu. attrib.

29adj. 18. Of or pertaining to the whitewashed gabled style of architecture popular at the Cape in the C18, extended also to traditional Cape furniture styles.

Soon after 1750 their fortunes began to rise and spacious, gracious homes in what is now known as the Cape Dutch Style began to be built. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

Cape foot, n. pl. feet

(1) (Hist.) 24. A unit of land measurement, still found in pre-metrication (qv) 24, 4b. deeds, equiv. to 1.033 British Imperial feet.

The ratio of the Cape land-measure foot to the British Imperial foot was investigated by the Land-measure Commissioners, appointed by His Excellency the Governor on 19th June, 1858. They ascertained that 1,000 Cape feet are equal to 1,033 British Imperial feet. Cape Town Directory for 1866.

(2) 18. A tapering foot usu. on a turned leg of table or chair typical of Cape Dutch furniture, having a broader circular ring or 'bracelet' above the tapered part of the foot.

The circular fluted leg terminating in a "Cape" foot was used 78
in a slender form by Sheraton in about 1800 ... two of the earlier Cape
chairs with arms where the rocker has been drilled to take the bottom of a
"Cape" foot. Atmore Cape Furniture 1965

Cape gooseberry, n. pl. -ies

14. The small gold fruit of Physalis peruviana with a pleasant fragrant
tartness used for jam and pies and eaten raw: also the plant, on which the
fruits are individually enclosed in lantern-shaped papery casing.^x Brit. golden
berries. * See quot. at 'Klapper'.

The gooseberries are not like ours at home. Each in a light, dry
pod, and smooth, and yellow as gold. Mama believes they would make but an
indifferent gooseberry fool, but they eat deliciously when fresh. Feb. 1821 ...
I mean to bring home an apronful of Cape gooseberries, they grow there wild.
Kate Pigot, Diary 1820-21 cit. Fitzroy Dark Bright Land 1955

Cape honeysuckle, n.

32. Also called Tecoma and kaffir honeysuckle: Tecomaria capensis: a dense
woody shrub much used for garden hedges, 'tecoma', with clusters of deep
orange tubular flowers frequented by sunbirds (qv) 3 for nectar. [fr. honey-
suckle shaped flowers]

Cape lady, n. pl. -ies

12. See moonfish 12, also called moony/ie 12.

Caper tea, n.

7, 30. A somewhat inferior blend of China tea esp. prepared for marketing
in the Cape Colony.

For beverage, the housewife refreshed her family with the rather
coarse "Caper" tea from China mixed specially for the Cape market. Barbara
Campbell Tait The Durban Story 1961

Cape salmon, n. pl. -Ø

12. Cape name for geelbek (qv) 12, a firm fleshed edible marine fish known
(erron.) as 'salmon' in Natal: also Jam. E. Jamaican salmon (Calipeva);
Austr. and N.Z. salmon, any of several species unrelated to the Northern
Hemisphere salmon.

Fish abundant in the rivers and in the bay. The mullet rock cod and
Cape Salmon, are most esteemed. Cape of Good Hope Almanac for 1856.

Cape sheep, n. pl. -Ø

11. The indigenous sheep of S.A. which has hair not wool and a large fat tail:
see Africander (sheep) 11, fat tailed sheep 11, (also ronderib 11, blinkhaar 11.)

Everyone has heard of the immense tails of the Cape sheep, but the
formation of them is not so well known. They consist of a mass of very nice
sweet fat, which is exceedingly useful for domestic purposes, and consequently
is much prized by the Dutch. Webster Voyage I 1834

cappy, n.

Diamond digger's term.

... a diamond weighing $34\frac{1}{2}$ carats. "It was a blue-white cappy ... Today a diamond like that could be worth about R4000 a carat". Panorama Oct. 1975

... chiefly at the request of Captain Paulus Mopedi, to start its own mission at Witziesthoek ... later inhabited by the Bakwena tribe ... the captain was Paulus Mopedi brother of the Basotho paramount chief Noshesh. Panorama Jan. 1975

Cape smoke, n. prop.

(Hist.) Obs. 8. The earliest, rough Cape Brandy (qv) 8: see quot. at witblits 8.

In the skipper's cabin, over a glass of 'Cape Smoke' - the fiercest brandy that ever came from a still - I heard yarns about the risky trade of the sealers. Birkby Thirstland Trek 1936

[prob. fr. Kaap + smaak = taste, savour (source Thomas Pringle)]

Cape Triangular, n. pl. -s

18. Any of several of the triangular stamps bearing the figure of Hope, issued at the Cape, many of which are valuable collector's pieces.

In a country of rich tradition, the Cape Triangular woodblock provisional issue of 1861 is precious Africana. Rare. Genuine. E. Province Herald Advt. 10.10.73

Cape wine, n. pl. -s

(Hist.) 8. S. Afr. wines were formerly known as ~ : usu. in earliest times sign. Constantia (qv) 8 later a variety of wines made at the Cape.

[In 1825 Brillat Savarin in 'The Philosopher in the Kitchen' refers to the provenance of certain food and drink ... 'some from Africa, ... such as the Cape Wines', and to a restaurant where 'the fortunate gastronome can wash his meal down with at least thirty kinds of wine, from Burgundy to Cape Wine and Tokay ...']

Capie ['keɪpi] n. pl. -s

Coll. 19. A Cape Coloured (qv): occ. used loosely equiv. of Kaapenaar (qv) 19.

Just a little bit black, And a little bit white, He's a Capie through and through. Fugard The Blood Knot 1968

Cappy see addenda p.590.

Captain, n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. 19. Mode of reference to a Hottentot (qv), kaffir (qv) or any native chief. cf. Canad. Captain (Indian chief).

A chief or captain presides over each clan or kraal, being usually the person of greatest property; but his authority is extremely limited, and only obeyed so far as it meets the general approbation. Thompson Travels in S.A. II 1827

(2) 4b, 19. Obsolescent official designation, partially revived as a substitute form for 'chief'.

Senator XYZ with the chairman of the Zulu Territorial Authority and members of the Executive council. Third from the right is Captain Gatsha Buthelezi. Panorama Sept. 1970

[fr. Afk. kaffer kaptein = chief]

caravan(n)ing/er, n. (pl. -s)

31. Both usu. sp. with single 'n' in S.A. [

carbonaadjie [ka(r)bõ'narkɪ, -ci] n. pl. -s

7. See karbonaadjie 7.

Coffee was immediately prepared and an hottentot cook having soon broiled the mutton carbonaadjie (chops or steaks) it was not long before supper was finished ... Burchell Travels I 1822

castor oil bush/plant/tree, n. pl. -es

28, 32. Also kasterolie boom: Ricinus communis a tree-like shrub of up to 5 metres with prickly fruits containing seeds which yield castor oil.

For the Queen and princesses I was preparing a collection of flower-roots, and seeds of the castor-oil tree, so resembling beads that it was impossible, when strung into necklaces and mixed with gold ones, to suppose them anything else. Lady Anne Barnard Letters and Journals 1797 - 1801

catfish, n. pl. -Ø

12. A common term for any of several species of octopus, at the Cape esp. Octopus vulgaris: also Jam. E. [Elsewhere a name for baardman (qv) 12, devil fish etc.] see sea-cat 12. [prob. fr. Afk. seekat = octopus]

cattie ['kæti] n. pl. -s

Coll. among children: 15. A catapult: see also mik. [abbr. of catapult]

Chalifa(h) n. prop.

25. See Khalifa 25.

champals ['tʃampəlz] pl. n.

25, 5. Indian sandals: see also beach thongs.

*with compliments from — Savie Distributors Consult us for
--- Kashmiri Silk Sarees — India Champals — Imitation Jewellery.
Advt. (Calendar Feb 1974)*

chana flour, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

cheers, interj.

Coll. 9, 10. An informal farewell: as in 'Cheers, see you!' etc. also tjiers 9 cf. Brit. Cheerio, Austr. and N.Z. Hurroo, hurray, ^{sign.} goodbye.

cheesa boy, n. pl. -s

30, 19. See chisa 30 (19).

Chilapalapa [tʃi 'lapəlapə] n. prop.

23. Rhodesian equiv. of Fanagalo (qv) 23.

I flash my lights and it stops. Language problems. Finally in pidgin Portuguese, fractured English and badly molested Chilapalapa I get it through that I want a tow. E. Province Herald 4. 3. 74

chief, n. pl. -s

Coll. 1, 19. Mode usu. of jocular address, or reference to an African (sometimes obj.)

I always feel uncomfortable if a White calls me 'chief'. African University Lecturer Dec. 1973.

You'd better move your car Prof. or the chief here will feel uneasy. Where should we park chief? Grahamstown Informant 16. 8. 74

chilliebite, n. pl. -s

25, 7. Indian savoury or snack, ^{also bhajia (q.v.)} a fritter of chana flour (qv) 7, 25 or gram (qv) 7, 25 containing chillies, onion or other vegetable: ~ mix a commercially available base for ~ batter.

chinkerinchee [tʃɪŋkerɪŋ,tʃi:] n. pl. -s

13. Also chincerinchee and Coll. 'chinks' (qv) 13. various species of white flowered Ornithogalum esp. O. thyrsoides, poisonous to stock which instinctively avoid them: [picked in bud these are exported overseas in the Northern winter where they last several weeks in water] see quot. at chink 13, (1) kalkoentjie 13.

As far back as 1794 Thunberg, the Swedish botanist, described them. "Tinterinties" he said "is a name given to a species of ornithogalum with a white flower, from the sound it produces when two stalks are rubbed together." I have also seen the name spelt "chinkering ching". ... Homer referred to the same species when he mentioned "the lilylike sound of the cicada." Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

... a bunch of green chinkerichees [sic] for herself ... with their green buds that climbed a long stalk and would open later into long-lasting white flowers. Whitney Blue Fire 1973

[etym. dub. prob. fr. Du. tjienker (onomat.) + uintjie = bulb, cf. Japanese chirin-chirin = tinkle-tinkle]

chink, n. pl. -s

13. Abbr. chinkerinchee (qv) 13.

"Chinks" grow only in ^{the} Western Province ... New York flower shops sell "chinks" at the equivalent of eightpence each. They call it "Africa Star of Bethlehem" ... Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

chisa boy [tʃɪsa, -sə] n.

30. The man who lights the dynamite fuse for blasting on the mines; also chisa stick part of the fuse: usu. erron. sp. cheesa. [Ngu. chisa = hot]

choc, n. pl. -s

Obj. 19, 10. An offensive mode of reference to a non-white, usu. an African. [abbr. chocolate]

chokka [tʃɒkə] n.

12. Also tjokka; squid, cuttlefish often used for bait; the name is said to be onomatopoeic fr. sound it makes when caught: see also quots at rooiaas 12 and at arikreukel 12, ^{and} ~~also at~~ ollycrook 12.

We trace where they are on the echo-sounder ... Then we bait up with chokka, get up-wind and allow the boat to drift ... S. W. Herald 2. 7. 74

[My steward tried to steer me away from another fish course called choças, saying that it was suitable only for Portuguese passengers. I was not to be denied, however, and I had my squid, cooked in its own ink. Lawrence Green Under a Sky Like Flame 1954]

[see second quot.]

choli [ˈtʃɔli] n. pl. -s

25, 5. The low-necked fitting bodice with tight elbow sleeves and freq. a bare midriff worn with a sari: see Indian Terms 25. [prob. Hindi coli = bodice]

chommie [ˈtʃɔmi] n. pl. -s

Coll. 19, 10. Also tjommie: friend, pal etc. cf. Aust. ^{mate,} cobber, choom, Englishman. [prob. fr. Eng. chum]

chorb [tʃɔ:b] n. pl. -s, -ø

Coll. Slang esp. among schoolchildren. 16. Pimple, pustule; in pl. ~s can sign. acne.

I would get a massive chorb on my nose just in time for the dance on Saturday, wouldn't I? Schoolgirl June 1974

chor-chor [ˈtʃɔr,tʃɔr] n. pl. -s

12. See grunter 12.

chorrie [ˈtʃɔri] n. pl. -s

Coll. 31. Also tjorrie, tjor: motor car equiv. U.S. jalopy, ^{Austr. bomb.} cf. Canad. flivver (cheap, light car). In combination snork (sport, snore) ~; go-kart. ~~snork~~ Knorr ^{Chor; [onomat.]} go-kart.

Get into the old chorrie and drive off to school. | MacLennan The Dawn Wind 1970

[Afk. tjor presum. onomat.]

Christen mens(ch), [ˈkrɛstən, mens, - mens] n.

Obs. 19. Also Christian man: A 'white man' both lit. and figur: see quot. at Settlaar 26, 19.

Amongst other peculiarities ascribed to the lion, is his supposed propensity to prey on black men in preference to white, when he has the choice; or, as the Cape boors explain it, his discretion in refraining from the flesh of "Christen-mensch" when "Hottentot volk" are to be come at. Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

He (the Dutchman) departs highly satisfied with you, and calls you a "nice man" and even "a Christian man." Webster's Voyage I 1834 [Du. Christen cogn. Christian + mens(ch) = person cogn. man]

Christmas bee/beetle, n. pl. -s

21. Various species of Cicadae which are esp. shrill and noisy in the summer at Christmas time.

The Christmas bee or cicada is another familiar insect of which only the male has the power of 'song'; and it must be confessed he is exceedingly persistent in the exhibition of his accomplishment, for a noisier insect it would be hard to find. East London Dispatch 16.2.1912 cit Pettman.

... it was Christmas and every heart was kind. At night the Christmas bees made the longest-winded chorus I've ever heard. R. Y. Stormberg Mrs Peter de Bruyn (. 1920.) pub. Maskew Miller

Church of the Province of South Africa, n. prop.

The Anglican Church (Episcopal) in Southern Africa and the Islands of St. Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha (as distinct from the 'Church of England in South Africa') which has existed as a Province from the arrival of Bishop Robert Gray in 1848: also known as (abbr.) Church of the Province and by Africans as Church (q. v.).

The Church of the Province of South Africa is that part of the Anglican communion within the Republic of South Africa ... [etc.] ... Its members are of African, European, Coloured and Asiatic descent, and its Prayer Book has to be translated into at least nine different languages. Peter Hinchliff Anglican Church in S. A. 1963
[fr. ecclesiastical term Province]

Christmas flower, n. pl. -s

13. Hydrangeas, which are always in bloom at Christmas in S. A. and in use in churches for Christmas decorations. cf. Jam. E. Christmas Bush (poinsettia), Austr. Christmas bush, tree, etc.

Church, n. prop.

[A.E.] 2, 4a. The Anglican Church is so referred to by Africans.

Q. Is Betty a Methodist?

A. No, she goes to Church - St Philips.
African Informant (Zu. speaking) 1973

[Ngu. isheshi = (Anglican) church fr. Eng. church]

Church of the Province of South Africa, n. prop.

4a. The Anglican (Episcopalian) church in S. A. (also known as (abbr.)

Church of the Province and in [A.E.] Church (qv) 2, 4a: [distinct from the Church of England in S. A.: also known as 'Colenso Churches'] [fr. Bishop Colenso].

[fr. ecclesiastical term Province]

circumcision school, n. pl. -s

2. An initiation school (qv) 2 in which abakwetha (qv) 2, 19 are circumcised according to tribal custom and admitted to the rights of manhood. Also circumcision dance, one of the ceremonies of the ~. cf. Austr. bora aboriginal initiation ceremony.

I passed my standard six in 1966 and my final aggregate was second highest. Now I've just come from my circumcision school... will they admit me back into the high school? Drum 8.4.72

The case is a sequel to the death of M — M — 15, who was hacked to death with an axe in January at Mpeko Location outside Umtata at a circumcision dance Daily Dispatch 8.5.73

citizenship certificate, n. pl. -s

2, 4b. A certificate of citizenship issued to citizens of a homeland (qv) 4b, 2 entitling them to vote in its elections: see quot. at homeland.

... falsely accused me of delaying the elections ... I proposed to the Assembly that those who have not got certificates should use reference books. The Assembly refused so I bowed down to the will of the people that elections be held after a sufficient number of Zulus have their citizenship certificates. Drum 8.7.74

clapped, partic. adj.

16, 10. Exhausted, e.g. I feel absolutely clapped. She looks clapped etc.*
cf. Austr. stonkerd, Canad. bushed, exhausted.* See also quot. at pellie.

class, n. pl. -es

34. Loosely used sign. standard (qv) 34 or form in school, e. g. 'What class is he in?' sign. what standard or form has been reached by the pupil?
[prob. fr. | Afk. klas]

classification, n.

4b. The official registration of an individual as a member of one or other race group defined by the Population Registration Act. See also re ~, classify 4b, 29vb.

There are seven race classification categories used on personal identity cards relating to South Africans who are not Asian, Chinese, Bantu or White. These are "Cape Malay", "Griqua", "Baster", "Cape Coloured", "Coloured", "other Coloured", and "Mixed". Rand Daily Mail 29. 1. 71

... wrote on his behalf to the Minister of the Interior asking for his re-classification as "Malay". (Natal) Daily News 24. 4. 71
[fr. ¹classify (qv)]

¹classify vb trns. freq. pass.

4b, 29vb. To assign an individual to a particular racial group in terms of the Population Registration Act: see also re ~: to be ~ed, to be so assigned by the Department of the Interior: see classification 4b, re ~ 4b, 29vb.

The Population Registration Act was originally conceived and implemented in 1950 soon after the coming to power of Dr. Malan's newly elected Afrikaner Nationalist Government. Its purpose was to classify every citizen into one of three main racial categories - White, African and Coloured (with Indian being classified as one of the several Coloured sub-groups). Star 16. 6. 73

In correspondence dated September 27, 1972, he was classified as Black for the purpose of the Population Registration Act. Application has been made for his race reclassification. E. Province Herald 12. 6. 73

[~~Eng. classify = categorise, assign to a class or category~~]

²classify vb trns. freq. pass.

4b, 29vb (30) To grade or assign a Government rating in terms of stars, maximum five, and other symbols, to hotels for the guidance of those wishing to stay in them, and to ensure that the standard of service be maintained: see rotel 30, 31.

clinker, n. pl. -s

18, 7. See klinker 18, 7.

C.M.R. beetle ['si,em'ɑ:] n. pl. -s

21. A garden pest, Myaloris oculata: see quot.

These large beetles are strongly marked with yellow bands across their backs. Their common name refers to the uniform of the Cape Mounted Rifles. When they attack flowers, they should be dusted with D.D.T. dust or Malathion dust. Sima Eliovson Complete Gardening Book for S. A. 1960.

[~~Acronym~~ Cape Mounted Rifles]

coalman, n. pl. -men

4b, 31. A black stoker on the S. Afr. Railways who does a fireman's duties for shunting in railway marshalling yards but not on journeys between centres.

The difference between a railways stoker and coalman has been cleared up. One is White and the other is Black. But the White stoker is also a learner driver while the Black coalman has got nothing actually to do with running the engine. The riddle of the footplate was cleared up ... yesterday, following questions ... on whether or not Blacks were being trained as firemen. Mr. — raised howls of laughter from Opposition benches as he said: "No, but Blacks are being trained as coalmen." E. Province Herald 13. 3. 75

Colenso Church, n. prop. pl. -552

One of the churches formerly of the 'Church of England in Natal' which resulted from the adherence of Bishop J. W. Colenso to the Church of England as by Law Established and his refusal to accept the authority of the Church of the Province of South Africa (q. v.). The last of the ~ es came back to the Province in 1958.

Within a short time of Paines' consecration all but one of the Colenso churches had come into the Province. . . . The last remaining 'Colenso church' became a part of the province under the special terms a few years ago and the Colenso schism is at an end. Various similar troubles have arisen in other parts of the Province but these have no organic connection with the Colenso Church in Natal. Hinchliff Anglican Church in S. A. 1963

cocopan ['kəʊ,kəʊ,pæn] n. pl. -s

30. A small tip truck on rails used on the mines for the transportation of blue ground (qv) 30, gold bearing ore etc. ^{also known as golovan among Africans on the mines}

Various duties were assigned to the gangs; some loaded the pulverized blue ground into trucks for transport to the washing machines. Others tipped "cocopans" (little half-ton trucks) containing the "maiden blue" just out of the mines. Klein Stagecoach Dust 1937

[etym. dub. poss. fr. nqukumbana /-e = Scotch cart (qv) 31, 30]

Colenso Church, n. prop. pl. -es

4a. See Church of the Province of South Africa. [fr. Bishop Colenso]

Coloured, n. pl. -s and adj. /modifier

(1) 19. A S. Afr. of mixed descent speaking either Afrikaans (qv) 23 or English as his mother tongue. Also combination Cape ~ those ~ s resident in the Cape Peninsula or surrounding area.

Reports have reached us of gross exploitation of Cape Coloureds by White-owned business concerns. Drum February 1970

(2) 4b. A racial group in terms of the Population Registration Act: see classification 4b.

I am classified as "Other Coloured" because I am not Cape Malay or Cape Coloured or just Coloured. My father was Moslem and my mother has some African blood. Sunday Times 10.12.7? (date obliterated).

(3) 29adj. modifier. Of or pertaining to those of mixed descent: see

(1) Coloured.

The Coloured people had been made to feel that they were God's stepchildren in the land of their birth. Daily Dispatch 19.5.71

(4) adj. modifier. Of or pertaining to possessions etc. of the ~ people e.g. ~ area, that zoned for occupation by ~ people; ~ school, a school exclusively for ~ children; ~ housing etc.

The five Coloured houses in the centre of the fields were almost submerged at the time of the flood. Evening Post 27.5.72

(5) Obs. Of or pertaining to any 'persons of colour' whether of mixed descent or not: cf. U.S. colored.

Before I conclude, I must say with regard to the Coloured tribes ... that I look upon them with concerned pity. Grahamstown Journal 30.10.1833

come there, vb phr.

10, 29vb. See came there.

come to hand, vb phr.

29vb, 10. Become available, be received, arrive (of inanimate subjects).

Larger quantities of potatoes came to hand and values declined somewhat ... Farmer's Weekly (no date) cit. Webster's Third International Dictionary 1972 edit.

[translit. Afk. fr. Du. ter hand kom = come to hand]

come out, vb phr. intr.

Substand. 10, 29vb. Finish, come to an end used usu. of school, cinema shows etc. not of the people or crowd attending them, e.g. school/the bioscope/the show/the play comes out at X o'clock. ['metaphorical' poss. trans. of similar use in Afk.]

come right, vb phr.

29vb, 10. Equiv. of 'turn out well', 'be all right', 'resolve itself': see also Alles sal regkom 10.

Don't worry, it'll come right - we'll make it. Informant
Grahamstown 10.9.74

[trans. Afk. regkom reg = right + kom cogn. come]

comma, n.

(1) 24. Decimal point, taught in schools in written and spoken use 'Thirteen ~ four instead of 'point' as in pre-metrication (qv) 4b, 24. usage.

(2) The official replacement of the decimal point in the press, also commercial documents etc. being allegedly less easy to tamper with or deface than the full stop (period).

... it is not "ten comma seven" even though we have to use a comma instead of a point (the very necessity for which I doubt). In the old days we did not say "ten full stop seven," so now why must we say "ten comma seven"? It always was a POINT, still is, and always will be, even though we write a point with a tail to it. Sunday Times 9.12.73

Commandant [¹kom, ²kōm-] n. pl. -s

(1) 20, 19. Substitute rank for that of Lieutenant Colonel in the S. Afr. Army, formerly used of any commanding officer. see quot. at (2) ~,

Commandant in South African military history designates the office and rank of the commanding officer of the former Citizen Force in a given district. It also signified the officer in command of the former Transvaal State Artillery and of the Transvaal Volunteer and the Natal Militia organisations. Standard Encyclopaedia of S. A. III 1971

(2) Officer commanding a commando (qv) 20 under the commando system of Military training.

In the South African Defence Force the rank of commandant was introduced in 1950 in substitution for that of Lieutenant-Colonel, and since 1969 the commandants under the present commando system have been organized in groups under chief commandants in order to facilitate central control. Standard Encyclopaedia of S. A. III 1971

(3) Hist. (S. A.) Any officer-in-charge including a police officer. Also in combinations field ~, veld ~ 20, 17.

The landrost Mr. Rivers (whom Lord Charles placed here in the room of our dear Major Jones, and he is not liked) is salaried and that for doing nothing in this matter of defence, there being a Commandant already, whereas the men must travel fifteen miles and more to drills and field days for which they are not paid, and can ill spare the time from their farms. Kate Pigot Diary 1822 cit. Fitzroy Dark Bright Land 1955

(4) [[Hist.]] In combination general.

Official designation of the permanent head of the Department of Defence and of the South African Defence Force, carrying the rank of general. The term is believed to have been first used in the Cape Colony in 1802 when P.R. Botha acted as 'Commandant-General' over a number of commandants in connection with military operations, i. e. as commander-in-chief. Standard Encyclopaedia of S. A. III 1971

* [fr. Fr. pres. partic. of commander, to command]

* (5) See quot. at (2) Voortrekker.

commandeer [,kɒmən'diə] vb trns.

29vb, 20. To press men into military service, or more usu. to seize goods horses or vehicles for military use: now, loosely, to take arbitrary possession of: in Brit. and U.S. also.

When supplies gave out he was empowered to forage round the farms in the vicinity and commandeer whatever he wanted: oxen, sheep, cows, poultry - the last from officers only. As payment for the commandeered stock he gave the farmer a voucher, equivalent to the value taken, which was redeemable in cash at the Landdrost's office in Pretoria. Klein Stagecoach Dust 1937

[fr. Fr. commander, command, ^{here prob.} cogn. mandatory]

commando, [kə'mændə] n. pl. -s

Hist. 20, 17.

(1) Burgher units of militia esp. in the Kaffir (Frontier) wars; see Burgher duty 17, 20.

(16. 2. 1852) Mr. Bradshaw came to our Laarger, to see how many people he could get to go on commando. Thomas Shone MS. Diary Transcript. 16. 2. 1852

hence on : taking part in a expedition of reprisal or aggression often for the recapturing of cattle.

While at this place, I heard that a Commando (or expedition of armed boors) had been recently out against the Bushmen. of the mountains, where they had shot thirty of these poor creatures. Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827

~~also~~ in current use: tax levied at the Cape fr. 1812 for the maintenance of a defence corps for the frontier.

(2) A unit of the Boer Army in the S. Afr. wars of 1888, 1889-1902.

(3) A member of a unit, or the unit itself undergoing training: see (2) Commandant 20, 19.

South African servicemen sent for commando training learn their battle technique at the Danie Theron Combat school near Kimberley. Sunday Times 3. 12. 72

(4) 27e. Found in place names usu. spelt Kommando, e. g. Kommando, Kommandokraal, also Commando Drift.

(5) See quot. at (2) Voortrekker.

commandovoël [kʊ'mandʊ,fvəl] n. pl. -s

3. The stone plover: see (1) dikkop.

Committees [kɔ̃mɪ'tiəs, -ti:z] n. prop.

27a/e. [Uncertain] found in place names Committees Drift, Committees Flats: see quot. also kommetje 27e.

... the derivation of the word Committees, which is a corruption of the Dutch word kommetje, meaning a saucerlike hollow. E. Province Herald 9.4.74

community of property, in adv. phr.

4b. See ante-nuptial contract 4b and kinderbewys 4b, and quot. at divorce

Compagnie, Jan, n. prop.

10, 30. See Company 30,

Company, the n. prop.

Hist. 17. The Dutch East India Company (qv) also V.O.C. (qv) 17.

... the local regulations of the Company which stipulated that no one in the Colony might sell the produce of their labour on their own terms - that neither could they buy nor dispose of anything except at the Company's store and at the Company's price! L. H. Meurant Sixty Years Ago 1885

The Company felt that the establishment of an independent farming community close to the settlement would save the V.O.C. a considerable sum of money as the Free Burghers could supply the Company with fresh vegetables at a fixed price, equivalent to what would have been obtained with hired labour. Panorama May 1971

John or Jan ~ a humorous appellation personif. the Dutch East India Company [also the British East India Company] cf. Canad. John Company The Hudson's Bay Company.

It appears that he was sent by Jan Compagnie to Castle Delmina ... to preach and teach the natives there ... remembering too, the value of impressing upon simple minds the powered prestige of the Dutch East India Company, he solved the problem of translating "I am the Lord thy God ..." by substituting "I am John Compagnie ..." Victor de Kock Those in Bondage 1950

27e. In place name Kompanjiesdrift.

complain, can't vb phr.

Substand. 10, 29vb. Response to qns. such as How goes it? How are you? sign. 'All right'. [trans. Afk. kannie kla nie, cannot complain]

compound ['kɔ̃m,paʁnd] n. pl. -s

30, 18. An enclosure in which orig. diamond mineworkers were housed and confined on the ~ system of serving articles for a fixed period: now loosely mine workers' or other African labourers' living quarters.

The notorious Katutura compound where thousand of Ovambo workers lived in overcrowded discomfort will be demolished within a few years. Daily Dispatch 12.3.73

[by folk etym. prob. influenced by 'compound' fr. Malay kompong, a village, cluster of buildings]

My wife came out of the concentration camp and we went together to look at our old farm. My wife had gone into the concentration camp with our two children, but she came out alone.
Posman Mafeking Road 1947

concentration camp, n. pl. -s

20. In S.A.E. those camps in which Boer women and children were detained in the S. Afr. war ~~1888~~, 1889-1902.

Mr. Botha gave it as his opinion that the death rate in the concentration camps in the first place was due to "an entire want of proper accommodation" and "want of proper food". Subsequently the position improved and the authorities did everything they could. E. Province Herald 25.10.1911.

Will the Blacks remember with the same hatred the breaking up of their families ... that the Afrikaner felt for the Englishman for fifty years after the Englishman confined Afrikaner women in concentration camps? Daily Dispatch 7.10.71

[Webster's Third International Dictionary 1972 edit. "a camp where persons (as prisoners of war, political prisoners, refugees or foreign nationals) are detained or confined and sometimes subjected to physical and mental abuse and indignity."]

concertina gate, n. pl. -s

11. A type of farm gate made, like a section of fence, of usu. barbed wire strands with a pole at each end.

The name given to certain farm gates, made of barbed wire strands and parallel wooden poles, the frame of which resembles a concertina. Like this instrument they can also expand and contract. Also known as stomach-hitter. C.P. Swart Africanderisms : A Supplement 1934 [fr. concertina, accordion]

conditional exemption, n. pl. -s

34. Matriculation (qv) 34 exemption granted to a student for University entrance conditional upon his fulfilling certain requirements.

Constantia [,kən'stænʃə, ʃ(ɪ)ə] n. prop. and n. modifier

8. Historically renowned dessert wine made at ~ in the Cape and known in Europe from the C17: see also Cape Wine 8.

(Hist.) Also in combination steen ~, frontignac ~ fr. names of grape varieties, also red and white ~ and ~ wine.

A sweet luscious wine, well known in England by the name of Constantia, the produce of two farms lying close under the mountains ... African Court Calendar for 1807

My dear ... I have just recollected that I have some of the finest old Constantia wine in the house, that ever was tasted ... My poor husband! how fond he was of it! Whenever he had a touch of his old cholicky gout, he said it did him more good than anything else in the world. Jane Austen Sense and Sensibility 1811

[fr. place name Constantia, Cape]

cooldrink ['kʊl,driŋk] n. pl. -s

7, 8. Any soft drink, mineral water, squash or even fruit juice: cf. Jam. E. cool-drink (fermented or unfermented).

Get me a cake. The best. Cooldrinks, peanuts and raisins. Fugard People are Living There 1969

In an ... ancient Buddhist rite food, drink and flowers are left for the questing spirit of the dead ... where the seaman died ... a small bowl of rice, a cup of soup, choice fruit, cooldrink, beer, cigarettes, matches, cakes and bunches of flowers. E. Province Herald 6. 4. 74

[translit. Afk. koeldrank lit. cool drink]

coolie, n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. 17, 19. A porter or bearer, listed in Cape directories, also in combinations wharf ~, fish ~, market ~: regulations for ~ hire were officially promulgated: see quot.

Provisional Regulations respecting the COOLIES directed by the President and members of the Burgher Senate are authorised by his Excellency the Governor. Each coolie shall work during the summer from 6 o'clock in the morning till 8, from 9 till 12 and in the afternoon from 1 till 5 o'clock receiving per day 1.4 ... Done at a Meeting of the Burgher Senate at the Cape of Good Hope. 9th November 1815. Signed P. J. Truter Sec. S. Afr. Directory for 1827

(2) Obj. 1, 19. Now an offensive mode of address or reference to an Indian in S. A.: see quot at Arab (merchant) and at karkoer 25, 30. cf. Jam. E. coolie (offensive) an E. Indian. Also offensive in combinations ~ pink 5, shocking pink: see also totty pink 5, ~ shop 30, ~ Christmas 10, formerly the feast of Moharram now also used of Diwali (Deepavali) the Festival of Lights. Sect. Bldg. ~ pan 18 plumbers' slang, an oriental floor level water-closet.

To say that a coolie is a 'South African Indian' is an insult to the Indian and the greatest travesty of words. Rand Daily Mail 26. 2. 71

Indian Council ... man to man or sahib to coolie? Sunday Tribune 3. 10. 71 See also quot. at Dutchman Addenda p. 587.

[prob. fr. Tamil, Urdu, Telegu etc. kuli = labourer, also Chinese]

coon, n. pl. -s also n. modif.

(1) Obj. 19. Offensive mode of reference to an African esp. in combination ~ boy, ~ girl, cf. U.S. coon, negro.

(2) 15 Coloured (qv) and Malay (qv) participators in the colourful ~ carnival 15 at New Year in Cape Town: so named from the black and white raccoon-style make up similar to that of negro Christie minstrels.

Malay choirs play an important part in the community. These choirs must not be confused with the coons who parade the streets on New Year's Day and hold their carnival at the Cycle Track and Rosebank. Some Malay singers join the Coons in these celebrations, but as individuals in Coon dress. Du Plessis The Cape Malays 1944

[fr. raccoon U.S.]

copper, n.

18. Used in S. A. erroneously for brass.

So the small shrivelled body was laid out in the large, heavy coffin with its glistening copper fittings. Uys Krige The Dream and the Desert 1953

[fr. Afk. (geel)koper = brass]

cossie ['kɔzi] n. pl. -s

Substand. 5. Bathing suit: cf. Austr. bathers. [abbr. of (bathing) costume]
[abbr. costume] *See quot. at geef.

costume, n. pl. -s

5. See cossie 5.

cotch, vb intrns.

Obj. Slang. 16, 10. Puke, vomit, 'throw up'. cf. Austr. perk.

... every three or so days Barbara sticks her finger down her throat after meals and cotches so she doesn't have to digest the food and get fat. Letter Schoolgirl aged 16 9.7.74
[translit. Afk. vb kots = puke]

court, n. pl. -s

[A.E.] 2, 4b. African equiv. of Magisterial District.

The address is Stanger, but her Court is Mapumulo. African Informant July 1974

Court Calendar, African, n. prop.

Hist. 17. See Almanac 17.

The African Court Calendar is one of the famous Cape Almanacs, so important for research purposes, which commenced in 1801 with a manuscript copy and continued in varying forms to the present day with a break of only one year (1864). Gordon-Brown S.Afr. Heritage 1965

crackers, pl. n.

Hist. 5, (20). Leather trousers made in the early days, of partially tanned hide and worn by Settlers and military alike so called from their habit of making a noise at every movement of wearer; also called vel(d)broeks (qv) 5, cf. Canad. mitashes, leather leggings.

I equipped myself in the proper style for a wild campaign: in broad-brimmed Spanish hat, blue jacket, brown buck-skin trousers, elegantly termed "crackers" in South Africa; ... Alexander Western Africa I 1837

crane flower, n. pl. -s

13. Strelitzia reginae, so called from the resemblance of the flower to the head of a crane: also known as piesangblom (qv) 13 and geel piesang.

[The rather striking resemblance of the flower to a crane's head, particularly of an enraged crane. C.A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966]

A grower in California showed me hundred (sic) of Strelitzias (Crane flowers) telling me that he got a dollar per bloom for them from the Hollywood Stars. Farmer's Weekly 30.10.46

Thirty dozen Strelitzias - the exotic crane-flower which occurs in KwaZulu - supplied by the East London ... decorated the marble hall - exhibition venue.
Panorama Jan. 1975

crayfish, n. pl. -ŋ

12. Erron. form for crawfish: Fr. langouste, spiny rock lobster: see also kreef 12. [As ~ is an important export product ~ fishing is strictly controlled: removal of over the licensed numerical limit, or of undersized ~ and/or ~ smuggling with or without a licence are offences punishable by law]. cf. Canad. lobster cop [Jam. E. claw-fish by folk etym.]

Crayfish are small river crustaceans, and the monsters from the sea that go with our mayonnaise are crawfish. This crawfish may not be enjoyed legally until it has grown to three and half inches in length. Lawrence Green Tavern of the Seas 1947

[presum. fr. Fr. ecrevisse = fresh water crustacean 'crayfish']

craytail, n. pl. -s

7. Commercially prepared frozen rock lobster tails: see crayfish 12, kreef 12.

cream of tartar (tree) n. pl. -s

32. Adansonia digitata, the baobab tree: see kremetartboom 32: also known as lemonade tree 32. Also Austr. A. gregorii (baobab).

cronky, adj.

Slang usu. among children. 10, 29 adj. Poor, not up to standard: not equiv. of 'cranky' sign. eccentric. cf. Austr. cronk, unsound; ^{crook} bad, sick etc. Canad. cultus, worthless, bad; U.S. ? crumby/my. [prob. cogn. Ger. krank = sick]

crunchie, n. pl. -s

Slang. Obj. 10, 19. Offensive mode of reference to an Afrikaner (qv) 19.

Prof. G. R. Bozzoli ... referred to the use of these words "crunch", "hairyback" and "rock spider" in the latest issue of Wits Student. He told the prosecuting officer Prof. D. Zoffert, that these words were derogatory for Afrikaners. Cape Times 13. 4. 73

[prob. fr. mealie cruncher = Afrikaner (slang) poss. fr. kransie (qv) 19, 10.]

C.S.I.R. ['si,es,aɪ'ɑ:] n. prop.

34, 4b. The Government's Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria.

C.S.I.R. Chief on Fish Farms for S. A. ... There is no reason why South Africa should not 'farm' fish off the coast for the market as Japan does ... president of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, said here. Cape Argus 3. 10. 70

[acronym of above]

[[cumec ['kju,mek] n. pl. -s

24. A measure of water used in dam building and regulation: one cubic metre per second: metrication (qv) of cusec.

... 1,800 cumecs had been gushing into the river for three days in an effort to lower the level of the huge Verwoerd Dam before the rainy season in March. ... To give an idea of the amount of water pouring from the dam round the clock he said two cubic metres of water (a cumec is one cubic metre a second) would fill a road petrol tanker. E. Province Herald 28.2.74

[presum. acronym cubic metre per second]]

cushion, n. pl. -s

Substand. 18. Pillow (for a bed). [prob. translit. Afk. kussing = pillow cogn. cushion] See Kussingslaan. p. 590.

cut, vb trans.

11, 29^b To castrate an animal: see hamel 11, kapater 11, tollie 11 all (qv).

Cut 50 lambs again today and about 150 buck kids ... Collett MS. Diary 13.10.1838

[trans. Afk. sny = cut, coll. for castrate]

D

dacha ['daxa] n.

27c. Old sp. form of dagga (qv) 8, 16, 28 found in place name Dachaboersnek (cf. Quachasnek fr. quagga) (also Daggaboersnek), Daggafontein.

daeraad ['daə,raɪ, -rad] n. pl. -s

12. See dageraad 12.

dag [dax] n.

(1) 10. Good day: abbr. greeting.

They entered the hut, when my men having pointed out to them their master lying asleep, I was awakened by the sound of Dag, which they repeated till I uncovered my head and returned their salutation. Burchell Travels II 1824

... the grandfather ... jogging silently on, Dutch-like, after a gruff "daag, mynheer" ... Alexander Western Africa II 1837

[abbr. Afk. ... goeie dag ^{fr. Du. goeder dag} cogn. good day]

(2) 27e. Day: in place name Dagbreek. [Afk. dag cogn. day]

dageraad ['dā(x)ə,rad, -rat] n. pl. -∅

12. Also daeraad, daggerhead: the marine fish Chrysolephus cristiceps: of the Sparidae characterised by beautiful red and pink colouring hence folk etym. da(g)eraad = dawn. cf. Canad. dore (fr. poisson dore (gilded)).

I used to think that the gorgeous dageraad was named because it reminded someone of a lovely dawn at sea. Recently I heard a more reasonable but less romantic explanation. Dageraad is a corruption of the Portuguese word dorado, the fish that shines like gold. Cape fishermen do not use the word dageraad for dawn. They say dagbreek or daglumier. Lawrence Green S. Afr. Beachcomber 1958

[Afk. fr. Du. dorade, fr. Port. and Span. dorado = golden]

dagga [daxa, -ə] n.

(1) 8, 16, 28. Usu. used of Cannabis sativa Indian Hemp equiv. of hashish (bhang) introduced by the Dutch from the East, also called mak (tame)

~.

Besides smoking the leaves various native tribes employ the leaves young tops etc. as a remedy for various endemic fevers, anthrax dysentery etc. The cultivation of dagga is prohibited by law in South Africa yet it is commonly found as a weed round native kraals in Natal and is known as insangu. C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

(2) 28, 16. Also any of several species of Leonotis: chewed and used medicinally by the Hottentots. cf. Austr. aboriginal pituri, a narcotic plant.

The original name for L. Leonurus was rendered as "dacha" by the early colonists and subsequently as "dagga", the present form. The name is preserved in the place names Commadagga Mountain and the town Commadagga no doubt from the abundance of L. leonurus or L. leonotis. Ibid.

(3) 8, 30. The leaves and seeds of Cannabis sativa sold and smoked illegally in S. A., equiv. of U.S. or Brit. pot, grass, Jam. E. ganja, Anglnd. bhang also in S. A. boom (qv) 16: in combinations offences 4b, running 30, smoking 8, zolls (qv) 8, pips 8 etc.

The cannabis sativa (sic) or common hemp, called by the natives in the colony dakka, has a remarkable inebriating effect, insomuch that it was forbidden to be used among the native troops. Medical men might turn their attention towards attaining the particular virtue of hemp, as it might prove a useful auxiliary in the materia medica. I tried a tincture of it in a few cases; but the very limited practice of a small ship affords little or no opportunity for ascertaining the virtue of any new specific. Webster Voyage I 1834

Dagga is dangerous, though users try to convince others that measures taken against dagga (pot, marijuana, hemp, grass, hashish) are hysterical, that the habit is purely social. Fair Lady 24. 11. 71

(4) 27c. see dacha

(5) sp. form of dagha, dagher (qv) 18.

[prob. fr. Hott. [daxa-b] for Leonotis]

daggerhead, n. pl. -Ø, -s.

12. prob. corruption of dageraad (qv) 12, also daggerheart.

dagha ['dǎga] n.

(1) Coll. Sect. Bldg. 18. freq. sp. dagga: cement, mortar

(2) 18. Any of several mixtures for building and/or smearing floors mud and clay, cowdung with mud, blood, earth etc. [Pettman gives vb 'to dagher' = to smear with dagha:] cf. Canad. to mud, mud up]

I hired a hut constructed of dagga - that is, ant-heap mixed with cowdung. P. M. Clark Autobiography of an Old Drifter 1936

A house made out of flattened and rusted paraffin tins, beaten flat and laid like this over pole-and-dagga walls. E. Province Herald 25. 5. 74

[Ngu. uDaka = mud, clay]

dakkamer ['dak(k)amə(r)] n. pl. -s

18. An extra room built usu. on the flat roof of a Cape Dutch (qv) 18, 29adj. town house, incorporated into the facade by means of a pseudo-gable: also occ. an attic; see solder 18.

We walked up the steep stairs that lead to the "dakkamer", a small room built with the window facing the harbour. Here the inhabitants of the house watched for the arrival of the merchantmen. Fair Lady 8. 8. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. dak = roof + kamer cogn. chamber, Lat. camera]

-dakkies ['-dakiz] pl. n. suff.

Coll. 10. Lit. 'little roofs': used with colour adj. e. g. rooi-(red) or groen-(green) sign. lunatic asylum.

My husband says I'll drive him into the Rooidakkies. Grahamstown Informant 1970.

[Afk. dak = roof + dimin. suff. -(k)ie + pl. -s]

dakriet ['dak,riit] n.

18, 28. See dekriet (qv). [erron. Afk. dak = roof + riet = red (hatch)]

-dal- [dal] n. prefix and suff.

27a. Vale, valley: found in S. Afr. place names equiv. Brit. dale and vale e.g. Hazendal (hans Du.), Genadendal (grace), Daljosophaat (n. prop.), Rhenendal (n. prop.) etc. [Afk. dal = vale, valley cogn. dale]

dæm,

dam [dam] n. pl. -s

(1) 11, 22. A reservoir in which water is retained by a man made wall as in Canad. "the retaining wall of the dam and the waters within it" [^] (Dictionary of Canadianisms 1969). [In S.A. the reservoir itself, not as in Brit. or U.S. the retaining wall only.]. ~ scoop, device for excavating for a ~.

Right next to the house was a large dam, fed from a watershed miles away from our farm. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

(2) 27a, 4b. Major reservoirs for irrigation schemes have ~ as suffix usu. to n. or n. prop. e.g. Le Roux Dam, Hendrik Verwoerd Dam, Haartebeestpoort Dam, Vaal Dam, Steenbras Dam.

damba ['dæmbə, damba] n. pl. -s, -ø

12. Reg. E. Province) Local name for the marine fish elsewhere called galjoen (qv) 12, more particularly streep galjoen.

I read an article recently on the confusion that exists over the popular names of our common fish. The galjoen, for example, is known as a high-water or a damba ... Daily Dispatch 20.6.72

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Xh. iDamba]

dankie ['danki] interj.

9, 10. Thanks: also baie ~, thanks very much: see quot. at baie 24, 10.

We thought that with this council we could be better treated ... Instead we are always required to say 'dankie baas'. Cape Times 25.8.72

[Afk. fr. Du. dankje cogn. 'thank ye']

danne- ['danə-] n. prefix

32. Pine-: see denne bol/boom 32.

-dans- [dāns, dans] n. prefix and suff.

27e. Dance: found in place names e.g. Wolwedans, Danskraal. [Afk. dans cogn. dance]

dareem ['darəm, -əm] adv.

Coll. 10, 29red. Used often redundantly in SAE as a rough equiv. to 'after all', 'at least', 'really', 'though' etc.

Gavie, that was daarem not so bad, but (sarcastically) don't you think it a shame to sack the pantry so? R. Y. Stormberg Mrs Pieter de Bruyn (1920) pub. Maskew Miller.

→ Twenty points is nothing much but its dareem a help for rainwater tanks. E. Cape Farmer 10.8.73

[Afk. dareem = all the same, though, however fr. daar,om]

das [das] n. pl. -en

(1) 6. Usu. Hist: the rockrabbit or dassie (qv) 6: also in combination klip ~ etc.

Our boat disturbed many of the das or coney that run along the rocks. This little creature is of a dark colour, like a rat, and seems to be of a species between the rabbit and the guinea pig; it is esteemed good eating, and the flesh is white, but from its paws resembling those of a cat, it is not inviting. Philipp's Occurrences in Albany and Cafferland 1827

(2) 27d. Hyrax or Cavia capensis: found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Daskop, Dassen Island.

[Du. das = badger]

dassie ['dasī] n. pl. -s

(1) 6. Also das (qv) 6: the rock hyrax (Pro)cavia capensis. Also in combination boom ~, klip das, bush ~.

12. 8. 1811. Here I procured for the first time, the Das or Dasje. This is of a brown colour, and has much the appearance of a rabbit; it is found in rocky places, where it takes shelter in the crevices. Its flesh is eatable; but the animal is exceedingly wary and difficult to get. Burchell Travels I 1822

(2) 12. The marine fish Diplodus sargus also called black tail (qv) 12, Zebra and Kolstert [acc. J.L.B. Smith 'about the best fighter of our inshore angling fishes'.]

Dassie, wildeperd and galjoen were in mixed bags ... in the gullies at Harmony over three days of fishing ... Argus 14. 5. 71

[Afk. fr. Du. dasje, das = badger + dimin. suff. -je]

dassiepis ['dasī, pīs] n.

16. Hyraceum: the solidified urine of the dassie (qv) 6 used medicinally by country people, and certain tribes; also klipsweet 16. Dassie buchu/boegoe 28, 16 Pelargonium ramosissimum has leaves which smell like ~, a tincture of these is used for neuralgia.

And this is dassiepis - she held up a small lump of something that looked like gum or bitumen ... It is good for hysterics, epilepsy, and convulsions of all kinds. Stuart Cloete Hill of Doves 1942

Early travellers in the Cape, men with scientific training, were puzzled by a peculiar substance they found in some caves, black masses like pitch. Thunberg thought it was bitumen. But the Bushmen and Hottentots knew better, and so did many farmers. They call the substance klipsweet or dassipis. In the Cape Pharmacopœia it is listed more delicately as hyracium. Hyracium has been used as a medicine for centuries. Lawrence Green Karoo 1955

[Afk. dassie = hyrax + pis = urine]

dassievanger ['dasī, fangə(r)] n. pl. -s

3. Also berghaan: either the bataleur Terathopius ecaudatus or Verraux's eagle, a large black eagle preying largely upon dassies (qv) 6.

Most difficult of all birds to shoot, Hoesch found, was the black eagle or dassievanger ... they build their nests of sticks on the ledges of precipices. These powerful jet-black eagles live mainly on dassies, though they take small antelopes and lambs. Lawrence Green Lords of the Last Frontier 1952

[Afk. dassie = hyrax + vang vb = catch + agent. suff. -er]

de [də] art.

271. The: definite art: see also het; found in place names e.g. De Aar (qv), De Doorns (qv), De Hoek (qv), De Hoop (qv). Also Afk. form die in Die Bos, Die Oog (qv): see also eye 22. [Du. de = the]

deadstill, adj.

Coll. 29adj. Absolutely quiet, silent. [translit Afk. doodstil, intensive

debris, n.

Prob. obs. in SAE. See tailings, bewaarplaats.

dekriet ['dek,rīt] n.

18, 28. Also dakriet: any of several species esp. of Restio used for thatching, also for making brooms, besem riet and besembos (qv) 28.

Most of the Cape Peninsula's thatch is the pale yellow dek-riet from the Riversdale and Albertina dunes. Once looked upon as a dangerous weed, the dek-riet is now carefully preserved. Wheat straws used in England are not favoured here, and the vlei grass from Mamre district is not considered as good as the sand reed. Lawrence Green Grow Lovely, Growing Old 1951

[Afk. dek = to roof, cover + riet cogn. reed]

denne- ['denə] n. prefix

32. Pine*: bol, n. pl. -s 18. Pine cone: much favoured as kindling in S. A. Also dannebol, donnyball 18. pit/pip n. pl. -s 7. The edible seeds, pine nuts (Italian pignoli) from the cones of Pinus pinea; see stone pine 32: and quot. at tammelietjie 7.

"Dennebol" (pine cone) is included, and an entry from the Cape Times of March 31, 1953, says that 50 dennebol pits could be bought for sixpence. The current price of dennepits, when available, has risen higher than pine trees. Cape Times 13.10.73

... cover with mayonnaise ... to which you could add some finely chopped pistachio nuts (dannepits will do). Hilda Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

[Afk. fr. Du. denne- cogn. Ger. Tannenbaum (+ bol = cone cogn. ball) (+ pit = pip)]

deproclaim, vb trns. freq. pass.

4b, 29vb. See proclaim 4b, 29vb.

The Department of Planning has proposed that areas already proclaimed for Indian occupation in the town be deproclaimed and reproclaimed for White ownership and occupation. Rand Daily Mail 16.2.71

[official term]

(2) Sheep's intestines used as sausage-casing, also dik(thick) ~,
the large intestine used fried or braai'd (qv) usu. among country
people: cf. Prit. dial. chitterlings.

[Afk. fr. Du. darm = intestine]

derm(s) ['derm, -rəm] n. usu. pl.

(1) Slang. 16, 10. Guts, lit. not figur. as in 'my ~s are clapping/flapping together', vulgarism for 'hungry'. [fr. Afk. my derms klap inmekaar]

(2) 7. Sheep's intestines used as sausage-casing [Afk. fr. Du. darm = intestine] also dik (thick) ~, the large intestine used fried or braai'd (qv) usu. among country people: cf. Brit. dial. chitterlings.

deurmekaar ['dǔœ(r)mə, kɑ:r] adj.

Coll. Slang. 10, 29 adj. 16. Confused, muddled, disorganised: used of persons, places and situations.

He would not have minded, he said, if they had put his name to the colour brochure showing Mr. — riding his tractor, but this pamphlet was too deurmekaar and smudgy. Cape Times 8. 11. 72

[Afk. deurmekaar = muddled, confused]

devil's snuffbox, n.

28. Also aapsnuif, duiwelsnuif (dosie), monkey bomb, oumeidsnuif (doos) slangkop: Lycoperdon hyemale: a puffball fungus forming round growths filled with dark brown snuff-like powder: these explode if kicked by children hence monkey bomb (coll.)

devil's thorn, n.

28. See dubbeltjie 28, 11.

dhai, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

dhal, dholl, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

dhunia, n.

7, 25, 14. See Indian terms 25, also Indian parsley 14.

diaken [ˌdɪ'akən] n. pl. -s

4a, 19. A deacon of the Dutch Reformed Church (qv) distinguishable on Sundays by a black frock coat; see manel (qv) 5 and white tie (qv) 5: see also ouderling 4a: 19.

A newly elected diaken of the church came on his visit the other evening and got talking about his job in a different banking concern known for its solid image. Star 25. 8. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. diaken cogn. deacon fr. Lat. diaconus, Gk. diakonos = server]

diamond, n. no pl.

(1) Sect. Mining, 30. Used in the same way as 'gold', 'silver' or the name of any other mineral. See blue ground, yellow ground, kimberlite, 30.

This time the geologists found abundant evidence of ilmenites and garnets of Kimberlitic quality - the two chief indicators of diamond. Daily Dispatch 14.2.72

(2) n. pl. -s in combination blue white ~, the highest quality; off colour (qv) ~; industrial ~ not gem quality, used for industrial purposes only: see melee 30, grit 30. See also stones 30, fancy 30.

Diamond Trade Act, n. prop.

30, 4b. Also I.D.B. Act: see I.D.B. 4b, 30.

die [dī] art.

271. See de 271.

died(e)rik(kie) ['dī,drək(i)] n. pl. -s

3. The bronze cuckoo, Cuculus or Chrysococcyx caprius so named from its call: see quot.

The green golden cuckoo of the Cape ... perched on the top of large trees, it continually repeats and with a varied modulation, these syllables di-di-didric, as distinctly as I have written them, for this reason I have named it the didric. Le Vaillant Travels 1796 cit. Pettman

[presum. fr. Le Vaillant's onomat. 'didric' (+ dimin. suff. -(k)ie) sp. fr. Afk. Christian name Diederik]

diep [dīp] adj.

S. Afr. place
27i. Deep: found in names prefixed to n. e.g. Diepkloof, Dieprivier.

[Afk. diep cogn. deep]

dik [dɪk] adj.

Coll. Slang. 16, 10, 29adj. Stupid, dense; 'a ~ ou' (qv) 19, 10, a stupid fellow: see also thick, toe, 16, 10, 29adj. [Afk. dik = dense cogn. thick; figur. in SAE]

dikbek ['dɪk,bek] n. adj. or adv.m.

(1) Coll. 19, 16. One given to the sulks: as adj. sulky, pouting and as adv.m. sulkily, with an ill grace.

Mrs. X calls Y dikbek because she never smiles. Schoolgirl, 15, 1974.

(2) 3. Also bergsysie 3. any of several species of the Fringillidae esp. Serinus sulphuratus the bully seed eater of geelbergsysie.

(3) 12. See (2) panga 12.

[Afk. dik = thick, fat + bek (qv) cogn. beak = mouth]

dik dik ['dɛk, dɛk] n. pl. -s

6. Madoqua damarensis a very small variety of buck found mostly in S. W. Africa.

The dik-dik is one of the smallest antelope in existence, standing no more than 16 inches high at the back. Life 19. 1. 70

... the Damara dik dik is a much finer dish. Dik Dik occurs in and around the Kaokoveld and again in Northern Tanganyika, suggesting that the gap was once a desert. So you have to travel far to taste this tiny and tender antelope. Lawrence Green Lords of the Last Frontier 1952 [onomat. fr. call]

dikkop ['dɛ(k), kɔp] n. pl. -s

(1) 3. Also commando voël: the stone plover Oedichemus (or Burhinus) capensis which lays its eggs on the ground and protects its nest by pretending injury usu. a broken wing, hence phr. to play ~ 10. cf. Austr. thick head (shrike).

You may not have thought of the dikkop as a shore bird but it has always been found off Robben Island and many of them nest in the dunes along Blaauwberg beach. Few see them, for they are elusive nightbirds and they know how to take cover. Dikkop is good eating, rather like the korhaan... Lawrence Green S. Afr. Beachcomber 1958

(2) 12. A sea fish Gobius nudiceps (Goby) also called bully 12 (cf. Austr. cockabully fish) found only in S. Afr. water: see quot. at baardman 12.

(3) 11. A form of horse-sickness also known as bluetongue (qv) 11 characterised by swelling of the head and tongue.

(4) 11. A disease in sheep, Tribulosis, caused by eating dubbeltjies (qv) 28, 11; also combination geel (yellow) ~ 11.

On one farm in the district, 150 sheep have been killed by the sickness, caused by eating dubbeltjie thorns and other plants which affect the liver and eyes of the sheep. There is no cure. Daily Dispatch 8. 1. 71

(5) 19, 1, 10. Figur. fathead, numskull: a mode of address or reference: see also dik, 10, 29adj, thick 10, 29adj, domkop (qv) 1, 19, houtkop 1, 19. cf. Austr. dilly, drongo, galah.

[Afk. dik cogn. thick + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

dikoog ['dɛk, vɔx] n.

12. Also peuloog, 'bulging eye': names for the marine fish Jacopever (qv) 12. [Afk. dik cogn. thick, fat, peul = bulge + oog = eye]

Dingaan's apricot, n. pl. -s

14. Dovyalis caffra the Kei Apple ^(qv) 14, is so named in Natal.

The Kei apple or Dingaan's apricot, invaluable for forming thorny fences and yielding a pleasant fruit. Chapman Travels II 1868 cit. Pettman

dinges ['dɛŋəs] n. pl. -es

10. Also dingus. Not only SAE. [Current in many parts of the Eng. speaking world esp. where there has been Dutch influence]. Common in SAE as equiv. thingummyjig, whatsit, whatsisname etc.; used where the name or term is unknown or cannot for the moment be recalled; cf. Brit.

Austral etc. dingbat, Austral. thingo, thingamabob etc.

In an emergency absolutely anything can be quickly described as a "dingus": "Pass me that 'dingus' nurse" or "It's that 'dingus' in the differential again" ... Cape Times 2.7.73

It's a thingamybob ... a dinges ... an OO-Jar! For sugar and spice ... Advt. circular received 6.8.74

[Afk. fr. Du. dinges cogn. thing poss. fr. Ger. Dings possessive form]

dip, n. prop.

Coll. 1810. Term for Jeyes fluid. ~~presum. fr. cattle dip.~~ [Afk. dip ^{fr.} household term for Jeyes fluid]

dirt (road) n. pl. -s

31. A non-macadamised gravel road. Also known as 'the dirt' e.g. It's six miles on the tar and then ten on the dirt: see also beton road/pad 31.

... a new dirt road ran only twenty feet away threatening to disturb the rural peace of his last resting place. New S. Afr. Writing Vol. 4 (no date) pub. Purnell.

disa ['daɪsə] n. pl. -s

13. Usu. Disa uniflora, red ~ or 'Pride of Table Mountain', best known of numerous species of Orchidaceae, esp. Herscheliae including H. spathulata, H. lugens, H. graminifolia: also various species vernacularly named moederkappie(qv) 13.

There are 20 species of disa but the best known is the red disa or "The Pride of Table Mountain" as it is popularly called. It is the rarest and richest of all ... Personality 24.9.70

disselboom ['dɪsəl,bvəm] n. pl. -s

31, 26, 11. The shaft or pole of an ox wagon to which the two after oxen (qv) 11, 31 are yoked and the trek tou (qv) 31 stapled to carry the yokes for the rest of the team: also the single shaft of a horse drawn cart or other vehicle. cf. Jam. E. tongue as in tongue cattle.

The wagon's front wheels pivoted freely as the single, short shaft, the disselboom, swung to the left or right with the turning span of plodding oxen ... Mockford Here are S. Africans 1944

[Du. dissel = shaft + boom cogn. beam]

district, n. prop. pl. -s

Hist. 17, 4b. One of the districts or divisions of the Cape Colony: also in combination ~ Six (qv) 27e.

This settlement is at the most Southern extremity of Africa, extending about 550 miles in length, from West to East, and 315 in breadth from South to North ... and is divided [sic] into six districts: the Cape district; that of Stellenbosch and Drakensteen; that of Swellendam; that of Graaff Reinet; that of Uitenhage, and that of Tulbagh. African Court Calendar for 1807

The Colony was ~~for~~ many years ago divided into four districts viz. the Cape district, district of Stellenbosch, of Swellendam and of Graaff Reinet. James Ewart Journal 1811-1814

district road, n. pl. -s ^{or ~~varied~~}

31, 22, 4b. A dirt (qv) 31. road, often numbered, maintained by the Divisional Council (qv) 4b. not by the central government: cf. National Road 31, 4b (qv).

District Six, n. prop.

27e, 4b. Place name: (Hist.) Formerly one of the six electoral districts of Cape Town. Latterly traditional Cape Coloured (qv) 23, 29adj. quarter now taken over under the Group Areas (qv) 4b. zoning to be a prestige area for whites.

DISTRICT SIX THE FINAL ACT

Remember District Six? That colourful tangle of streets and memories where we used to live. Can you hear the banjos playing? The children laughing? The chattering of housewives? Do you remember? Cape Herald 27. 4. 74

diving goat, n. pl. -s

Obs. 6. Early travellers' term for (1) duiker (qv) 6.

The duiker-bock or diving-goat derives its name from its plunging and springing amongst the bushes when closely pursued. Percival Account of the C. of G. H. 1804

division, n. pl. -s

(Obs.) Hist. ^{One of} the historical districts into which the Cape Colony was officially divided: now in use in Divisional Council (qv) 4b, 17.

... erect the same with the money to be borrowed upon the security of the road rates of the said division to be levied under the Act No. 9 ... Cape of Good Hope Act 1867

Divisional Council, n. prop. pl. -s

4b. Councils whose areas of jurisdiction are larger than municipalities covering divisions of the country not towns for the maintenance of roads etc. One division abuts upon another thus ~ boundaries 22, 31, are crossed while travelling.

It shall be lawful for the divisional council of any division, and it is hereby required, to employ, through the instrumentality of the field-cornets or otherwise, labourers to eradicate and burn the said weed wherever it may be found growing on public roads or crown lands, or on public outspan-places within such division. Cape of Good Hope Act No 27 of 1864

The days of the voortrekkers are gone, and Divisional councils no longer need outspans, members of the Albany Divisional Council decided at their monthly meeting. Grocott's Mail 27. 7. 71

cf. to hell and gone.

[Afk. doer = there, far away]

And, of course, daar doer in die Kaap, Sir de Villiers Graaf and Mr Vorster ... to decide finally whether there is a fusion in their future. Sunday Times 17.8.75

divorce, vb intrns.

29vb. Used intransitively in SAE see quot.

... socialites are shocked by the news that multimillionaire XYZ's daughter and son-in-law are to divorce. Post 14.3.71

As you are married in community of property, the money you inherited becomes part of your joint assets. Should you divorce, your husband could claim half of it. Fair Lady 14.6.72

[prob. fr. Afk. skei vb intrns and trns fr. Du. scheiden = separate, also divorce]

doedie ['dūdi] n. pl. -s

Slang. 19, 15. Popsy, doll: see soldoedie 20. cf. Austr. brush, Sheila (girl), also Brit. and U.S. slang broad. [Afk. doedie slang term equiv. of 'floozie', popsy] *

doek [dūk] n. pl. -s

5. Head scarf or cloth tied about the head in various ways. Also kop ~ : occ. also worn by elderly African men under hats or by way of a night cap. cf. Jam. E. tie-head (scarf): also bandoo/uu.

... has displayed particular sympathy in his portraits of young Coloured women, many of whom are presented almost as Madonna figures, with their characteristic scarves - or doeks - tied about their heads and an inscrutable melancholy playing across their faces. Panorama Sept. 1971

[Afk. (kop = head) + doek = cloth, scarf]

doepa ['dūpa] n.

(1) 16, 25. Love potion or amulet having magical properties for power e.g. over animals, or for love. cf. Jam. E. tempting powder (love philtre). compelling powder.

His chief object, however, at present was to get us to make him dupas, or pastilles. Snyman having told him the tales current among the Malays at the Cape respecting their efficacy as love charms or other surgical properties. Baines Explorations in S. W. Africa 1864 cit. M.D.W. Jeffries Afrikanderisms

(2) 16. ~ , ~ olie. Two of the Dutch Medicines (qv) 16 ~ for colic and flatulence, ~ olie (oil) for coughs and bronchitis.

[Afk. fr. Malay dupa = incense]

doer [du:r] adv./prep.

Coll. Slang. freq. among children. 29 A/P/A, 10: equiv. of 'very far' or in phr. (to) ~ and gone, e.g. 'X lives to ~ and gone somewhere in the Karroo.'

[Afk. doer = there, far away] See quot. at addenda p. 582

cf. To hell and gone.

doesn't want to, vb phr.

Coll. 29vb, 10. With inanimate subjects where no volition is implied: past or present tense, e.g. The door ~ open. This car ~ start, go etc.

This breach never wants to open. Child 12, George C. P.

[prob. trans. for Afk. wil nie = does not want, also won't, will not]

*

.. the thing I liked best was all those doedies. Makes a man wish he was still single. Ja, I want to go again next year for sure. Personality Advt. 18.10.74

dolly, n. pl. -ies

Hist. 30. An early, primitive stamping machine used on S. Afr. gold fields: [acc. Pettman orig. Austr.]

Crude dollies were constructed to act as mills. They consisted of an iron-shod wooden pole weighing about 100 pounds. This was suspended by riems from the end of a horizontal leverage pole about eighteen feet long and called a spring. Bulpin Lost Trails on the Low Veld 1951

[unknown: also given as vb to dolly by Webster's Third International Dictionary]

¹dolos ['dɔ̃lɔ̃s] n. pl. -se

(1) 15. Poss. Hist. Children's plaything: certain animal bones, used as oxen in games: also used of oxen modelled in clay: see kleios 15.

These lichens give a red dye and are employed by children for dyeing their 'dolosse' the colour of Afrikaner cattle. C.A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

The name is derived from "dollen os", which is what Voortrekker children called the small ankle bones of sheep and goats. Star 10. 4. 73

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Cape Du. dollen = to play, frolic + os cogn. ox, or poss. fr. Du. phr. een os dollen = to kill an ox]

(2) dolos 16, 2. Bones used by a witch doctor (qv) 16, 2 for divining purposes: see throw the bones 16, 2 and quot. at bones 16, 2.

It so happened a cyclone hit the farm that afternoon and that established K— as a medicine man ... He started practising medicine with herbs and lion's fat and throwing dolosse like a typical witchdoctor. Daily Dispatch 4. 8. 72

[poss. fr. Xh. in-dawule]

(3) 18. Formerly known as Merrifield blocks: interlocking concrete blocks called by the inventor se because of their shape, used all over the world to preserve beaches, shore lines and harbours from being washed away.

They look like concrete jigsaw puzzles dumped on the beach. They are called dolosse and are the brainchild of Mr. E.M. Merrifield, East London's harbour engineer. Star 10. 4. 73

... rescued by civilians and helicopters when their ship was driven onto the dolosse protecting the new sea wall at Paarden Eiland .. E. Province Herald 28. 4. 74

[fr. shape]

dom [dɔ̃m] adj.

Coll. Slang. 16, 10, 29adj. Stupid, slow to comprehend: see also dik, thick, toe, 29adj. 16, 10. [Afk. dom cogn. dumb]

domboek ['dɔ̃m, bʊk, -bʊk] n. pl. -s

Coll. 2, 10. Reference book (qv) 4b: see also dompas 2, 10.

... simple hard-hitting English dialogue, "to look at our real life you are too far away ...", a man with no domboek is not a man. E. Province Herald 6. 8. 73

[either Afk. dom = stupid + boek cogn. book or poss. fr. Afk. duim (thumb) as in dom(duim)krag fr. thumb print,

dominee ['dɔ̃nɛ,ni] n. pl. -s

4a, 1, 19. A minister of the Dutch Reformed Church (qv) 4a: a mode of address, also, in titular use with a surname: Dominee X; written abbr. Ds. e.g. Ds. D. de V—: see quot. at Boerechurch 2, 4a: see also predikant 4a. cf. Canad. dominie schoolmaster, also any minister esp. a Presbyterian.

Many Afrikaans people here oppose the view of a Christiana dominee of the Dutch Reformed Church, Ds. N.R.J. — that there should be no dancing at weddings. Evening Post 4.3.72

I was later called to appear before the church council to answer charges that I had called the dominee a liar. ... The church wrote ... telling him that he had been censured and that unless he showed regret for calling the dominee a liar he would remain censured for a period of six months. Daily Dispatch 3.8.74

[Du. fr. Latin dominus = master etc. cogn. dominie = teacher]

domkop ['dɔ̃m,kɔ̃p] n. pl. -s

Coll. 1, 19, 10. Fool: mode of address or reference: cf. Austr. dilly, drongo (fool).

He had written "Bantu". The official must have reached the end of his tether, because he screamed "domkop", scratched it all out and then scribbled "South African". Drum 22.7.74

[Afk. dom = stupid + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

dompas(s) ['dɔ̃m,pas, -pas] n. pl. -es

Coll. (4b), 10, 2. for reference book (qv) 4b, 2. see also domboek 10, 2, (4b).

There are instances where Zulu-speaking Africans get their "dom-passes" stamped under the influx control regulations and are told "Go to Gatsha, he must give you work." E. Province Herald 15.10.73

"London ... now I'm back to Soweto. ... It's also back to my dompas which my wife has kept safely for me during my absence," Oswald grinned. Drum 22.9.73

[Afk. dom (see domboek) + pas cogn. pass]

domsiekte ['dɔ̃m,sɪktə] n.

11. A disease of pregnant ewes characterised by a stupid appearance.

Domsiekte in sheep. This disease has only recently (1924) been reported ... The cause is as yet unknown, but conditions of drought and vegetation play a role. It has only been observed in ewes in lamb during the last few weeks of gestation, generally a few days before parturition. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

[Afk. dom = stupid + siekte, fr. Du ziekte = disease]

¹ donder [dɔ̃nə(r)] vb trns.

Slang. 29y, 10. To beat up, thrash, 'clobber': see quot. at meid 19: see also skiet and donder 10. cf. Austr. [^]U.S. dong, to strike.

... Le Roux said he would 'donder' Bidi if he kicked the dogs. He came at Bidi and struck him with the cricket bat. Post 22.8.71.

[Afk. donder = to trounce fr. Du. donderen = eject with force, also to curse, swear]

²donder, n. pl. -s

Slang, (Obj.) 1, 19. Equiv. of 'bastard' etc. abusive mode of address or reference to person or thing: see also bliksem 19.

Boesman: (the bulldozer) slowly it comes slowly big yellow donner with its jawbone on the ground. One bite and there's a hole in the earth! Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969 1973 edit.

[Afk. donder = scoundrel]

donga [dɔŋgə, 'dɔŋga] n. pl. -s

11, 22. A usu. dry eroded watercourse only running in times of heavy rain. cf. Ang. Ind. nullah, Austr. gully. In combination erosion ~s found in areas where the veld (qv) 11 has been tramped out (qv) 11, 29adj.

Thousands of miserable cattle and goats roamed everywhere, making tracks that would some day form cracks which successive rains would open into gullies and dongas. Soil erosion is one of the tragedies of the reserves. H. V. Morton In Search of S. A. 1948

An uncalculable amount of soil has been lost, wasted, and the land rendered down to dusty dongas. K. Cowin Bushveld, Bananas and Bounty 1954

[Ngu. -donga = washed out ravine, gully]

donker ['dɔŋkə(r)] adj.

27i. Dark: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. e. g. Donkergat, Donkerpoort. [Afk. donker = dark]

donkermannetjie ['dɔŋkə(r)'manɪkɪ, -cɪ] n.

15. A children's game, similar to blind man's buff, played in a darkened room.

I'm sick of this donkermannetjie you play. One of you is going to get hurt. Mother, Grahamstown Aug. 1970.

[Afk. donker = dark + man + dimin. suff. -(ne)tjie = little man]

Donkey Church, n. prop.

Coll. 4a, 2. Name for the Bantu Methodist Church, an African separatist church which includes among its ceremonies the re-enactment of the Palm Sunday procession with a live donkey. [etym. dub. either as above, or poss. orig. that the obstinate dissenters who split from the Methodists were called 'Donkeys'] * See addenda p 582.

donkey duck, n. pl. -s

Coll. 11. The Muscovy duck, poss. because of its loud quack, not unlike the braying of a donkey.

donny-ball, n. pl. -s

18. Also donny-pit/pip 7: see denne- 32. [prob. fr. danne-, pine cogn. Ger. Tannenbaum]

doodgooi ['dʊət,xɔɪ] adj. and n.

Coll. 10, 7, 29adj. Of or pertaining to cake or bread so heavy as to be figur. a lethal weapon cf. Brit sad, Jam. E. dough-dough, do-do (dumpling or insufficiently baked bread, cake etc.): occ. as n. e.g. I've baked three ~s in a row. See also throw dead 29vb, 10.

Doodgooi: A jocular name for a dumpling. It has been taken over by the Kaffirs in the form i Dodroyi, the r being guttural. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Afk. doodgooier = a dumpling fr. dood = dead + gooi = throw + agent. suff. -er]

doofpot ['dʊəf,pɔt] n.

Hist. 18. A cover or damper, sometimes bell-shaped under which the remaining embers of a fire were preserved overnight for rekindling in the morning. [(Cape) Du. doofpot an extinguisher for coals fr Du. doven to extinguish, put out + pot = vessel]

doorn [dʊə(r)n] prefix

27c. Thorn: found in place names e.g. De Doorns, Doornfontein; see also doring 27c. [Du. doorn cogn. thorn]

¹dop [dɔp] n.

Coll. 8. Brandy; also in combination ~en/and dam brandy and water: also ~ brandy: see also Cape smoke 8, witblits 8 and quot. at mampoer 8.

... the detectives made seventy arrests, destroying many gallons of kaffir beer and seized numerous bottles of dop. E. Province Herald 13. 8. 1916

[Afk. dop = brandy etym. dub. poss. fr. belief brandy is distilled from doppe = husks of grapes]

²dop, n. pl. -s

Coll. 8. A tot, little drink usu. of spirits: see also sopie 8, occ. dimin. ~ pie (qv), cf. Canad. hooker, snort, smash; U.S. slug, Austr. nobbler.

Let's have a dop first. I'm feeling the cold. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969

[Afk. steek 'n dop = have a tot, poss. fr. dop = cup]

³dop, n.

Slang. 10. Head, 'noddle'. cf. 'brain-pan'. [Afk. dop = shell, empty vessel]

⁴dop, vb intrns.

Slang. 34, 10. To fail an examination. cf. plug, plough. [Afk. vb dop = fail, be ploughed poss fr. Du. doppen = to shell]

or acc. one ~ informant from the bowler (U.S. derby) hat worn,
Afk. dophoed, hard hat]

Dopper ['dɔpə(r)] n. prop. pl. -s

4a, 19. A member of the Gereformeerde Kerk in S. A. or kerk/church, a strict Calvinistic sect who were described by Bishop Merriman 1853 as 'a sort of Dutch Church Puritans'. [s were formerly distinguishable by their style of dress, a short jacket instead of the frock coat or manel (qv) 5 of the D.R.C. members whom they called gatjaponners (qv) 18 and according to some, trousers of the klapbroek (qv) 5 type] see also quot. at Hollander 19.

These men (Doppers) were easily recognisable, for they clung to the old ways, not only in theology, but also in their dress; and, scorning belts or braces, kept up their trousers, which were of the klapbroek kind with a flap in front, by means of draw-strings ... Cloete Turning Wheels 1937

The "Doppers", a strict calvinistic sect, were recognizable by their clothes, for they wore their jackets shorter than usual ... Telford Yesterday's Dress 1972

[etym. dub.* poss. fr. Du. doppen = to husk or shell, hence to strip away outer coverings, poss. fr. Cape Du. doppen to gauge hence measure or judge]

[* various theories exist: doper (baptist), dompen (to suppress hence domper), dop (pudding basin) fr. hair cut, dorper = townsman, or acc. one informant from the bowler (U.S. derby) hat worn, Afk. dophoed, hand hat]

¹doppie ['dɔpi] n. pl. -s

10, 20. usu. an empty cartridge case sometimes used of other empty articles such as eggshells: see also ³dop 10.

J— always smells the doppie the minute he clears the breach - he likes the way the gunpowder smell smokes into his nose. Child aged 13 George C. P. 22. 4. 72

[Afk. dop = percussion cap, cartridge case]

²doppie, n. pl. -s

8. A little drink, tot: see ¹dop 8.

... one Saturday night Klaas, now 26, felt like celebrating, and had a few extra doppies of his own. Drum Mar. 1971

[²dop (qv) + dimin. suff. -(p)ie]

³doppie, n. pl. -s

12. Argyrozona argyrozona a small fish common in Cape waters also known as Kaapenaar 12, or silver fish.

Doppies were cheaper than harders. Grain farmers gave their labourers fish for breakfast at harvest time, and doppies or hottentot and silver fish (sold in bunches of ten) served the purpose very well. The farmer could hang the strings of doppies in his loft until the fish became as dry as biltong. Lawrence Green S. Afr. Beachcomber 1958

[unknown]

-doring- ['dʌərɪŋ] n. prefx and suff.

(1) 27c. Thorn: found in place names usu. prefixed as in Doringbaai, Doringbult, Doringkloof; also as suff. in Haakdoring, Ondersterdorings, Steekdorings: see also doorn 27c.

(2) 32. Suffixed to the names of various thorn trees or bushes often species of Acacia e.g. kameel ~ (qv) 32, haak ~ (qv) 32, etc.

(3) Other compounds ~ draad, barbed wire 11, 18, ~ boom/bos 32 thorn tree/bush.

Our road now abounded in trees of the Cape Acacia, the colonial name of which is Doornboom (Thorn tree). Burchell Travels I 1822

[Afk. doring fr. Du. doorn cogn. thorn]

Dormer ['dɔ:mə] n. pl. -s usu. capitalised

11. A dual purpose mutton and wool breed, a Dorset horn-Merino cross: see also dorper 11.

He has great faith in the Dormer breed, and says although essentially a mutton breed, they also give enough wool to substantially contribute towards their keep. Farmer's Weekly 4.7.73

[acronym dorset + merino or 'portmanteau word' cf. Australorp]

dorp [dɒp, dɔrp] n.

(1) 22, 10. Country town or village, sometimes coll. in a derogatory sense sign. a backward or unprogressive place equiv. of 'dump': occ. also dimin. form ~ ie. cf. U.S. podunk.

They visited all the dorps from the Cape - where they had started from - to Zeerust in the Transvaal, where Hannekie Roodt left the Company. H. C. Bosman Unto Dust 1963

Grahamstown's not a metropolis, but it's something more than a dorp. Grocott's Mail 13.7.71

(2) 27a. Town or village found as suff. in numerous place names e.g. Villiersdorp, Machadodorp, Humansdorp, Klerksdorp. cf. Brit. U.S. -ton, place name suff. -town, -ville.

[Afk. dorp = village cogn. thorp]

Dorper ['dɔ:pə] n. pl. -s usu. capitalised

11. Sheep: a mutton breed: cross between Dorset horn and Persian, producing almost no wool. cf. Dormer 11.

Dorpers - the wonder mutton sheep flourish under all conditions and in all parts of the country. Farmer's Weekly 21.4.72

[acronym Dorset and Persian or 'portmanteau word' cf. Australorp]

Dorsland ['dɔ(r)s,lant] n. prop.

Hist. 26, 22. The desert country from the Transvaal to Angola crossed with great losses and privations by the ~ trekkers 26, 19 in 1874: see also at Thirstland 26. [Afk. dors = thirst + land]

dosh [dɒʃ] n. no pl.

Slang, children. 24, 10. Money: e.g. Can I have some dosh, ma? see also tom 24. [unknown, poss. fr. U.S. dough acc. Partridge Dictionary of Slang Unconventional English prob. juvenile Austr.]

draai [drai] n. pl. -s, -e

(1) 31, 10. Turn, bend, corner, also figur. twist. Kaapse (Cape) (qv) sharp corner or bend in the road encountered in travelling.

(2) 27a, f. Turn, bend, found in place names as n. e.g. Kromdraai and vb e.g. Draaiomfontein.

[Afk. draai = turn, bend n. and vb fr. Du. draaien = to turn]

drag, to vb

Slang. 29vb, 10. usu. children: to bear a grievance, sulk, be out of temper: cf. Austr. to chew the rag, sulk.

What the hell are you dragging for now? She always drags if she's not the centre of attention. Informants Children.

[unknown]

Drakensberger ['drækəns,bəgə] n. pl. -s

11. A beef cattle breed.

... Drakensberg bulls from 1½ to 3 years old. Born and raised on severe Redwater and Gallsickness veld. ... Drakensberger for adaptability, fertility, weight-for-age and economical beef production. Farmer's Weekly 30.5.73

[presum. fr. n. prop. Drakensberg]

D.R.C. ['di,ɑ'si:] n. and n. modif.

4a. Dutch Reformed Church (qv).

... dissociate himself from those DRC ministers who refused to pray for those men who were fighting for their country in the Second World War. Daily Dispatch 20.5.71

[acronym of above]

driedoring ['dri,dvərɪŋ] n. pl. -s

32, 11. Rhigozum trichotomum, a thorny shrub.

... parts comparatively unsuitable for the merino, i.e. areas where steekgras, driedoring and bush are prevalent. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

[Afk. drie cogn. three + doring fr. Du. doorn cogn. thorn]

drift [drɛft] n. pl. -s

(1) 22, 31. A shallow fordable point in a river, now often a man-made, sometimes paved, ford where a river crosses a road: see quot. at (1) khaki 20, 19.

When swollen by rains in the interior this river is a magnificent object... with considerable depth, and a full and rapid current. At other seasons it is easily forded, the water at the usual drift being shallow, and the banks of the river presenting an easy slope to the water's edge. C. of G. H. Almanac and Directory for 1843

Further up Renosterhoek, drifts are completely covered with silt and mud. Gardener's Drift is covered. Grocott's Mail 27. 8. 71

(2) drif(t) 27a. Ford: found in place names usu. as suff. to other n. e. g. Velddrif, Matjiesdrift, Committeesdrift.

[Afk. fr. Du. drift fr. earlier doordrift = ford]

drink, vb trans.

Substand. 29vb. 10. Used as equiv. of take or swallow medicine or tablets: see quot. at benoudheid 16.

It's such a nuisance to leave my office to drink a pill every four hours. Oral Informant, Grahamstown 1971

[poss. fr. Afk. drink]

droë ['druə] adj. attrib. inflect.

27i. See droog 27i.

drogie(s) ['drʋəxɪs] n. usu. pl.

14. The astringent berries of Scutia myrtina (katdoring): see droog-my-keel 28, 32. [Afk. droog = dry + dimin. suff. -ie]

dronkie ['drɔŋkɪ] n. pl. -s

Coll. Slang. 19. 'Drunkie', boozier, cf. 'Alkie', Canad. rubby(dub), Austr. bot metho.

Like worms, Babalas as the day you were born. That piece of ground was rotten with dronkies. Trying to save their rubbish, falling over each other... Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969 1973 edit.

[Afk. dronk = drunk + personif. suff. -ie (qv)]

droog [drʋəx] predic. adj.

27i. Dry: found in place name Droogas: more freq. in attrib. inflect.

droë (qv) 27i, e. g. Droëbult, Droërivier, Droëvlakke. [Afk. fr. Du. droog cogn. dry]

droog-my-keel ['drʋəx,meɪ'kiəl] n.

14, 28, 32. Several astringent species including Rhoicissus tridentata, Cyphostemma cirrhosum and Scutia myrtina or their fruits 15: see drogies 14: used by early colonists in throat infections and R. tridentata in the treatment of diarrhoea and dysentery. [Afk. droog cogn. dry + my + keel = throat]

dropper ['drɒpə] n. pl. -s

11, 18. A slender pole of wood or metal used in fencing: unlike a post it is not usu. planted but 'drops' from the top strand to the ground and each strand is made fast to it. Several ~s are placed between each post: also combination fencing ~ 11, 18. *See quot. at addenda p. 582.*

Resale of farming requirements... standards, droppers, ...
Creosoted non-bending wattle droppers. Standard length about 5cm thick.
[etym. dub. prob. fr. Eng. vb drop + agent. suff. -er] Farmer's Weekly
21. 4. 72

drostdy [ˌdrɔ̃s(t)'deɪ] n. pl. -ies

19, 17

(1) (Hist.) 17, 4b. The area of the landdrost's (qv) jurisdiction, the magisterial district.

District of George. This district, situated on the south eastern coast of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, was separated from the district of Swellendam in the year 1811, and erected into a Drostdy, under Lord Caledon's government. S. Afr. Almanac and Directory for 1831 (Greig)

(2) 17. The headquarters, office and home of the landdrost (qv), the residency, also ~ house 18.

At the distance of half an hour's walk northwards from the village, is the Drostdy, or official residence of the landdrost, a modern erection, surrounded by the dwellings of the secretary and subordinate civil officers. Burchell Travels I 1822

... it [Clanwilliam] has a neat church which will contain about 400 persons, the drostdy-house and several other public buildings. C. of G. H. Almanac and Directory for 1843

(3) 27e. Drostdy: found in names of places in the neighbourhood or on the site of extant or former ~ ies e.g. Drostdystraat, Drostdy Museum, Drostdy Arch.

[Du. drostdy fr. drost = a bailiff]

druk [drœk, dræk] vb usu. pass.

Slang 10. To stab: to get ~ ed to be stabbed in a fight.

I always said there were only three ways for S— to get into trouble. The first was to get drukked (stabbed) in a bar, the second was a car prang ... Sunday Tribune 16.7.72

dry diggings, pl. n.

30. Diggings producing non-alluvial diamonds: the dry process involving not washing as in river diggings, but exposure of the diamondiferous matrix to the weather. cf. Canad. dry diggings (gold).

The dry diggings are thirty miles to the south-east of Pniel, they are so called because the gems are not found in river-wash, but in dry tufa, which has apparently never been in contact with water. Lacy Pictures of Travel 1899 cit. Pettman

dry land, n. pl. lands

Sect. Farm. 11. That arable part of an irrigation farm (qv) 11 which is not under irrigation. cf. Canad. dry farm/ing.

Wheat plays an important role ... and this year there is 51ha

under irrigation and 171ha dryland. Zambesi No 2 and Inia 66 are the irrigation varieties with Scheepers 69 on the dryland. Farmer's Weekly 4.7.73

(qv)
[dry + land fr. Afk. land = cultivated field, arable area]

ds. n. abbr.

4a. See dominee 4a, 1, 19 and quot. at Boerechurch 2, 41.

dubbeltjie [ˈdœbəlki, -ci, də-] n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. 24, 17. The British twopenny piece introduced with the British occupation of the Cape in 1795. [The Zu. word for penny indiblishi is deriv. fr. ~] see also rixdollar, skilling, schelling, stuiwer 24, 17.

With the first British occupation of the Cape in 1795 two coins were introduced to help relieve the shortage of small money. One was the "Dubbeltjie" - the British twopenny piece, also known as the "Cartwheel". It got its name because it was declared current at two stuiwers. Daily Dispatch 5.4.71

[Du. dubbel cogn. double + dimin. suff. -tjie]

(2) 28, 11. Also devils thorn, duiweltjie, duwweltjie: name applied to several species, more particularly to their sharp thorny fruits: Emex Australis (Rumex spinosus), also varieties of Tribulus esp. T. terrestris which causes Tribulosis, (geel)dikkop in sheep which browse upon it. (see (2) dikkop 11.)

Rumex spinosus, ... Dubelties, very painful to the slave who has no shoes ... Mackrill MS. Diary 1809

The soil was also sprinkled with the seed of a plant covered with prickles, making it very unpleasant to sit or lie down. These seeds are jocularly called by the colonists dubbeltjes (two-penny pieces.) Thompson's Travels in S. A. I 1827

[etym. dub. prob fr. the two-four construction of the thorns; dubbel = double, or a corruption of duiweltjie, a little devil, as are the other vernacular names]

duiker [ˈdœikə(r), daɪk-] n. pl. -s

(1) 6. ^{Synicapra grimmia} Any of several ^{or any of} small species of S. Afr. antelope of ^{to} genus Cephalophus sometimes called 'diving goat' (qv) by early travellers.

One afternoon I went out to shoot duikerbok, (a brown deer with small upright horns, and its height two feet, named duiker from its diving under the bushes) ... Alexander Western Africa I 1837

(2) 3. Several types of cormorant are so named because they feed by diving for fish.

When the snoek were in, experienced old fishermen knew just where to find them, even without the aid of the gulls and duikers which share the small fish with the snoek. Cape Times 18.3.36

[Afk. duik fr. Du. duiken = ^{to} dive + agent. suff. -er]

duin [dœin] n.

27a. Sand dune: found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Duinefontein, De Duins: also a specific coastal area, see quot. at sour fig 14. [Afk. fr. Du. duin cogn. dune]

duineveld ['dœɪnə,felt] n.

22. Sandy dune lands usu. not far from the sea. cf. Strandveld
[Afk. duin cogn. dune + veld = country cogn. field]

Duitse sis ['dœɪtsə'sɜ:s] n.

5. See German print 5, voersis 5 and quot. at bloudruk 5. Most commonly known as kaffir print (qv) 5. [Afk. Duits(e) = German + sis fr. Du. sits cogn. chintz]

duiwel(s) ['dœɪvəl] n.

27e. Devil('s): found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Duiwelskloof, Duiwelspiek. [Afk. duiwel cogn. devil]

duiwelsnuifdoos ['dœɪvəl'snœɪfɔ:vəs] n.

28. See devil's snuff box 28. [Afk. snuif cogn. snuff + doos = box, container]

duiweltjie [dœɪvəlki, -ci] n. pl. -s

28. See dubbeltjie 28, 11.

duiwelsdrek ['dœɪvəlz,drek] n.

16. Asafoetida, one of the (Old) Dutch Medicines (qv) 16, a plant resin, so called on account of its unpleasant smell: also Satan's Dung 16: used for various medicinal purposes also by S. Afr. Indians ^{among} whom it is known as hing 25.

The 68-year-old Coloured mystic went by car with a prominent Krugersdorp business man after an appeal for help from the minister of the "bewitched" congregation. He said that he found eight bottles of Satan's dung (duiwelsdrek) hidden in the roof of the manse. Three more bottles of the potion were unearthed in the Church building. Unity and harmony in the congregation were restored after the discoveries...
Sunday Times 4.5.69

[Afk. duiwels cogn. devil's + drek = excrement]

dung floor, n. pl. -s

18. See misvloer 18: see also quot. at pepper tree 32. *

dun krimpsiekte ['dœnkrɪmp,sɪktə] n.

11. See krimpsiekte 11.

dunsiekte ['dœnsɪktə] n.

11. Seneciosis in horses: a stock disease also variously known as Molteno disease (from name of district), straining disease of cattle, stomach staggers, enzootic liver cirrhosis etc. according as it manifests in stock, caused by acute or sub-acute poisoning from eating any of several toxic species of Senecio esp. S. retrorsus known as bossie 28 11.

* Yesterday... finishing touches were being done to the two new dung-floor classrooms. E. Province Herald. 22.4.74

Chronic Senecio poisoning in horses is known as "dunsiekte" or "enzootic liver cirrhosis." Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. fr. Du. dun = thin + ziekte = disease]

dust devil, n. pl. -s

33. A minor whirlwind visible crossing the veld like a column of dust.

cf. Austr. Darling shower, dust storm.; see also quot. at klompie 10.

Here we have only Karoo bushes ... and the dustdevils making long curly chimneys in the sky when it is hot. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

A dust-devil went pirouetting in front of me, a whirling little dancing-dervish of a thing made up of scraps of dead grass and sand and other of nature's unconsidered trifles, caught up and whirled along by the wind. D. Reed Somewhere South of Suez 1950

[unknown]

Dutch, pl. n. prop.

(1) 23. The first colonists under the Dutch|East India Company and their descendants.

Whenever mention is made of the Dutch in a more general sense, that part of the population of Cape Town, or of the colony, not English, is intended: since by far the greater proportion belongs to that nation; and all those who are born in the colony speak that language, and call themselves Africaanders, whether of Dutch, German, or French origin. Burchell Travels I 1822

(2) pl. n. prop. and n. modifier. 23. The Afrikaners (qv) 23.

Then Rhodes was anxious to link himself in the most obvious way with the Dutch... For the Dutch support, however, he had to work. There was hardly anything Rhodes did in Parliament which had not as its object the favour of the Dutch. He wanted Union. S. G. Millin Rhodes 1923

(3) n. prop. 23. The language of the (1) ~: also the dialect of Dutch from which Afrikaans (qv) is evolved: [the spoken language of the Cape-born ~ differed from the ~ of Holland] also used to refer to Afrikaans sometimes in a derogatory sense: see also Taal 23, Afrikaans 23, 34.

Dutch was to be the official language, and no attempt would be made to suppress English, which would be allowed to be used in the law courts and would be taught in the Schools, if so desired. O'Connor The Afrikander Rebellion 1915

The belief that Colonials, English and Dutch speaking alike, abused their power over the natives was held almost as an article of faith by most people in England who took any interest in South African affairs. Eric Walker Lord de Villiers and His Times 1925

In 1902 Genl. Hertzog stood in the Bloemfontein Post Office when someone walked in to send off a telegram. The Postmaster looked at the telegram and handed it back saying "I do not dispatch telegrams in dirty Dutch." Daily Dispatch 11.5.71

In combination Cape ~ (qv) 23, kitchen ~ (qv) 23 and simplified ~ 23, (Kollewijn) a form of the Dutch language with a simplified spelling system, invented or developed for S. Afr. use with the intention of ousting Afrikaans (the Taal): see quot.

... a new language, which he called "simplified Dutch" was invented for the purpose (the Taal is not capable of being used as a medium of instruction beyond very elementary stages and the Dutch of Holland is NEITHER UNDERSTOOD NOR WANTED in South Africa) ... E. Province Herald 19.5.1910

* Cancel: this quot. appears at backveld

Everyone knows that 'Kaffir' is regarded as an insult in South Africa. It is in the same category as 'hairy back', 'dutchmen' or 'coolies' Mr X MP for Pinetown said. E. Province Herald 11.9.75

(4) adj. 29adj. Of or pertaining to the ~ people or their language, views etc. freq. in combination ~ boer 19: see also quot. at backveld 22.

There was [sic] only three left in the hospital hut, namely myself, a blind man and a Dutch Burgher who had lost one arm. Buck Adams Narrative 1884

I fear that the proposed Constitution will not give satisfaction either to the English or to the Dutch party. Letter Lord J. H. de Villiers 12. 12. 1879 cit. Eric Walker 1925

^x Pretoria might still be more English than the English, but the back-veld was Dutch to the marrow, growing more irreconcilable every day and seething with discontent. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

Dutch, kitchen, n. prop.

Coll. 23. The form of Afrikaans (qv) spoken by servants or uneducated persons cf. Canad. monkey French: see also kitchen kaffir 23.

In the early days Afrikaans, as far as the written word was concerned, was in embryo. The coloured people, who spoke their version of it which we referred to as 'Kitchen Dutch', spoke English to us in our homes. Norah Henshilwood A Cape Childhood 1972

(2) Obj. a misnomer for Cape Dutch (qv) or Afrikaans (qv).

Dutch East India Company, n. prop.

17. The powerful company under the auspices and control of which the first settlement was made at the Cape (1652) as halfway house for victualling their ships: see quot. at Company 17, Slave lodge 17.

4b. referred to as The Company (qv) and jocularly personified as John or Jan Company/Compagnie: see Company 17, also V.O.C. 17 4b. and Here (Heeren) Seventien 17, 4b.

Dutchman, n. pl. -men

Coll. 19, 10. Mode of reference to an Afrikaner (qv) sometimes derogatory.

They call me Dutchman at school because I use a lot of Afrikaans words when I talk. Schoolboy 16 ex Graaff Reinet 1973

See quot. at addenda p.587.

Dutch medicines, pl. n.

16. A series of household remedies much used and favoured in the country districts under this name: see also huisapteek 16, borsdruppels 16, boegoe 16 (see buchu), doepa, doepa olie 16, duiwelsdrek 16 and quot. at Old Dutch Medicines 16 and benoudheid 16.

Juritz, Carel Friedrich, apothecary, chemist, and druggist, depot of the patent Dutch medicines from the orphan house of Halle, 29 Loop Street. C. of G. H. Almanac and Directory for 1843

For 100 years Lennon's Dutch medicines have helped people to feel better. Drum November 1964 Advt.

Tony's father ... said: Tony phoned me at work just after 12.30. I was in such a 'dwaal' I thought it was my other son.
E. Province Herald 16.7.75

Dutch Reformed Church, n. prop.

4a. Also D.R.C. (qv) 4a and the Kerk (qv) 4a. The Calvinist Church to which the majority of Afrikaans (qv) 23 speaking South Africans belong.

Mr. Murray, ... is of the Church of Scotland, which in doctrine and discipline corresponds almost entirely with the Dutch Reformed communion. Thompson Travels in S.A. 1827

The whole district are members of the Dutch Reformed Church. There are three places of Worship in the district ... S. Afr. Almanac and Directory for 1831 (Greig)

[trans. Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk (N.G.K.) (qv) 4a]

duwweltjie ['dɛvɛlkɪ, -tʃ] n. pl. -s

28. See (2) dubbeltjie.

... a secondary plant growth (opslag) amongst which the few grass species and especially the well-known and widely spread duwweltjie (Tribulus sp.) can be included. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

[Afk. variant of dubbeltjie]

dwaal [dwa:l] n. and vb

(1) Coll. 10. A daze: to be in a ~ disoriented, not 'registering' hence deriv. ~ ie 1, 19 a nickname for a slow witted person, or as predic. adj. 'she is terribly ~ ie these days'. cf. Jam. E. stray minded.

Not lost? What way takes you to Berry's Corner twice, then back to where you started from? I'm not a fool Boesman. The roads are crooked enough without you also being in a dwaal. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969 1973 edit. *See quot. at addenda p587 (582)*

(2) 29vb. To wander aimlessly, ~ around, to be lost, found in place names 27f Dwaal and Dwaalboom. ver ~ ... 27f. To stray: found in place name Verdwaalkloof.

[Afk. dwaal vb = wander, roam]

dwars [dwa(r)s] adj. prefix

27i. Crosswise, diagonal: found in S. Afr. place names as prefix n. e. g. Dwarskloof, Dwarsberg, Dwarskersbos, [Afk. dwars = transverse cogn. (a)thwart]

dwarswal ['dwa(r)s, val] n.

22, 31. A transverse embankment, on the side of a road for drainage to divert stormwater, or in the veld to prevent erosion: * [Afk. dwars = diagonal + wal = bank] * formerly a low bank or hump across a gravel road to divert storm water before the use of underground drainage pipes.

Eeaten out, modifier

11, 29adj. Of or pertaining to a camp (qv) 11 or other area of ⁽²⁾veld (qv) 11 which has been over-grazed or over-stocked: see also tramped out 11, beaten out 11.

The inspection party found it (the outspan) was badly eaten out, and councillors decided ... to ask the Soil Conservation Department what it would cost to have the outspan planned. Grocotts Mail 27.7.71

[poss. trans. Afk. uitvreet = eat away, corrode]

eating house, n. pl. -es

(1) 18, 30. Formerly a place of refreshment, restaurant.

Wardmasters shall take care, that no taps or Eating houses exist in their wards, without having proper and distinct signs affixed ... that there are no gambling nor any other houses, inconsistent with morality and good order. African Court Calendar for 1819

... getting the train across the bridge took well over three-quarters of an hour. There was an eating house on one side that did very well out of the wooden bridge. E. Province Herald 5.4.74

(2) 2, 30. Latterly but obsolescent, a place for non-whites to obtain meals e.g. kaffir ~; see (6) kaffir-.

Four kaffir labourers appeared ... on the charge of assaulting Wynne Guberu, an eating-house keeper. E. Province Herald 21.10.1911

Regulations governing eating houses in the Coloured area of the Municipality of Bloemfontein, are published in the "Official Gazette" of August 22 ... The Friend 25.8.30

[presum. trans. Du. eethuis = restaurant]

eat-up, vb trns.

Hist. 2. To take revenge upon an enemy by taking possession of all property and cattle.

The Chief's cattle-folds are replenished from time to time by fines and occasional "eating up" of delinquents, by which is meant the confiscation of the whole of their property, for alleged witchcraft, treason, or other great political crimes. Shaw Story of My Mission in S. E. Africa 1860

[trans. Ngu. uku Dla = to eat]

-ed, omission of

29. Loss of the alveolar suffix -ed is not confined to SAE, but very prevalent in S. A., e.g. barb wire, three bedroom house, pickle onion, flavour, old fashion home, long sleeve shirt etc.

Eendrag maak mag ['ɛn,drax ,mak'max] idiom

10. 'Union is strength' motto on the S. Afr. Coat-of-Arms.

The ideal of "Eendracht maakt macht" which was the inspiration of the architects of Union in 1910 has ... become obscured during recent years. E. G. Malherbe ⁱⁿ S. A. The Road Ahead edit Spottiswoode 1960

[Eendrag = Union, unity + maak = makes + mag = strength, force cogn. Ger. Mach]

x see also wave 29ady

eis, on my, your, etc. [e s], adv.m.

See ace, on my, your etc. (Austral.)

[translit. ace or fr. Afk. eie, own]

... groovy okies ... you can connect with if you rock
along on your eis. Not that I ever get on my eis much ... ou Plossom
isn't short of what it takes. Darling 9.4.75

Taurotaque oryx

get on

egg, n. pl. -s

Sect. children. 15. A top, so called on account of its shape: see also stinky 15, homemade, a 15, sailorboy 15.

Egoli [e'goli] n. prop.

2, 30. Zu. name for Johannesburg - the City of Gold: see also quot. at bombellatrain p. 587.

... Egoli is as green as Natal and twice as exciting ...
For a girl used to the deafening silence of the country and bed at nine with a good book, Egoli is a heady champagne. Sunday Times 9. 12. 73

When he was 18, the call of Egoli gripped young Tshabalala, so he came to Johannesburg. Drum. Aug. 1971

[Zu. eGoli fr. Eng. gold]

egte ['extə] attrib. adj.

Coll. 29adj. Genuine: often in combination an ~ boer^x cf. Austr.

dinkum, dinki-di, Ang. Ind. pukka.

[Afk. eg fr. Du. echt = real + attrib. inflect. -te]

eiken ['eikən] pl. n.

27c. Oaks: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to other n. e.g.

Eikendale, Eikenhof. [Du. eik = oak + pl. suff. -en]

eina ['eina] interj.

9, 16. An exclamation of pain: occ. used as n.

First aid for cuts - without the "eina". Sometimes treating your child causes more fuss than the actual wound. Sting! Burn! Ouch! Eina! Personality 24. 9. 71

Eina, that stung! Sunday Times 7. 10. 73

[Hott. é + ná exclamation of pain, or surprise]

einde ['eində] n.

27e. Also -end. End: found in S. Afr. place names Eindpaal,

Riviersonderend. [Du. einde cogn. end]

^x eis, or my, your, etc [e'is] adv. m.

¹⁰ See ace, or my, your, etc (Austral.)

elachi, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

[translit. ace or fr. Afk. eie,
own]

eland ['ilənd, 'læ, lant] n. pl. -s

(1) 6. Taurotragus oryx, the largest of the African antelopes believed to have been called by the Hottentots kanna (qv) 6 (Hist.)

... the Regulation which gives protection to the Hippopotamus and Bontebuck (that is, the 5th article of the proclamation of the 21st of March, of the year 1822), shall be henceforward also made applicable to the beautiful and scarce species of Deer called Eland, found in the George district. C. of G. H. Statutes 1823

(2) 27d. Elk(s) found in S. Afr. place names e. g. Elandsputte, Elandsbaai, Elandskloof, Elandsdrif, Elands Height.

(3) 28. Prefixed to several plant names e. g. ~ s boontjie (bean), ~ s doring (thorn), ~ s ertjie (pea) etc. and in form ~ veld 22, see bontveld 22.

[Afk. fr. Du. eland fr. Ger. Elentier = elk, ¹moose]

elephants' food, n.

28. Portulacaria afra: see spekboom 28, 11.

A peculiar tree grows here in abundance, called "speck-boom" by the Dutch, known in England as "elephant's food". The leaves are small, thick and juicy, and very sour. The elephants are fond of it as a food. K. Larson The Talbots Sweetnams and Wiggills 1943

elephant's foot, n.

28. Dioscorea elephantipes also D. sylvatica, also olifantsvoet 28 and Hottentot bread 28, a plant with a large tortoise-shaped woody tuber above ground.

I found many curious plants among which was one called Elephant's foot. Patterson Narrative 1789 cit. Pettman

Patterson who first recorded the plant states that its large solid bulb (sic!) was eaten by the Hottentots and that they regarded it as very salubrious, whence called Hottentotsbrood. C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

elephant's trunk
see half name

elf(t) [elf(t)] n. pl. -s

12. The edible marine fish Pomatomus saltator or shad, caught in large numbers in S. Afr. waters sometimes by means of trek nets (qv) 30.

Another annual visitor that comes in shoals is the elf. It is rather less delicate than the harder but still makes an admirable contribution to the table. Farmer's Weekly 18. 4. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. elft = shad]

endorse out, vb phr. usu. pass.

4b, ^{29vb.} 2, ¹ Usu. in phr. to be ~ d out, to be officially ordered to leave an urban area on account of lacking correct endorsements in a reference book.

East London is the dumping ground for many thousands of blacks endorsed out of the Western Cape, yet there are not even enough jobs for those who were here in the first place. Daily Dispatch 12. 3. 73

(e)nkosi [(e)n'kosi] interj.

9, 2. Sect. Usu. African: Thank you, thanks.

The word has, however, in the form enkosi come to be regarded, and is often used by colonists, as being the equivalent of the English "thank you". Pettman Africanderisms 1913

E, nkosi! or the simple vocative nkosi! is used ... as the English "thanks", to express gratitude to a giver by saying uyinkosi, you are a Lord. Kropf A Kaffir English Dictionary 1899 (1915)

[Ngu. -nkosi = lord]

* These are big houses with gardens they are called water efts becos they only
ones getting water in a furrow from the big dam at top [sic] of the street.
Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902.

Ethiopia, Order of, n. prop.

An African separatist episcopal Church, the clergy of which are
ordained by Anglican Bishops but which is otherwise autonomous.

... a church service led by the Rev. E. M. Hops, of the
Order of Ethiopia, who blessed the leopard skin, assegai and kerie
of the new chief. E. Province Herald 16. 12. 74

Kenneth Oram ... the new Bishop of Grahamstown performed
his first ordination ... on Sunday. ... The Rev. — was ordained to
the priesthood and is to be placed in a parish by the Order of Ethiopia.
Grocott's Mail 20. 12. 74

erf [ɜf, erf, ɛəf] pl. -ven

(Hist.) 17, 24, 18, 30. An urban building lot, or plot: see also stand 30, 24, of indefinite size, not a farm (qv) 11.

The erven or building lots, of which the village of Swellendam is composed, were first granted in 1750 ... S.AfrAlmanac and Directory for 1831 (Greig)

The sale of the first two erven will commence on Erf No. 3344. That is the erf with all the stones and it is next to the Water Purification Works. From there the Auctioneer will proceed to the top end of Amatola Row where another five erven will be sold. Daily Dispatch 5.8.71 Advt.

Certain towns which have public irrigation furrows 18 distinguish between *water erven and dry erven.

A piece of ground marked off in a village or town for garden or building purposes. These erven may be either water- or dry-erven, as they carry the right to water for irrigation or not. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Afk. fr. Du. erf = inheritance, piece of land cogn. Ger. Erbe]

esel ['rəsəl] n. prefix.

(1) 27d. Ass, donkey (poss. wild) found in S. Afr. place names, Eseljagpoort, Eseljagrivier, Eseljacht; also ezel.

(2) 28. Prefix to several plant names ~ bossie (bush), ~ oor (ear), ~ kos (food).

[Afk. fr. Du. ezel cogn. ass]

Ethiopia, Order of, n. prop.

4a, 2. An African separatist episcopal Church, the clergy of which are ordained by Anglican Bishops but which is otherwise autonomous. ~~see~~

~~agents at Order of Ethiopia~~

European, n. prop. pl. -s

4b, 23, 19. A white skinned person i. e. one descended from the Caucasian races, is so called in S. A. without regard for any actual ties with Europe: now largely replaced by white (qv): non ~ 4b, 23, 19 any person of colour whether of African, Asian or mixed ancestry: see also coloured 4b, 23, 19, black 23, 19.

The Bechuanas are described as a very interesting people, mild in their manners, naturally good humoured, with cheerful dispositions, readily conforming to European habits, and very willingly exchanging their skins for English dress. Phillips Occurrences in Albany and Cafferland 1827.

We sit in Africa and we are not Africans. We go to Holland, to France, and we suddenly realise that they lied to us. We are not Europeans. We go to England and we find out that we are Boers who try to live like the English here under the Southern Cross. Evening Post 17.2.73

The service was conducted by lay preachers of the Order of Ethiopia. E. Province Herald 5.10.74 ~~Cancelled~~

everlasting, n. pl. -s

13. The papery, highly coloured blooms of several species of Helichrysum and Helipterum are so called on account of their property of lasting many years, seven or more, from which they gain the name sewejaartjies (qv) 13.

The everlasting flower ... derives its name from appearing as fresh and in as high preservation after being seven years pulled as the day when it was first torn from the stalk ... When first plucked it feels like an artificial flower of painted paper; indeed it is much more like an artificial than a natural one. Percival Account of the C. of G. H. 1804.

excuse me, vb phr.

Substand. 10, 29. trans. equiv. of 'I beg your pardon' freq. sign. 'I didn't hear' or 'I didn't understand' [also as in Eng. if excusing oneself from a company, a room etc.] [translit. Afk. ekskuus = I beg your pardon]

eye, n. pl. -s

22. Fountainhead, source of a spring or river: see also bron 27a.

27a. Place name in trans. Die Oog (the ~): see oog 27a.

... the largest single 'eye' in the Kaokoveld a magnificent spring with a huge pool below. Lawrence Green Lords of the Last Frontier 1952

The springs deliver three-quarters of a million gallons of effervescent mineral water a day at 94 deg. F. There are five open-air pools and one totally enclosed pool over the eye of the main Spring. Daily Dispatch 31.8.71

[trans. Afk. oog = fountain head, source]

exemption, conditional n. pl. -s

34. See conditional exemption 34: also matriculation 34.

exit permit, n. pl. -s

4b. Permission to leave the country without the right to return: granted to certain persons who, for political reasons, do not possess a valid passport.

Many of them were forced to leave on exit permits, thus being deprived of the right to come back to the land of their birth and enjoy the kinship of their loved ones. Drum Sept. 1968

ezel, n. prefix

27d, 28. See esel 27d.

F

face cloth, n. pl. -s

(18). Equiv. of Brit. 'flannel': a small cloth usu. of towelling for washing the face and/or body. [not usu. sign. fabric with a nap or other surface in SAE]

faction fight, n. pl. -s

2, 20. Fighting between rival African groups or factions usu. in tribal conditions or areas, but also in pursuit of location or clan vendettas among mineworkers or other urban Africans: see quot. at hut 2, 18.

Yesterday afternoon a faction fight took place between two large bodiès of Kafirs outside the town. E. Province Herald 10. 4. 1906

Seven killed in Transkei faction fight. Seven tribesmen were killed, one injured and 159 huts burned down in a faction fight in the Libode district... Daily Dispatch 11. 5. 72

faggot, n. pl. -s

18. Small sized extra-hard bricks: see klinker 18, klompie 18.

... Also faggots (stone walling) for fire-places and braais. Daily Dispatch 14. 7. 71

[unknown]

fair, n. pl. -s

Hist. 17, 30. Government sanctioned places and opportunities for trade on the frontiers to permit occasional traffic, otherwise forbidden, between Colonists and the native tribes: see also kaffir fair 17, 30.

A periodical "fair" was established at Fort Wilshire, where the colonial traders by scores, and the kaffirs by hundreds or thousands, met to exchange wares. H. H. Dugmore Reminiscences of an Albany Settler 1870 pub. 1871

fall pregnant, vb phr.

16, 29vb. To become pregnant, conceive: [substand. but in regular use in the press.]

Since it is women who fall pregnant and give birth, it is time that two contentious issues of contraception and abortion should be decided by women for women. Sunday Times 27. 5. 73

[prob. by analg. fall ill or fr. archaic use to fall (with child)]

family, pl. n.

19. Relations in general as opposed to one's immediate family. e.g. 'They have lots of family in the Free State.' people is also occ. used sign. this: see quot. at addenda p. 590.

Now Britain and Rhodesia aren't even "family" since the republic was declared, the chances are they never again will be. Post 15. 3. 70

[presum. translit. Afk. familie = relations]

fanagalo, -kalo ['fanaga,lɔ] n. prop.

23, 30, 2. A pidgin language, a mixture of Zulu, Afrikaans (qv) 23 and English, which exists and is taught to facilitate communication between different ethnic and racial groups, esp. on the mines: formerly called mine kaffir 23: see also kitchen kaffir 23. cf. Rhodesian Chilapalapa (qv) 23; Canad. Chinook Jargon simplified trade language used between Indians and Whites.

A more or less regularized version of this ('Kitchen Kaffir') called Fanakolo, is used as the lingua franca on the gold-mines. Leo Marquard 1950 cit. O.E.D. Supplement 1972

But what is one to do if there are ... thousands of Black men working together, and speaking a variety of tongues, and unable to grasp one's instructions, let alone converse among themselves. "Learn them Fanakalo!" came the reply one day when I put the question to a meeting of workmen. ... Then came the lessons in Fanakalo, and slowly like a stroke of magic the barriers lift and the breeze flows in ... Star 17.3.72 Peter Becker

[Ngu. fana = be like + ka = possessive 'of' + lo = this]

fancy, n. pl. -ies

Sect. Mining. 30. Diamond trade term, not exclusively SAE. Diamond of gemstone quality of a colour other than pure or blue white: not 'off colour' (qv): see also quot. at off-colour 30, 29adj.

'Fancies' are coloured diamonds, produced by eccentric conditions of chemical content or firing in the volcanic pipes. There is a wide range of hues - amber, pink, green, mauve. Fancies are not favoured by the public, and are therefore not greatly sought after by the trade ... White The Land God Made in Anger 1969

far, modifier

Usu. Coll. 29adj. 10. Used as modifier of n. cf. Biblical 'a ~ country' or phr. the Far East: for place names see ver- 27i.

This isn't a far place. Oral informant (child)

11 June Uncle Jesse came through in evening he is ploughing in far lands.* Emslie Diary 1901

Watch out for highway hypnosis when you have to travel a far distance. Daily Dispatch Dec. 1970

* See land 11

farm, n. pl. -s

11. In freq. use in SAE sign. a tract of land, worked or unworked, not necessarily having a homestead on it, but under its own title deed: ~~f.e.g. 'He has six farms in the Transvaal' need not sign. either that he is a farmer, or that he lives on any of them.~~

→ A grazing ~, land to which stock (qv) 11 may be moved for winter grazing etc. ~, the Coll. 10, sign. usu. the country, or a rustic background as in 'He comes from ~', 'She learned to drive on ~' etc. see quot. at bock vat.

Off to the farm Thousands of jobless in Dar-es-Salaam are being rounded up and sent to rural areas for resettlement on farms. E. Province Herald 22.8.74

farm prison, n. pl. -s

11, 4b. A prison in a farming area, providing convict labour to surrounding farms: see also prison farm 4b.

farm school, n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. 34. A European school for white children situated on a farm but financed by a Provincial Department, providing primary education for the children of neighbouring farms.

(2) 34, 11. An African or Coloured primary school for the children of, usu. resident, farm labourers, of which the building is provided by the farmer and the teacher's salary by Government.

The buildings remain the property of the farmers concerned. The Department runs the schools and appoints the teachers, but the farmers have some say in the appointment of teachers and retain the right to visit the schools periodically. S. A. Institute of Race Relations Report 1948-9

Like all those involved in African education, Mr. — is concerned about money, specially money for textbooks. These, the implement of learning, are what he needs most, even though desks and benches are also in short supply, as in most farm schools. E. Province Herald 9.11.73

farm with, vb phr.

Substand, 11, 29vb Equiv. of English 'farm' vb. see also quot. at Woltone 19, 10.

Mr. —, who farmed with wine grapes in the Cape for six years, believes that the future for wine production under irrigation ... is very good. Farmer's Weekly 4.7.73



The idea of farming with various species of buck is becoming very popular ... One of the main advantages of farming with buck in preference to livestock is that Springbuck are the only buck affected by ticks. E. Province Herald 25.5.74

[trans. Afk. vb phr boer met-lit. farm with]

fatcake, n. pl. -s

7. ^{Also Austral.} See vetkoek 7. [translit. Afk. vetkoek]

father, n. pl. -s

(A. E.) 2, 19. Actual father or his brothers, big  an elder brother, small  a younger, similarly big mother, small mother.

... twice in three years he has asked leave to attend his father's funeral. 'But you have already buried your father ... How many fathers have you?' 'Six' replies the servant, ... Bantu, rural and urban irrespective of social strata, usually have more than one father and more than one mother. For in Bantu society, my father together with all his brothers would be my fathers, and my mother together with all her sisters, would be my mothers. So it is quite feasible for the servant to attend the funeral of two of his fathers, or six for that matter within three years. Peter Becker, Lantern 1966

Fatherland (cattle), n. and n. modifier

Hist. 11. Cattle imported from Holland and their progeny hence

Bastard ~, crossbreeds.

... bulls have been imported ... from Holland; these are called as well as their produce, Vaderland or Fatherland, and are certainly the best formed. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Cafferland 1827

Hardy Bastard Fatherland Cattle are bred here; and Plettenberg Bay is celebrated for the excellence of its butter. S. Afr. Almanac for 1833 (Greig).

fat lamb, n. pl. -s

11. Lamb raised for slaughter specially fed for quick maturity, hence ~ production. cf. Austr. 'fats'.

Here is a breed which has proved itself to be highly suitable for fat lamb or mutton production while at the same time producing a good fleece of wool ... success of large scale fat lamb production is dependent on quick maturity which can only be profitably achieved by good quality and abundant feed ... Farmer's Weekly 21. 4. 72

fat tackies, pln.

Coll. figur. 1031. Broad radial-ply motor tyres: see also tackie(s) 5.

Squat and square, XYZ's hang onto corners. And stick in the wet like big fat sticky tackies! E. Province Herald Advt. 26. 2. 74
[metaphorical]

fat tailed sheep, n. pl. Ø

11. Also Afric(k)ander, ronderib, blinkhaar, Cape sheep all 11. The indigenous S. Afr. sheep having hair not wool and a tail of solid fat much prized for culinary purposes. [Early travellers marvelled at the breed and the tail trucks (see below) on which their fat tails were carried. This breed cannot be crossed with woolled sheep since this practice introduces hair into the wool.]

Farmers looked forward to his arrival and the exchange of his rolls of £5 for their attractive fat-tailed Afrikander sheep. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

... we had been told by old Solders and Salers that had been to the Cape of Good Hope that they had seen the sheep climb up they hills with their tails made fast to a little truck with two wheels ... Goldswain Chronicles Vol. 1 1819-36

I had often laughed when I heard of sheep having trucks behind them to support the tail; some hundreds might be seen here with tail trucks. Buck Adams Narrative 1884

fazi ['fazi, 'fa-] n. pl. aba-, -s]

2, 19. Loosely used. An African woman, accurately a married woman only: see abafazi 18, 2, 19. [A.E.] ~ land (jocular) marriage, the married state.

... the local natives not merely Swazies, but Shangaan and Zingales, talk openly of the coming war. ... They declare the white men to be a lot of old women (umfazies), for they have no guns, and they say the Dutch will not help them. E. Province Herald 7. 4. 1906

[Ngu. umFazi = woman, wife]

fence creeper, n. pl. -s

Coll. 11. An animal usu. a bull which refuses to be confined, and knocks down and walks over fences.

The municipal bull turned out to be an incurable fence creeper and had to be got rid of. Grocotts Mail 1973 (date unknown)

field, the n.

Obs. 22, 26. Travellers' term for the (1) veld (qv) 22 and (2) veld (qv) 11.

A man on the death of his wife is considered unclean, and must separate himself from society for two weeks, and fast for some days. He is not allowed to enter any kraal or dwelling, but must remain in the field, where food is brought to him, until the period of separation is expired. Thompson - Travels in S. Afr. II 1827

The field may be burnt but it is late ... S. Afr. Almanac and Directory for 1831 (Greig) (Trans. v. d. Stel's Calendar for Farmers)

field/veld cornet, n. pl. -s

Hist. 17, 19. An office like that of District Officer in Brit. Colonial Service: a minor magistrate answerable to the landdrost (qv) 17, 19, similar to a Justice of Peace and having authority in his cy, a subdivision or 'ward' of a district (qv) 17.

Each district is subdivided into a number of veld-cornetcies, in which the duty of the Veld-Cornet, (or Field-Cornet), is to put in execution all orders from the landdrost, to whom he is more immediately accountable. Burchell Travels I 1822

It shall be lawful for any justice of the peace, officer of police, field cornet, constable, or any owner or occupier of land to demand of any such native foreigner the production of his pass ... C. of G. H. Act 1867

A field-cornetcy was supposed to contain 150-200 men. Reitz Commando 1929

Fields, the, n. prop.

Hist. 30. The Diamond Fields of Kimberley: occ. used of the Goldfields (rare).

... outspanned here are several parties that have come from the Fields. Eliza Jane Dugmore Diary 1871

Two of Hilda's sisters and their husbands were to travel to the Fields and live there. Introduction to Hildagonda Duckitt's Book of Recipes (edit. Kuttel) 1966

[abbr. of the Diamond Fields]

fiemies ['fɪmɪs] pl. n.

Coll. Slang. 16, 10. Whims, fads: to be full of cy to be fussy, capricious. [Afk. vol fiemies wees = to be full of whims and fancies]

fies [fɪs] adj.

Slang. 10, 29adj. angl. of vies (qv) 10, 29adj.

Fingo ['fɪŋgəv] n. prop. pl. -s

23. A ^{member of a} tribe living in the E. Cape Province descended from refugees of tribes driven from Natal: see quot. village, a grant of freehold land in return for loyal service in the Frontier Wars made in the reign of Queen Victoria.

The name Fingo, comes from the Kaffir amaMfingu, 'those who wander in search of service.' They were the remnants of tribes from Natal, broken up and scattered by Chaka's impis, who falling into the hands of the Kaffirs in their wanderings, were treated as a subject people until brought across the Keiskama River free by Sir Benjamin D'Urban in 1837. Later they were declared British subjects, and have remained loyal ever since, Fingo Levies serving in the various Kaffir Wars. Gordon-Brown 1941 footnote to Buck Adams Narrative 1884
[fr. Xh. amaMfengu- pl. prefix ama + mfengu - those looking for work fr. vb fenguza = to seek service]

finish(ed) and klaar [,fɪnɪʃən'kla:(r)] idiom

10. Emphatic expression sign. 'that's that', 'that's the end of it' or 'make an end' etc.

If you want to start a transocean race - as distinct from a coastcrawl - from Cape Town, the first question is: 'Where to finish?' You don't have to do much head-scratching about that: the answer is Rio de Janeiro - finish and klaar. S. A. Yachting Jan. 1973

[Afk. klaar = finished, done, done for]

fink [fɪŋk, fɪŋk] n. pl. -s

3. See vink 3, [fink angl.]

Barley or wheat where sown is very productive ... Like the rice it has a great enemy in a small bird called the fink which perch upon it in flocks of several thousands. James Ewart Journal 1811-14

[^{angl.} Afk. fr. Du. vink cogn. finch]

Fiscal, n. prop.

Hist. 17, 19. An official having numerous powers under the regime of the Dutch East India Company (qv) 17, later His Majesty's under the British: his office concerned both law enforcement and revenue, the being chief of police, public prosecutor and collector of fines and taxes.

Should the Wardmasters be neglectful hereof they will be fined 60 Rds, to be divided, three quarters for the Town Treasury, and one quarter for His Majesty's Fiscal. African Court Calendar for 1819

The Fiscal, being the head of the police, and the sitting magistrate, a great variety of business is daily transacted at his office. Burchell Travels I 1822

[Afk. fiskaal fr. Du. fiscaal = chief of the Treasury Lat. fiscalis fr. fiscus = treasury]

Fiscal shrike, n.

3. See Jan Fiskaal 3.

fishcart/horn n. pl. -s

Hist. 30, 25. Formerly the one-horse cart used in Cape Town by Malay (qv) 25 fish vendors to ply their trade, accompanied by piercing blasts on a tin bugle, the fish horn, the traditional method of crying their wares.

Fish carts were driven on to the beach, and with a great whipping up of horses and elaborate use of the fish-horn, that 'pest of the Cape Town streets,' the vendors would be sent on their way. Cape Times 18.3.36

... the noise from a well kept garage is not a nuisance, nor is the blowing of fish horns by itinerant vendors of fish. Wille Principles of S. Afr. Law 1945 edition.

... hear again the clatter of the high wheeled fish carts ... with the "striding bleat of the Fish horn riding triumphantly on the South Easter". quoted in The Star 22.5.72

fish oil, n.

Substand. 7. Frying or salad oil is freq. referred to in this way.

Onion Atjar ... Boil up 1 pint fish oil with a little pounded garlic, borrie a few chillies and some curry powder ... Hilda Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

[prob. fr. Afk. visolie = cooking oil, (oil extracted from fish, whale etc. is Afk. traan)]

flap, n. pl. -s

3. Coliopasser procne procne: see sakabula 3.

flat crown, n. pl. -s

32. Familiar name for Albizia adianthifolia (also known as A. fastigiata and A. gummifera) esp. common in Natal. A tree of up to 18m high and 25m across, the canopy having a flat, spreading crown with clusters of red flowers "like miniature shaving brushes" (C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966).

The 'flat-crown' (should be flat-roof) - half a dozen naked branches, full of elbows, slant upwards like artificial supports, and fling a roof of delicate foliage out in a horizontal platform as flat as a floor. Mark Twain More Tramps Abroad cit. Pettman

flat(s) n. usu. pl.

27a. Plain, flat area: found in S. Afr. place names following other n. e.g. Cape Flats, Manley's Flats, Kings Flat [sic], Bontebok Flats, Quagga Flats. [trans. Afk. vlakke (qv) = plain(s)]

flatty, n. pl. -ies

12. Also (2) stompie: the marine fish Rhabdosargus tricuspidens also called blinkvis, the Silver bream.

XYZ tells me some big flatties have been caught, up to 0,680kg (1½lb). (Another name for the "flatty" is stumpnose or silver bream). Grocott's Mail 3.9.71

cf. inkwekhwezi ('star' sign. the appearance of Halley's Comet) and
brug ('bridge' sign. the train disaster at Eloukrans E. Cape) also used
to date events.

* foci tog

flu, n. prop.

[A. E.] 2, 24. The influenza outbreak of 1917-18, used occ. by older Africans as a means of dating their birth or other events: *see addenda p 587.*

Q. 'How old is Idah?

A. Flu

African Informant aged about 65 Grahamstown 1968

'fly' n. (prop)

Coll. 21, II. The tsetse fly (qv) 21, II.

... the proximity or otherwise of "Fly", should you be in a district where the dreaded Tsetse are found. H. N. Hemans The Log of a Native Commissioner 1935

foefie slide ['fvfi-, 'fufi] n. pl. -s

15. Also fuffie/(foofy) slide: see quot.

Of all the traditional South African games, one is unsung: the foefie slide. Now the foefie slide is a simple contraption. It is a thick wire or a rope secured to the highest point in the vicinity, usually a tree, and then slung down, sometimes over water, to an arm-high point where it's once again secured. A piece of iron pipe is threaded on to this rope or wire and you are supposed to launch yourself into space hanging from the pipe. Fair Lady 31.10.73

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Afk. foefie = stunt, trick]

foeitog ['fui, tɔx] interj.

9, 10. An exclamation of pity or sympathy, also as 'shame' (qv) 9 used to exclaim at something small, sweet or helpless. cf. siestog (qv) 9.

Mr. — admitted the cost of living had also increased, but he asked defensively didn't Mr. — know that the increase was part of a world wide phenomenon. "Ag, foeitog!" he said. Cape Times 10.11.72

On the open road we tended to put up the tattered black cowl and push it protectively, which earned us fond smiles and foeitogs ... E. Province Herald 9.5.74

[Afk. ^xfoeitog = for shame (foei cogn. Eng. fie)]

fontein [,fɔn'tein] n. pl. -s

(1) 22. Natural spring or water-source: see fountain and quot. at farm.

... the farms exhibit signs of wealth, and here and there, where there is a "fontein", there are patches of arable land covered with luxuriant crops. Bishop Gray Journal Part I 1849

(2) 27a. Spring: found in numerous S. Afr. place names with adj. or n. e.g. Witfontein, Grootfontein, Olifontfontein, Rietfontein, Klipfontein etc: see also fountain 22, 27a.

... in dry countries, any circumstance relating to water, is of sufficient importance to distinguish that place. Thus it is that the Dutch word Fontein is made such liberal use of in every part of the Colony: the Hottentot word Kamma (water) is not less frequently found in the composition of the aboriginal names. Burchell Travels I 1822

But now, discharged, I fall away

To do with little things again. ...

Gawd, 'oo knows all I cannot say,

Look after me in Thamesfontein!

Rudyard Kipling The Five Nations 1903

[Afk. fr. Du. fontein = spring, fountain cf. Fr. fontaine = spring, source]

for, prep.

Substand. used sign. 'of' esp. by children: I'm so scared for these exams.

[translit. Afk. vir = for, of esp. in phr. bang vir = scared of]

She's really skrikking for the dance. Schoolgirl 17.

foot, his, her etc. interj.

Slang. 9. See se voet 9.

If A. says he's going to ride it, tell him his foot. Informant
Mother N. E. Cape 1973

[trans. Afk. se voet lit. 's (possessive suff) foot]

footsack ['fʊt,sæk] interj.

Slang. 9. See voe(r)tsek 9. [angl. translit. Afk. voertsek (qv)]

for, prep. See addenda p582

for Africa, idiom

Coll. 10, 24. See Africa, for 10, 24.

~~for~~ see addenda p.582

forget, vb trns.

Substand. 29vb, trns, 10. To leave behind (some concrete object, book, jersey etc.).

I must go back to school, I forgot my Latin book there.
Schoolboy 13 1974

[translit. Afk. vergeet = leave behind]

fort, n. prefix and suff.

27e, (20). Found in S. Afr. place names as in British sign. the site of a former military fortification usu. with n. prop. e.g. Fort Brown, Fort Cox, Fort Mistake: also Vredefort: see also Pos(t) 27e.

fossick ['fɒsɪk] vb intr.

Coll. 30, 10. Term ex Austr. formerly to prospect for gold, hence er a prospector; now more loosely about, around etc. sign. rummage, search or hunt.

An English ivory hunter ... had his throat cut, and two prospectors, Charles Muller and George Anderson, fossicking in the northern bushveld ... in June, 1871, were attacked. Bulpin Lost Trails on the Low Veld 1951

fountain, n. pl. -s

(1) 22, 11. A natural spring or water source: see also fontein 22, eye 22, -bron- 27e and quot. at trekbok 6.

... the arable land ... is not irrigated from the river, but from various fountains which issue from the steep woody kloofs of the Boschberg ... Thompson Travels in S. Afr. II 1827

The farm is divided into 12 grazing camps which are stock-proof. The boundary fencing is jackal-proof. There is water in all camps which is provided by five water-holes in the river, five fountains and two windmills. Grocotts Mail Advt. 16.5.72

(2) 27a. Found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Seven Fountains, Hope Fountain.

[translit. Afk. fontein = spring cf. Fr. fontaine = spring]

Frans madame ['frans mə'dam] n. pl. -s
 Boopsoidea inornata (Sparus or Pagrus holubi)
 12. Also French madam (qv) 12: a marine fish with bulging eyes and
 large red mouth usu. Jacopever (qv) 12. [Afk. Frans = French + madame]

Free Burgher, n. pl. -s

Hist. 19, 17. See burgher 19 and quot. at Company 17.

Free State- n. prop. prefix

Coll. 10. ^{with -s} Prefix sign. primitive, crude, backward etc. in phr.

~ coal, poss. Reg. Transvaal term for mis (qv): reference to the use
 of dried cattle dung in areas where other fuel is scarce: see also Karoo
coal 18. ~ nails 18 stones used to hold a flat roof or roof patch in

place. ~ micrometer screw 18, vice-grip spanner, see also bobbejaan-

spanner 18.* cf. Austr. prefix bush (lawyer, baptist), S. A. bush mechanic.

* ~ sandwich 7, 10, two slabs of stywe pap (qv) 7 with sagte pap in
 in between, ~ bolt 18, 10, a piece of wire to close a door.

French madam, ^{Natal Informant} n. + cf. Rhodesian spanner (a bottle opener)

12. See Frans madame 12.

I caught the surprise of my fishing career - a french madam.
 It look my little spinner right on the surface ... would never have
 believed a french madam would take a spinner on the surface if he had
 not seen it done. E. Province Herald 9. 5. 74

frikkadel [ˌfrɛkə'del] n. pl. -s

7. Fried mincemeat balls equiv. of rissoles.

... lumps of mutton, fried in the tallowy fat of the sheep's
 tail, or else - their only change of diet ... the tasteless fricadel,
 kneaded balls of meat and onions, likewise swimming in grease. Boyle
To the Cape for Diamonds 1873

Weary of Bangers and mash, 1001 ways with mince - babotie,
 spaghetti bol, frikkadels, meat loaf ... Cape Times 11. 7. 73

[Afk. fr. Fr. fricadelle = a meat ball poss. rel. fricandeu]

fris [frɛs] adj.

Slang. 16, 29adj. Full of energy cf. U.S. pep(py). [Afk. fris =
 energetic cogn. fresh]

fuffieslide ['fʊfɪ,slaid] n. pl. -s

15. See foefie slide 15.

full mouth, phr. modifier

11. See volbek 11.

full of, predic. phr. modifier

10, 29. trns. adj. Covered with/in.

... a dead cat lay on the pavement full of flies. Daily Dispatch 13. 3. 72

Nursing cut elbows and a back full of red welts, she said ... Ibid 2. 6. 72

[mistrans. Afk. vol = covered with]

fundi ['fʊndɪ] n. pl. -s

10, 19. An expert: occ. as adj. equiv. of expert in 'He's fundi at maths' (rare) cf. Ang. Ind. pundit: see quot. at must.

So there we have two problems for the language fundis. It is now in your court. Can you answer their prayers? Cape Times 3. 7. 73

[fr. Ngu. umfundisi^(qv) = a teacher]

furrow, n. pl. -s

11, 18. A man made water course usu. for irrigation purposes, urban or agricultural: see sloot 11, 22 and quot. at trekbok 6, also lead water

11, 29vb. [Towns with water erven: see erf^{qv at.} 17, 18, 24, (30) have irrigation ~ s along the streets, usu. under control of a water fiscal/fiskaal (qv) 17, 19.]

All furrows on the farm are cement. The property is situated between and riparian to the Damara and Letsitele Rivers. Farmer's Weekly 30. 5. 73

... this rural town [Potchefstroom] steeped in the history of the Transvaal when it was still the Zuid Afrikaansche Republiek. In those days, wide furrows ran down both sides of the streets. Panorama Apr. 1974

Fynbos [feɪn, bɔs] n.

General term for numerous species of narrow-leaved indigenous shrubs common to winter rainfall areas: elsewhere known as macchie or mequie: also used for Euryops spp. see harpuisbos.

This formation may be original but may also be overgrown with the 'fynbos' rich in proteas or the coastal macchie...

Krauss Travel Journal 1838-40 trans Spohr 1973.

The fynbos is fire-resistant and regenerates from perennial roots back. It is also extremely susceptible to invasion by "exotic" plants... many other areas where the pines and black wattle are... suppress the indigenous vegetation chiefly the fynbos and sourveld types.

Seagrief, Reading the Signs Inaugural lecture 24. 5. 76 p. 8.

[Afk. fr. Du fijn = delicate + bosch cogn. bush].

G

ga [xa] interj.

9. An exclamation of strong distaste or disgust: see also sis 9.

Like the rest of your article, all that it boiled down to was a meaningless piece of invective, equivalent to saying "Farmers, gha!"
Daily Dispatch 21.7.71

[Afk. ga = faugh]

gaatjeponner [xarkĩ'põnə(r), -ci-] n. pl. -s

4a, 19. See gatjaponner 4a, 19

galjoen [xal'jün] n. pl. ∅

12. Also damba (qv) 12 and high water. The edible, strongly flavoured marine fish Coracinus or Dipterodon capensis or any of several related fish of the Coracidae not dissimilar to a three decker galleon in shape.

For the galjoen there can be no lukewarm sentiments. You like it or dislike it intensely. It has a strong and distinctive flavour which most people at the Cape consider a special delicacy. Farmer's Weekly 18.4.73

[Afk. fr. Du. galjoen fr. Lat. galea = a galleon]

galla, vb See addenda p582

gallsickness, n.

11. Also galsiekte: designation for most liver disorders in stock:

~ veld, areas in which such diseases are endemic: see also

biliary 11.

One of the diseases which had been under notice for a long time and which he had only been able to trace to ticks about a year ago, was also commonly known as gallsickness. E. Province Herald 10.10.1911

The animals are used to virulent heartwater, redwater and gallsickness veld. All animals have been injected against Bushveld diseases. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 21.4.72

[trans. Afk. galsiekte fr. Du. gal = bile cogn. gall + ziekte = disease]

galsiekte [xal,siktə] n.

11. See gallsickness 11. 28. ~ bossie, Chenopodium ambrosioides an aromatic plant thought to be a cure for ~.

[Afk. fr. Du. gal cogn. gall + ziekte = disease]

gammat [xa'mat, 'xamakĩ, -tʃi, -ci] n. prop.

19, 10, 25. Comic Malay folk figure, subject of ~ tjie jokes 15 in ~ taal (language): an extreme Cape Coloured (qv) 23 dialect. Loosely: a ~ any Cape Coloured person.

Laugh with Gammatjie Send your jokes to: POST's Gammatjie Jokes Department ... Post 10.5.70

You think you got troubles, Gammat - they got me for doing 51 kmh, for storing 11 litres of petrol, for drunken driving, my wife's left me, and I got Meraai into trouble --- Drum 22.3.74

[corruption of Achmet fr. Mohammed]

gamadoelas [,x(r)ama'dúləz, -as] pl. n.

See Gramadulas
Slang. 10, (22). Also gram-: [back of beyond, the wilds: see also bundu 22, 10. cf. Austr. Back of Bourke, never-never land/country etc.: see backveld 22.]

... she was a little girl staying in the lonely African wilds. Gramadoelas was the word that Aunt Susann used ... It was loose talk about wilds and gramadoelas and tropics that gave the Mariçô a bad name, we said. Bosman Jurie Steyn's Post Office 1971

[poss. fr. amaduli pl. of Ngu. -duli = hill]

game ranch/ing / n.

11. An alternative to stock (qv) farming: [increasingly favoured since indigenous buck require no special feeding and are more resistant to disease than domestic animals: see quot. at farm with 29vb, 10.]

... on the doorstep of the world famous Hluhluwe Game Reserve and located in the heart of the Zululand game country. ... a highly developed 1133ha game ranch. Fully stocked with over 4000 head of game. Comprising 15 different species, including White Rhino, Giraffe, Nyala, Kudu and Eland ... Benefit by the way of sale of game, meat and concession paid to it from a lucrative safari business which operates from the ranch: Farmer's Weekly 27.2.74

ganna ['xana] n.

28, 11. Any of several species of Salsola, the ashes of which form white caustic alkali used in the early days for soap making: [also called kannabos prob. fr. confusion of pron. of [x] in channa, see ²kanna, or poss. fr. Hott. name for eland (qv) 6 which were said to feed on it: see ¹kanna and quot. at brak 11.]

... the young shoots of the Channa bushes. The ashes of these saline plants produce a strong ley, and of this, mixed with the fat of the sheep, collected during the year, the women make an excellent soap. Lichtenstein Travels in S. Afr. 1812

Veld grazing consists of healthy Karoo bushes, brak, ganna, vleis, grass ... Farmer's Weekly 27.2.74

[prob. fr. kanna fr. Hott. kama = eland]

gans [xāns-] n. prefix.

27d. Goose: found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Ganskraal, Gansbaai.

[Afk. fr. Du. gans = goose]

garam (ghurum) masala, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

garingboom ['xa:riŋ, bʁəm] n. pl. Ø

32, 11. (Agave americana introduced from central America: the de-spined leaves are chopped and used for fodder in time of drought.

Proportionately, it probably has more American aloe (garingboom) and salt bush than any other farm in the country. And for very good reason. Throughout its long history — has never resorted to buying supplementary feed during times of drought. Farmer's Weekly 11.7.73

[Afk. garing fr. Du. garen = thread, cogn. yarn + boom = tree cogn. Ger. Baum]

garrick, n. pl. -∅
12. See leerfish/vis 12.

gat [xat] interj. or n.
(1) -Unaccept. Anus, ^{van-} an expletive. / cf. Jam. E. you bain.
(2) -gat- n. prefix or suff. 27a. Hole, opening, pit etc. found in S. Afr. place names usu. as suff. e.g. Moddergat, Makapansgat, Seekoegat: also as prefix Gatberg. cf. Canad. trou, hole, in place names.
[Afk. gat = hole, hence also vent, anus]

gatjaponner(s) ['xatja,pɔ̃nə(r)] n. usu. pl.
19, 4a. Derogatory name given by the Doppers (qv) 4a, 19 to the members of the D.R.C. (qv) 4a, 19 on account of their customary wearing of the manel (qv) 5 or frock coat.

... a party of Voortrekkers, some Doppers (Nederduits Hervormde Kerk), others Gatjaponners (Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk), who formed a laerplek at on the present town site. Religious arguments arose, and the Doppers moved off and founded a settlement of their own. They called it Reddersburg because they had been "saved" from those who remained behind. Not to be outdone, the Gatjaponners named their home Edenburg, an earthly paradise after the departure of the Doppers. Lawrence Green These Wonders to Behold 1959

[Afk. gat see (1) gat + japon = gown, robe + -er personif. suff.]

gaukum ['gəʋkəm] n.
14. See ghokum 14.

gavin(i) [ga'vin(i)] n.
8, 2. Also govini: a powerful spirit distilled from sugar cane: see quot. at shimiyaan 8, 2. [Zu. gavini = an intoxicant as above]

gebroken veld [xə'brvəkən,felt] n.
[[Obs.]] Mixed veld consisting of grass and bush: see (2) veld and quot. at aarbossie 28, 11. [Du. gebroken cogn. broken past partic. of vb breken = to break]

-gedacht [xə'dax(t)] vbl partic.
27g. Thought (of): found in place names usu. of farms usu. with adv. prefix e.g. Nooitgedacht, Goedgedacht, also Afk. form gedag: see also -bedacht 27g. [Afk. gedag fr. Du. gedacht past partic. of vb denken cogn. think]

gedoente [xə'dũntə] n. pl. -s
Slang. 10. To do, fuss, 'carry on', doings etc. cf. U.S. hassle, Jam. E. rig-jug. [Afk. prefix ge- + doen = do cogn. done + suff. -te]

geel- ['xɪəl] adj. prefix

29adj. Yellow, prefixed to numerous names in S. A. esp. of plants, also fauna generally, e.g. aandblom 13, boegoekaroo 28, boekenhout 18, bek 12, 3, stert 12, meerkat 6 etc.

[Afk. fr. Du. geel = yellow]

geelbek ['xɪəl,bek] n. pl. ∅

(1) 12. Also Cape Salmon: the edible marine fish Atractoscion aequidens which has bright yellow edges to the jaws and gill covers: [being firm fleshed it is favoured for the traditional dish ingelegde vis (qv) 7] see also quot. at allewêreld 9.

... if the electronic aids of the trawlers track down all the anchovy, all the pilchards, all the bait fish round the Peninsula, ... no snoek, no game fish, no kob, no geelbek will come to these waters. Argus 4. 6. 71

(2) 3. A yellow billed wild duck Anas undulata ~~or A. flavirostris.~~

This is a light-brown duck, and is easily identified by the bright yellow bill from which it takes its Boer name - geelbec. Bryden Gun and Camera 1893 cit. Pettman

(3) Obj. 19. An offensive mode of reference to a coloured person.

Coloured persons are so called in the Western Province on account of their yellowish colour. C. P. Swart Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934

[Afk. fr. Du. geel = yellow + bek = mouth, bill cogn. beak]

geelhout ['xɪəl,(h)əvt] n.

(1) 32, 18. See yellowwood 32, 18.

Of the species peculiar to this country I have observed the geel hout: it grows to a very large size ... - the wood is of a bright yellow colour: and much used for furniture. Percival Account of the C. of G. H. 1804

(2) 27c. Yellowwood (tree) in place name Geelhoutboomberg.

(3) 28. See ouhout, oubos (Leucosidea sericea).

[Afk. fr. Du. geel = yellow + hout = wood]

geelrys ['xɪəl,rɛɪs] n.

7. See yellow rice 7, begrafnisrys 7; also borrie 7 and quot. at pastei 7.

... the meat dishes - chicken, mutton, "geelrys" (yellow rice flavoured with saffron and condiments and coloured with turmeric) ... Sunday Times 18. 2. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. geel = yellow + rijs cogn. rice]

geelstert ['xɪəl,ste(r)t, -stɛət] n.

12. See yellowtail 12.

*

-(ge)gund [(xə)'xɔnt] vb partic.

27g. -Favoured: found in S. Afr. place names with adv. prefix e.g.

Welgegund, Goedgegund (also Misgund = begrudged, envied.) [Du. past partic. of vb gunnen = to grant]

* geelvis ['xɪəl,fɪs] n.

12. See yellowfish 12.

geilsiekte ['xɛɪl,sɪktə] n.

11. Prussic acid poisoning, bloat, caused by eating luxuriant grass which has withered in sudden heat after rain.

The term "geilsiekte" as used by farmers does not signify a definite disease, but is a collective name for different ailments most of which are caused by plant poisoning. By far the most cases ... are due to hydrocyanic acid (prussic acid) poisoning caused through the ingestion of wilted green grass. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. geil = lush, rank, poss. rel. Du. gijl = ferment n., + siekte fr. Du. ziekte = disease]

geleë [xə'liə] vb partic.

27g. See gelegen 27g.

gelegen [xə'liɛxən] vb partic.

27g. Situated: found usu. with adv. prefix in S. Afr. place names e. g. Vergelegen, Welgelegen, also Ongelegen. [Du. gelegen past partic. of vb liggen = to lie, be situated, Afk. geleë]

gemeente [xə'mɛəntə] n. pl. -s

4a. Parish: the congregation of a D.R.C. (qv) church.

The ministers of this Dutch Reformed Church liked the place so much that from that day ... (1825) ... to this, only one has been called away. First in this pleasant gemeente was the Rev. J.J. Beck. He never served any other community and he remained at his post for 53 years. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

[Afk. gemeente = parish, community, congregation]

gem (squash) n. pl. -s, (-es)

14. Small green vegetable marrows, golden and hard-skinned when mature: Coll. 'gems'.

GEMS, well supplied, demand moderate 30 to 50 Farmer's Weekly 21. 4. 72

gemors [xə'mɔ(r)s] n.

Coll. Slang. 10. A mess-up, 'hash', muddle.

The walls are so tremendously thick, being made of large rough boulders lime and sand, that the damage was mostly internal, said Mr. Duckitt, some walls were a real gemors. Farmer's Weekly 25. 4. 73

[Afk. n. gemors = mess fr. vb mors (Du. morsen) = make a mess, spill, dirty etc.]

gemsbok ['xɛms,bɔk] n. pl. ∅

6. One of the S. Afr. antelopes, Oryx gazella said to be courageous enough to tackle a lion.

As we rode along, I observed several gemsboks. This is a beautiful and noble-looking antelope. His long, straight, sharp horns incline a little backward, and it is said the animal can use them with formidable effect in self defence. Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827 [Du. gems = chamois + bok cogn. buck]

general dealer, n. pl. -s

30. A merchant, often in a country trading store, carrying a widely varied stock to meet the general needs of a community. cf. Canad. country store, general store. [A ~s licence 4b. restricts the sale of certain classes of merchandise, e.g. groceries after 6 p.m.: only dairy products, confectionery and cigarettes may then be sold.]
see tea room 30
Also algemene handelaar 30.

J.C. TRUTER, General Dealer, Meade Street, Cape Town. Has always on hand, a well assorted stock of Staple and Fancy Goods. George Advertiser 14. 4. 1870

A Roll of chewing tobacco, one pound of flour, three yards of dress material and about sixpence worth of 'London Mixture' sweets ... An order like this was commonplace a few decades ago in a country general dealer's ... Panorama Apr. 1974

~'s store 30.

The general dealer's store was the next step in the chain of development following on the itinerant pedlar who peddled his wares in the wake of our pioneer forebears. Once the pioneers settled in a place, the pedlars opened stores to supply the local inhabitants with all they needed. Panorama Apr. 1974

[trans. Afk. algemene = general + handelaar = trader, dealer]

gentoo ['dzentu] n. pl. -s

Prob. Reg. Cape. 19, 10. A prostitute: see quot.

But only one of these lost ships is remembered in such a peculiar way as the American sailing ship Gentoo ... Among the survivors were a number of young servant girls who had been engaged by wealthy people ... The girls soon drifted out of respectable employment into New Street ... and Keerom Street, which had bad reputations. They set up places which became known as 'Gentoo houses', with Malay orchestras to provide dance music. To this day a loose girl is called a "gentoo" by the Cape Malays. Lawrence Green S. Afr. Beachcomber 1958

[fr. n. prop. Gentoo, U.S. ship wrecked Struys Bay, 1846. (poss. fr. Gentoo, Hindu sign. a Telegu-speaking Hindu)]

gereedskap [xə'riət, skap, kɪs] n. pl. -te

18, 31. See kis 18, wakis 18, 31. [Afk. gereedskap = tools, equipment + kis fr. Du. kist cogn. chest]

German print, n.

5. Also Duitse sis, bloudruk (qv) 5, Kaffir print (qv) 5.

→ Some Xhosa women dress in a more Western fashion. They dress in a material commonly called German print. Radio S.A. 'Woman's World' 11. 9. 72

gesig [xə'sɪx] n. suff.

27a. View, sight, also gezicht: found in S. Afr. place names, e.g. Schoongesig/-gezicht: see also sig 27a.

[[gesiggie [xə'sɛxi] n. pl. -s

13 . Pansy.

Pansies have a charm all of their own, the Afrikaans name gesiggies, describes them so well. Daily Dispatch 11. 3. 72

[Afk. gesig = face, countenance + dimin. suff. -(g)ie 'little face']]

gesondheid [xə'sɔnt(h)eɪt] interj.

9, 8. Good health, a toast equiv. of Fr. a votre santé, cf. N.Z.

kia ora (Maori) good health.

The first night, Van der Merwe raised his glass and said "Gesondheid". When Broeder Van der Merwe says 'Gesondheid' he is not saying his name. He is saying 'Good health' which in Afrikaans is 'Gesondheid'. Sunday Times 3. 12. 72

[Afk. gesondheid = health cogn. Ger. Gesundheit cogn. Eng. adj. sound]

gevonde [xə'fɔndə] vb partic.

27g. Found: found in S. Afr. place names with adv. prefix e. g.

Welgevonde. [past partic. Du. vb vinden cogn. find]

-gezicht [xə'sɛx, -'zɪxt] n.

27g. See gesig 27g. [Du. gezicht = view]

ghaap [gɑ:p] n.

14, 28. Or guaap: applied to several species of Stapelia (Asclepiadaceae) with edible succulent stems and foetid-smelling flowers.

From the neighbouring hills, Speelman brought home a short fleshy plant, well known to the Hottentots by the name of Guaap, and to botanists by that of Stapelia pilifera. It has an insipid, yet cool and watery taste, and is much used by them for the purpose of quenching thirst; for which purpose, it would seem, nature has designed it, by placing it only in hot and arid tracts of country. Burchell Travels I 1822

[prob. Hott. name guaap, u' gaap]

gharretjie ['garɪki, -ci] n. pl. -s

6. From graatjie meerkat 6: see meerkat 6. [Afk. fr. Nama Hott. poss. fr. Bushman Xara- = yellow meerkat]

ghee, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

ghoen [gɔn, gɔn] n. pl. -s

15. Either the stone used in hopscotch or most freq. the marble, often of a slightly larger size, used for shooting or throwing at other marbles: see ironie 15, alie 15, (1)glassie 15, (2)queen 15.

... Both had sold all their goens and allies ... E. Province Herald 3. 4. 74

... Marbles for Africa. 49c per bag (100 + 1 goen)
Marble season has started. Ibid. Advt.

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Malay gundu = a metal filled object for throwing at nuts, or Hott.]

X See quot. at addenda p. 582.

ghokum [ˈgəʋkəm] n. pl. -s

14, 16. The fruits of several species of Carpobrotus esp. C. edulis, used for jam: the leaves are used medicinally for a gargle: see Hottentot fig 14, and Sour fig 14.

... Crystallised ghurkums and naartjies are novel delicacies which she expects to put on the market ... Cape Argus 1. 2. 24
[Hott. name (t') gaukum]

ghomma [ˈgɔ̃ma, -mə] n.

25, 15. A Malay hand-drum used for the accompaniment of liedjies (qv)

The ghomma-liedjies, on the other hand, were all accompanied by the ghomma, a single headed drum made from a small cask with a skin nailed over one of the two open ends. Percival R. Kirby 1939 cit. Du Plessis The Cape Malays 1944

[prob. fr. Javanese gamelan(g) or ghom = gong prob. rel. Ur-Bantu ngoma = drum]

ghommaliedjie [ˈgɔ̃məliˈkʲis, -ci] n. pl. -s

15, 25. A Cape Malay picnic song: see quot.

... and the ghommaliedjie, which is a picnic song. At a Malay picnic the participants form a circle, join hands, and walk slowly, singing a verse of a Dutch folk song. This is followed by a ghommaliedjie, led by a ghomma-player seated in the centre of the circle. Du Plessis The Cape Malays 1944

[ghomma (qv) + Afk. lied = song + dimin. suff. -jie cogn. Ger. Lied(er)]

ghurum masala

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

ghwarrie [ˈgwarɪ] n.

28, 32. See guarrie 28, 32, 16, 14.

giant protea, n. pl. -s

13. See king protea 13.

gieliementjie See addenda p582.

gif [xɛf] n. prefix

28. Poison: prefixed to the names of numerous toxic plants, e. g.

bol, boom (qv), bossie etc. also siekte (qv) 11.

[Afk. fr. Du. gift = poison]

gifbol [ˈxɛf, bɔ̃l] n.

28. Any of several species of Amaryllidaceae with highly toxic bulbs, and leaves, said by early naturalists to be the source of the poison used by the Bushman for arrows.

This plant is well known to the Bushman, on account of the virulent poison contained in its bulb. It is also known to the Cobnists and Hottentots, by the name of Gift-bol (Poison-bulb). Burchell Travels I 1822

[Afk. gif fr. Du. gift = poison + bol = bulb]

gifboom ['xɪf,brəm] n.

28, 32. Name applied to several toxic species harmful to people and to stock: [The seeds of one, Hyaenanchae globosa were said to be crushed and used by Bushmen and Hottentots for tipping arrows: another a plant pest in the problem of plant migration:^(qv) see quot.]

In the dry sub-tropical route was found migration of the gifboom, melkbos (or spurge), honey locust, blackthorn and skilpadbos (or vygie). E. Province Herald 28. 2. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. gift = poison + boom = tree cogn. Ger. Baum]

gifsiekte ['xɪf,sɪktə] n.

11. See miltsiekte 11.

girdle of famine, n. pl. girdles

Obs. 5. Travellers' term: see hunger belt 5.

The pangs of hunger pressed sore upon us and our only relief was to draw our "girdles of famine" still tighter round our bodies. Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

Round his loins is a double thong, also thickly set with brass rings. This is regarded as a great ornament in South Africa; and it also serves as a girdle of famine to confine the stomach, if on a journey food runs short. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

girl, n. pl. -s

Obj. 19. A female servant regarded by many as offensive, though used by black S. Africans also. [Poss. orig. to avoid 'maid' for a married woman, or the term 'servant'.] In combination wash ~, ironing ~ etc.

You know what I asked them? 'Does your mother want a girl? Go ask your mother if she wants a girl.' I would have gone Boesman. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[prob. anal. boy (qv) 19]

give, vb trans.

Substand. 29vb, 10. Teach: e. g. What subjects do you give? I give English and Geography. [trans. Afk. gee prob. abbr. of gee onderwys = give instruction]

glasogie ['xlas,vɔxi] n. pl. -s

3. Zosterops ~~vapensis~~ capensis; see witogie 3. cf. Austr. wax-eye Zosterops. [Afk. glas cogn. glass + oog = eye + dimin. suff. -ie]

glassie, n. pl. -s

(1) Coll. among children. 15. A clear glass marble sometimes called queen 15, formerly sodie (fr. soda water bottle): see also alie, ghoen, ironie, yakkie, all 15: see quot. at it, 29 trans.

They carry their marbles in bags sometimes 100s big glassies and small glassies blood alleys and commons. You shoot the marbles out of the ring with a big glassy. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902.

(2) 30. Sect. Diamond trade term: see quot.

In their natural eight-sided shape, diamonds are known in the industry as 'glassies'. If, as often happens, they are twin stones or triangles, they are called 'maccles'. White The Land God Made in Anger 1969

gnu [nu:, nju:] n. pl. Ø, -s, -e

6. Also wildebeest (qv) & any of several large ungainly S. Afr. antelope of the Connochaetes ~~or Gnu~~ with ox-like head and other characteristics, mane and tail not unlike a horse.

... the gnu uniting the antelope, the horse and the ox. Cowper Rose Southern Africa 1829

Of all quadrupeds the gnoo is probably the most awkward and grotesque. W. C. Harris Wild Sports in S. A. 1839

[fr. Bushman nqu]

go-away bird, n. pl. -s

3. [^] See loerie 3: also quot. at sporing 20: ~~(k. w. 10)~~

Among the less co-operative birds, or perhaps just one that understands the human being is Nkwenyane, the Grey Lourie with his harshly unmistakable cry of "go away". Bulpin Lost Trails on the Low Veld 1951

[onomat.]

¹goed [xūt] n. suff.

29 suff. Material, substance: suffixed to other n. e.g. matjies ~ (qv)

28, Hotnots kou ~ (qv) 28, Hotnots kooi ~ (bedding) 28. [Afk. goed = substance]

²goed(e) [xūt, -də] adj. or adv. prefx

(1) 27i. Good, found in S. Afr. place names in plain form or with attrib. inflect -e with n. e.g. Goedgeloof, Goedewil, Kaap de Goede Hoop,

(2) 27k. Well: found in S. Afr. place names with vb partic. e.g.

Goedverwag, Goedgegun.

[Afk. goed cogn. good adj. well adv.]

goef [gʊf, gūf] vb intrns. also n.

Slang. 10, 29vb. Swim, bathe, ^{see quot. at cozzie} cf. Austr. bogey n. and vb

"... you want be needin' your cozzie...."
 "... aren't we goin' to goef?" I sneezed, "In this heat."
 "Shore we gonna goef. 'jis said "no cozzie"...." I get my goef
 alright. I also get sunburn all over. Darling 12.2.75
 [etym. unknown]

goëlery [xvəl ə 'reɪ] n.

25,16. Malay magic, occult happenings, conjuring. cf. Canad. jonglerie
- sorcery, trickery. * See slamaaiers addenda p.589

"Malay trickery" and "goelery" are now widely accepted and firmly believed terms to many of the Cape's whites and non-whites. The traditional old Cape Malay khalifa is mainly responsible for the perpetuation of the popular Malay magic myth. Cape Times 6.6.70

[Afk. goëlery fr. Du. goochelen cogn. juggle, Fr. jongleur, Lat. joculator]

goeter(s) ['xütə(r)s]

Slang. 10. Goods and chattels, belongings, bits and pieces: see also goodies 10: cf. Canad. iktas, goods, belongings.

I've counted all the cutlery
So don't you drive away
With the goeters from the drive-in caff.
Pip Freedman (song) Radio S.A. 28. 3. 72

[Afk. coll. goeters equiv. of goedere = property, goods etc.]

goffel ['göfəl] n. pl. -s

19. An offensive mode of reference to a coloured person: also occ. nickname for a dark skinned white. [etym. dub. poss. fr. Eng. dial. goff, a fool, simpleton rel. Fr. goffe = clumsy]

go garshly [- 'gɑʃli] imp. vb phr.

Coll. 10. Go carefully, proceed with caution: see also go well 10, hamba kahle 10, 2.

Kahle ... corrupted in kitchen kaffir to 'gaashly'. Percy Fitzpatrick Jock of the Bushveld 1907, 1909 edit.

[angl. corruption of Ngu. Hamba Kahle = go well, a leave-taking greeting: freq. pron. of kahle (qv) 2 among whites as above]

gogga ['xöxö, -xa] n. pl. -s. Also dimin. form tjie

(1) Coll. 21. General term for any insect: see also nunu 21.

The yellow clouds of sulphur billow out like a firework display as men and machines move into the orchards getting in before the destructive goggas. Cape Times 21.8.73

(2) Coll. term of endearment to a child or person of small stature.

Well, children, it's time to say goodbye to all you little goggatjies. Radio S.A. 30.5.72

(3) Coll. 4b. In a political sense, a bogey, jinx.

I must congratulate Professor Van Jaarsveld on coming up with a brand new political gogga - "international liberalism". Sunday Times 9.5.71

(4) Coll. Sect. angler's term for a non-edible fish.

... a small shark caught by Dave ... won the prize for the heaviest "gogga" (non-edible fish). Grocotts Mail 11.5.73

[Afk. Fr. Nama Hott. Xo Xo = insect or other small creature]

gogog(o) [ˈgɔ̃, gɔ̃g(ɔ̃)] n. pl. -s

18, 2. A paraffin tin usu. carried full of water on the head. cf. Jam. E. onomat. tuku-tuku/ tukka-tukka, gourd for carrying water.

When a woman carries water in a gog-gog on her head she puts leaves in the bucket to stop the water splashing when she walks. Reginald Griffiths Man of the River 1968

[Ngu. igogogo = paraffin tin rel. Zu. vb -gogoza (onomat.) to rumble, bang, as of empty tins]

gologo [gɔ̃ˈlɔ̃gɔ̃] n.

[A. E.] 2, 8. African term for spirituous liquors.

'Have a double brandy. The liquor here is much weaker than what we drink back home.' He knocked that off without wincing. 'Aha. We call it gologo from grog. But Bhuti, I am struggling here.' Todd Matshikiza Chocolates for my Wife 1961

[Zu. ugologo = European-type spirits fr. Eng. grog]

gom [xɔ̃m] n. pl. -s

Slang. 10, 19. Also ie, tor, lout: a coarse or common person.

That green pork-pie of his looks a proper gom's hat. Oral Informant, N. E. Cape 2. 10. 73

[fr. Afk. gomtor = lout]

gom-gom, n. pl. -s

(Obs) Hist. 15. A Hottentot musical instrument, similar to the gorah (qv); (also poss. joum-joum) described by Kolb. as being similar to a Jew's Harp. [pron. unknown]

When three or four of those Gom Goms are played upon in Concert by skilful Hands, I must confess I think the Harmony extremely agreeable ... Kolb. Description of the C. of G.H. trans Medley 1731

The instruments which are most esteemed on account of their excellence are the goura, the joum-joum, the rabonquier, and the romelpot. Le Vaillant Travels into the Interior I 1790 [unknown]

goniva(h) [gɔ̃nɪvə, -ɪva] n. pl. -s

Coll. Hist.³⁰ Sect. Diamond Fields: a stolen or otherwise illicitly acquired diamond.

Say, stranger, have you struck the original I.D.B. cemetery or how is it that you find such a thundering heap of gonivas in your ground? I.D.B. by W.T.E 1887 cit. Pettman

[Hebr. genavah = a stolen thing fr. gannav, a thief]

gonya [ˈgɔ̃nja] n. pl. -s

21. Species of Pneumora: see (2) blaasop 21.

[onomat.]

goodfor ['gʊd,fɔ] n. pl. -s

Hist. 24. An I.O.U.: see also quot. at papbroek 19, 10 and blueback 24, 17.

No "good for", "I.O.U.", or other acknowledgement of debt, not being a promissory note, shall require to be stamped, so long as it shall be retained by the creditor to whom it was first delivered, and it may be paid by the debtor to such creditor without being stamped. Cape Almanac for 1866

[presum. abbr. of 'good for the sum enumerated']

Good Hope, Order of, n. prop.

4b. S. Afr. Order of merit instituted by the State President (qv) of the Republic of S. A., Grand Master of the Order, in March 1973. The ~ can be awarded in five classes to foreign officials and persons of rank and standing. The ribbon is green and gold, and the badge, an eight pointed star, carries the legend Spes Bona.

The State President, Mr. Fouché, decorated President Stroessner with South Africa's "Order of Good Hope - Special Class" ... Panorama June 1974

[presum. fr. Cape of Good Hope]

goodie, n. pl. -s

Coll. 10. Any unspecified article of which the name may not be known: see also dinges (dingus) 10, goeters 10 [not usu. sign. sweets or food in SAE]

Very delicately I would like to mention that a lot of the goodies, now reposing in elegant living rooms in Pretoria or Johannesburg, were found in abandoned henhouses, old lofts, dirty garages or sommer standing around in the rain. Star 16. 6. 73

[prob. fr. Afk. goed(ere) = goods, property]

goodself, your, prn phr.

[I. E.] 1, 25. Mode of written address, an item of 'commercialese', (see quot.) in use in Indian English, poss. to avoid the direct form 'you'. See third person address 29

For instance, a letter written in typical commercialese might begin "Your esteemed favour of even date to hand and we beg to thank your goodself for same". Fortunately things have changed for the better since Fowler wrote that - but it is by no means dead yet, is it? E. Province Herald 28. 2. 74

goodwill, ['gʊd,wɪl] n.

[I. E.] 25, 24, (30). Euphemistic term ~~among~~ Indians for key money charged by estate agents where accommodation is at a premium, occ. for 'protection money' extorted from business people by gangsters.

gooi [xɔɪ] vb trans.

Slang. 29vb, 10. Throw: equiv. of 'chuck', 'sling' etc [*also slang, a sexual 'fling' (Vulgar)*]
I'll gooi you an example. Variety Show Not in Front of the Kids 1972

[Afk. fr. Du. gooien = cast, fling]

goolab jambo, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

gopse [xɔpsə] n.

10, 22. A low grade or slummy area occ. gops 19, a similar person.

[Afk. gops = slum area]

gorah ['gɔrə, -ə] n. pl. -s

Hist. 15. A Hottentot musical instrument presum. similar to the gom gom (qv) 15.

The Gorah, as to its appearance and form, may be more aptly compared to the bow of a violin, than to any other thing; but, in its principle and use, it is quite different; being, in fact, that of a stringed, and wind instrument combined; and thus it agrees with the AEolian harp. Burchell Travels I 1822

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Bushman ko//ba, poss. Nama Hott.]

gorrel ['xɔrəl] n.

Slang. 16. Throat: *windpipe* *

~~I've a terribly narrow gorrel, & things stick in it frightfully easily.~~ Informant ex Cape Town 1970

[Afk. gorrel (pyp) = throat, windpipe]

goudsblom ['xɔʋts,blɔm] n.

32, 13. See kreupelbos 32.

gousblom ['xɔʋs,blɔm] n. pl. -s, -me

13. 'A name applied to a number of species of Compositae of the section Calendulae-Arctotidae with large yellow heads and which are chiefly found in the South West. The vernacular name was first applied to species of Arctotis and Gazania...' C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants. See also botterblom 13.

[Afk. fr. Du. goudsbloem = golden flower]

government flour, n.

[Obs] 4b, 7. The unsifted brown flour from which all bread in S. A. was made during World War II when white bread was not permitted by law.

government sugar, n.

4b, 7. The least expensive type of brown sugar.

... Shooker, either refined white or if it's still obtainable - the brown Guffermint Shooker. Ah Big Yaws? Robin Malan 1972

There's a world shortage of sugar, you can have only 5 lbs of white but there's plenty of the brown government. Informant Supermarket, Grahamstown 1974

[poss. orig. fr. 'Government subsidised']

govini [gə'vin(i)] n.

8, 2. See quot. at shimiyaan 8, 2.

go well, imp. vb phr.

9, 10, 29vb. Farewell greeting to those leaving: see also hamba kahle 2, 9, mooi loop 9, 10, 29vb, stay well 9, 10, 29vb. cf. Jam. E. walk good, drive good, S. Afr. kwa-heri (go/be) at peace.

'Go well, umfundisi.' 'Stay well, inkosi.' Paton Cry, the Beloved Country 1948

[trans. Ngu. hamba(ni) kahle (qv)]

gown, n. pl. -s

5. Dressing gown: occ. in [A. E.], [I. E.] called morning ~ (qv) 5.

Winter gowns in cosy brushed terylene: two styles ... sizes S. M. L. R12.99 and R13.99. E. Province Herald Advt. 4. 3. 74

[abbr. dressing gown]

(-)gracht [xrax(t)] n. pl. -s

27, 18. Canal, moat: found usu. in place names in Cape Town e.g. Heerengracht, Buitengracht. cf. furrow 11, 18.

... the streets lay almost due north and south, east and west, at as regular intervals as though scored with a ruler; the Heerengracht, Keisersgracht, Tuin Straat, Zee Straat, Olifant Straat, with their comfortable roomy dwellings and hospitable high stoeps. Fairbridge That Which Hath Been 1913

"The Cape" had now become "Cape Town"; and a pleasant town it was with oak-lined streets and rivulets - "grachts" - running along them. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

[Du. gracht Afk. grag = moat, canal, ditch]

Grahamstadter ['xram,stad(t)əʔ] n. pl. -s

31, 26. Voortrekker name for a wagon made in Grahamstown esp. for the stout eighteen foot buckwagon half-tented and with a screw brake used extensively for transport riding^(qv) throughout the interior [thought to have been built only by wagonwrights named Brookshaw]

[Afk. Grahamstadt = Grahamstown + -er personif. ' suff.]

gram(flour) n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 7, 25.

gramadoelas [ˌxramadúlas, -əz] pl. n.

22, 10. See gamadoelas 22, 10.

grease table(s), n. usu. pl.

Sect. Mining. 30. A sorting device used on S. Afr. diamond mines, in which the diamonds adhere to the grease while the blue ground is washed away with water.

Great-, adj. (prefix) freq. capitalised.

2. Of or pertaining to the Chief as in ~ place (qv), ~ hut/house (qv), or ~ first in position as being closest in relation to the Chief, (not usu. in actual seniority) ^{see quot.} as in ~ wife, ~ widow, ~ son.

... to decide as to the investment of two of his wives with the respective dignities of 'the great one' (omkulu) and 'the one of the right hand' (owasekunene). The mother of him who is to be the 'great son' may thus be the last wife the chief has taken, which, in fact, is sometimes the case. Dugmore Diary 1846-47

... when he was getting on in years he was expected to contract a political union with the daughter of some other powerful potentate and in this way enhance his own power and prestige His newest acquisition became his great wife and their first male child became the heir to the throne. F.C. Metrowich Frontier Flames 1968

Great hut/house, n. prop.

2. The chief's hut, the royal house.

INDHLUNKULU, a native term signifying the great house. Sisson S. Afr. Judicial Dictionary 1960

[Ngu. ndlunkulu = chief hut, royal house]

Great Place, n. prop. usu. capitalised.

(1) 2. The official residence or kraal (qv) of the chief of an African tribe. See last quot. at Robben Island.

... the loyal Middelburg and Lydenburg commandos, had sufficed to burn Sekukuni's Great Place and drive him northwards. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

(2) 27e. Also occurs in place names: Nyandeni Great Place, see quot.

Basutos to visit Rarabe Great Place. Daily Dispatch 8. 8. 72

Thousands of people of all races gathered at the Nyandeni Great Place ... at the weekend to pay their last respects to Paramount Chief Victor Poto ... E. Province Herald 22. 4. 74

^{Hans.} [Ngu. -komkhulu - the great place, the seat of the Chief]

Greek shop, n. pl. -s

30. A café or tearoom (qv) often owned by a Greek or other person of Mediterranean or Middle E. origin. cf. Jam. E. Chiney/China shop (grocer)

Greek shop ... equiv. of 'café' in S. Afr. Beeton Index 1970

greenie ['grinɪ] n. pl. -s

Slang usu. among children. 24, 10. A ten rand (qv) 24 note. cf. U.S.

greenback, and earlier S. Afr. blueback (qv) 24, 17; also Jam. E.

plantain leaf, one pound note. [fr. colour of note]

and forms Austral blueback or bluey, a five pound note.

green mamba, n. pl. -s

(1)* 6. A poisonous snake. See mamba 6.

(2) 8. Figur: also groen (green) Creme de menthe (peppermint liqueur). cf. Brit. (ex Navy) starboard light.

Words denoting liquor: Chwala, Groenmamba (Peppermint Liqueur), Snorts (tot), Tkierie (Kaffir beer). Opperman Spirit of the Vine 1968

→

Griqua ['grikwə, -wa] n. prop. pl. -s

23. A member of a tribe of mixed descent, white, Bushman and

Hottentot 23 all (qv): see also (2) Bastaard 23 and quot. at classification 4b.

land, the former home of this tribe.

Coloured land call by Griquas Descendants of the Griqua-land leader Adam Kok are demanding 1 000 square miles of fertile farmland near Kokstad to form the nucleus [sic] of the country's first Colouredstan. ... White farmers in the district are up in arms over the proposed "Griquastan". E. Province Herald 9.8.74

[etym. dub. prob. fr. Hott. name]

grit, n.

Sect. Mining. 30. Diamond particles used for industrial purposes.

Industry uses mainly small diamonds as "grit" which is set in a matrix to form a cutting, grinding or drilling surface. Panorama Dec. 1972

groen [xrŭn] adj. prefix

27j. Green: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. e. g. Groenvlei, Groenkloof. [Afk. fr. Du. groen cogn. green]

groenmamba, n.

6 or 8. See green mamba (1)6, (2)8.

Grondwet ['xrŏnt,vet] n. prop.

4b. The Constitution of the South African Republic adopted in 1858, also used of the Constitution of the Republic of Natal (Oct. 1838).

The first true fundamental law of the Trekkers is the Grondwet of Natal (October 1838). The Grondwet of Natal defined with some care the structure and functions of the legislature and of the judiciary, but said little about the executive. Cambridge History of the British Empire VIII (S.A.) 1936

The Rustenburg Grondwet of the South African Republic was a long and unwieldy document containing much miscellaneous material alien to a fundamental law. In general structure it resembled the Free State Constitution ... but there were certain characteristics that reveal the traces of twenty years of Trek History. Ibid 1936

[Du. grondwet = constitution fr. grond = foundation + wet = law]

groot- ['xɾʋət-] adj. prefix

27i. Big, great: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n.
Grootfontein, Grootbrakrivier.

Ubique means 'Entrain at once for Grootdefeatfontein'.
Rudyard Kipling The Five Nations 1903

[Afk. fr. Du. groot = big cogn. great]

grootbek ['xɾʋət,bek] n. pl. -s

Coll. Slang. 10, 19. A talkative usu. boastful person, a 'loudmouth'.
cf. Austr. ear-basher, an inordinate talker.

... he recognised the face on the photograph. It was that of Mussolini, heavy-jowled, at his most confident and aggressive. "Look at him ..." Mostert muttered, his voice rising. "Just look at him, grootbek Caesar!" Uys Krige The Dream and the Desert 1953

[Afk. groot = big cogn. great + bek (qv) = mouth cogn. beak]

grootpraat ['xɾʋət,prat] n.

Coll. Slang. 10. Boastful or indiscreet talk. cf. Austr. spruiking,
Jam. E. laba-laba, labrisher, Ang. Ind. buck, bragg + talk.

My fault with all my grootpraat. I asked them to dinner and we had a ghastly evening. Durban ~~blowman~~ Nov. 1972

[Afk. groot = big + praat = talk cogn. prate]

Group Areas Act, n. prop.

4b. Act 41 of 1950 which provided for the establishment in each urban area of a separate Group area (qv) 4b for each race group, and prohibited occupation or ownership by members of any other racial group.

According to a proclamation under the Group Areas Act in 1968, Schornville has been zoned as part of the "Whites only" Municipal area of King William's Town. This means that when alternative accommodation has been provided in Breidbach, Schornville's people will have to leave their homes and move to the village, seven kilometres from here. Daily Dispatch 17.5.71

hence group area, n. pl. -s, usu. capitalised.

4b. Part of an urban area which, under the Group Areas Act (qv) 4b. is reserved for a particular racial group of the population, in which rights of occupation and/or ownership are restricted to members of that group.

Mr. — will be breaking the Group Areas Act if he lives with his elderly and ailing mother because, while she is classified as Malay and will shortly be moving to a Malay group area, he is classified as an Indian. Daily News 24.4.71

LENASIA, the Indian group area Johannesburg never wanted, has become a massive financial burden to the City Council. Cape Argus 19.4.73

grunter ['grʌntə] n. pl. -Ø

12. Any of several fishes including Trigla peronii, T. capensis, Pomadasys maculatus which make a grunting noise when taken from the water: also U.S. cf. Austr. pigfish, trumpeter, Jam. E. grunt (numerous compounds guineahen ~, moonshine ~, etc.). In combinations bull ~, striped ~, spotted ~, also known as tiger (12) and knorhaan (12), red ~ called chor-chor and pignose ~, rock ~ called varkie (little pig).

... the "grunter king" who is renowned for his catches of outsize spotted grunter (tiger); ... Grocotts Mail 14. 1. 72

[onomat. fr. grunting sound]

grysbok ['xreɪs,bɔk] n. pl. Ø

6. A small, greyish brown S. Afr. antelope Raphicerus melanotis (also Antelope, or Tragulus melanotis) and R. sharpei (Sharp's ~).

The gries-bok is also of the size of a common deer, but bears a considerable resemblance to a goat; its colour is greyish and the hair loose and frizzled. This species ... does a great deal of mischief to the gardens and vineyards in the night time. Percival Account of the C. of G.H. 1804

Humansdorp: Steenbok declared ordinary game; season June 1 to July 31. Grysbok declared ordinary game season May 31 to July 31. E. Province Herald 19. 3. 73

[Afk. grys fr. Du. grijs = grey + bok cogn. buck]

guarri(boom/bos) ['gwɑrɪ,bɔs, gwa-] n.

32, 28. Any of several species of Euclea esp. E. undulata or of the allied genus Royena, a shrub of up to 2.5m in height much browsed upon by stock, having succulent, slightly astringent fruit, ~ bessies (berries) 14, used, fermented, by the Hottentots to make a type of vinegar: the roots of some species are used medicinally as is an infusion of the leaves ~ tee/tea 16. 7. ~ honey made from the nectar of the flowers of either Euclea undulata or Royena.

Guarri Bush (Euclea undulata) has a sweet taste & is eaten by the Natives ... bruised and fermented they make vinegar ... Mackrill Diary 1809

[prob. Hott. gwarri plant name for Euclea, Zu. umgwali]

gubu ['gubũ] n.

2. 15. A Zu. musical instrument: see quot. [Zu. u(lu)gubu]

Their chief instrument, called a gubu, which is something like a one-string banjo, with an empty gourd for a drum. Clairmonte The Africaander 1906 cit. Pettman

Musical bow with single string fitted with calabash resonator attached to the stave near its lower end, the string (of sinew, hair or

now brass wire) is struck by a stalk of tambootie grass. This is generally played by women to accompany the voice. Doke and Vilakazi Zulu Dictionary 1948

[Ngu. onomat. a hollow sounding thing]

gu(i)lder ['xœldər, 'gɪldə] n. pl. -s

Hist. 17, 24. A Dutch denomination in use at the Cape, not equiv. to the guilder of Holland.

A guilder is now a nominal coin, one third of a rixdollar, which at the present exchange, is about 1s. 6d. sterling ... W. W. Bird The State of the C. of G. H. in 1822

gumboot dance, n. pl. -es

15, A lively African dance performed in rubber boots ('Wellingtons') which are given resounding rhythmical slaps.

What banishment means
Is never to see again,
Your inyanga's Fly whisk.
Nor the bones that expound our fate.
Oh! exile means
Never to see a Baca gumboot dance, never!

Poem: Paul Vilakazi U.N.I.S.A. Eng. Studies
Poetry 1974

gwaai [gwaɪ] n.

(1) Coll. 8, 2. Tobacco, snuff. cf. Canad. stemmo.

However, his handling of the "gwaai" was as nothing compared with the old man's technique. Evening Post 14. 11. 70

(2) Slang. 8. n. pl. -s. poss. reg. Natal slang cigarettes, or smokes generally.
[Zu. ugwayi = tobacco, snuff]

H

haakdoring ['hɑ k, dʋərɛŋ] n. pl. -s

32. Any of several species of Acacia esp. A. detinens (A. mellifera) a deciduous tree of up to 7.5m with large curved thorns in pairs: foliage and seed pods are eaten by stock.

The country through which we passed was much encumbered with the accursed Haak-doorn or Wagt een beetje, (Acacia detinens), from which I had formerly suffered so severely. Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827

[Afk. fr. Du. haak = hook + doring fr. Du. doorn cogn. thorn]

haak en steek (doring) [hɑkən'stræk] n.

32. A large flat topped deciduous thorn tree Acacia tortilis with long white straight spines and blackish curved spines: see quot. abadduda p583

... the haak-en-steek doorns, that tear your garments and lacerate your skin, especially when you are in eager pursuit of game, and unmindful of your pathway ... Du Plessis A Thousand Miles in the Heart of Africa 1905 cit. Pettman

[Afk. haak-en-steek = hook and stab fr. the curved and the straight thorns]

haarder, n. pl. -s

12. See harder 12.

haas [hɑ s] n. (prefix or suff.)

(1) 6. Hare, rabbit: suffixed to names of hare species, e.g. spring ~ 6, berg ~ 6.

(2) 6. Generic name for any type of hare or rabbit: see also dimin. form hasie 6.

(3) 28. Prefixed to certain plant names e.g. ~ oor (ear), ~ gras etc. cf. Brit. harebell.

[Afk. haas = rabbit, hare]

haasbek ['hɑs,bek] adv.m. adj.

Coll. 16, 10, 29adj. Toothless, usu. in form go ~ as adv.m. also occ. adj. [not equiv. of hare-lip (see quot.) nor of Jam. E. buck mouth, protruding teeth.]

Walk around toothless for a few months. In South Africa this is called 'going haasbek'. Personality 5. 6. 69

[Afk. haas = rabbit, hare + bek (qv) = mouth cogn. beak]

hadedā(h) ['hadĩ,dɑ] n. pl. -s

3. Hagedashia hagedash hagedash: also ~ ibis, various spellings; a large ibis, greyish brown to olive coloured with a harshly strident call.

Overhead a ragged formation of Hadedas tacked against the wind and hurled volleys of oaths at those below in high-pitched, raucous voices. Fulton I Swear to Apollo 1970

[presum. onomat. fr. bird's call poss. influenced by name hagedash]

halaal [ha'laal] adj.

Muslim equivalent of Jewish 'kosher': applied to food particularly meat (and meat products) ritually slaughtered and which therefore may be eaten by Muslims.

Attention Muslim Public. Be advised that — Chickens have been declared non halaal ... (Signed) Muslim Judicial Council (Advt.) E. Province Herald 13. 12. 74

[Arabic halal-kar, make lawful, sign. slaughter in the ritually prescribed manner.]

hairy(back) n. pl. -s

Slang. 10, 19. An offensive mode of reference to an Afrikaner (qv) 19, also hairy pl. -ies See also rock(spider) 19, 10, krev 19, 10, crunchie 19, 10, mealie cruncher 19, 10, rope 19, 10, plank 19, 10.

There should be a match ~~arranged~~ between the Springboks and an Invitation side from the hairiest hairy-back elements of the Universities of Cape Town and Stellenbosch ... Cape Times 16.5.70

He said he did not consider words like "rock spider" or "hairy back" insulting to Afrikaners as a group, but he agreed that these and similar terms for Jews or Africans could harm race relations. E. Province Herald 17.4.73 See also quot at Dutchman, addenda p 87.

Haj [hädʒ, hadʒ] n. prop.

25. The pilgrimage to Mecca made by Indian Muslims and by Cape Malays: see also Indian terms 25.

The Muslim community is in an uproar over the barring of well-wishers of pilgrims from the D.F. Malan's airport terminal building. Cape Herald received complaints from several irate Muslims who were refused permission to enter the terminal building to bid farewell to their friends and relatives who left for Haj last week. Cape Herald 14.9.74

deriv. ee, ^{19, (1)} i, mode of address or reference to one who has made the pilgrimage, also titular with surname.

The origin of the song is obscure. Hadji Abduraghiem Johnston who was born in 1852 remembered seeing the ship and hearing Malays singing the song as they composed it. Bradlow Here Comes the Alabama 1958

[Arabic hajj]

ha-ja [hädʒə] n.

[A.E.] 2, 24. presum. half-jack (qv) 24, 8.

I prefer this brew myself when I find myself not in the financial position to patronise Aunt Peggy for a ha-ja of mahoga. Drum 8.10.73

[prob. abbr. half jack (qv)]

hakea [hækrə, hak-] n.

11, 32. One of the Proteaceae: a proclaimed weed (qv) ^{4b.} in S.A.: see also boetebos(sie) 4b. cf. Austr. hakea, needlebush.

Plan Will Rid Kloof of Hakea. Payment will be refunded every six months on condition that the lessee has cleared hakea and other noxious weeds to the value of the six-monthly lease payment. The farm has an area of about 560ha and infestation of hakea in the kloof is bad. Grocotts Mail 25.6.71

[fr. C.L. von Hake Ger. botanist (died 1818)]

← halal
half-jack, n.

[A.E.] Coll. 8, 24, (2). A half-bottle 375ml. also slang, ha-ja (qv) 2, 8, 24. cf. Austr. jackshay, tin quart pot, Canad. mickey 12 fluid ounce bottle: see quot. at sluk 10, 8.

One took me outside and she gave him six beers and a half jack after he had threatened to go to the police. Post 25.7.71

[presum. fr. half bottle]

halfkoord ['half,kvə(r)t] n.

12. See alfkoord (albacore) 12.

It is possible, however, that such mysterious names as bafaro, sancord, halfcord, and karkontel are really Malay names. Lawrence Green Grow Lovely, Growing Old 1951

[prob. corruption of albacore]

halfmens ['half,me:ns] n.

32. Pachypodium namaquanum: also called elephant's trunk, a thick stemmed, usu. branchless spiny succulent of up to 2.5m high with a tuft of leaves at the top: [the name perpetuates a Hottentot belief that each is a transformed human being, therefore only 'half' a man].

... its fleshy branchless trunk being covered with sharp thorns and surmounted by a crown of green leaves about 8 inches in diameter ... The trunk is often almost the girth of a man at its thickest point, and the effect of these solitary erect figures against a background of rocks is such as to render their name of half-men very appropriate. The State, Nov. 1911 cit. Pettman

[Afk. fr. Du. half + mens fr. Du. mensch = person cogn. man]

halim/eem, n.

25, 7. Nourishing spiced soup containing wheat and barley and usu. chicken: distributed by Muslim charities. X

-halt [hɔlt, halt] n.

27e. Halt, stopping place: found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Noll's Halt.

hamba ['hamba] interj. imp.vb

9, 29vb. usu. Obj. equiv. to 'Push off!', 'Go away!': see also voetsek^{loop 9}, cf. Canad. mush on.

Excepting in some words, the Caffers understood him very well ... they say hamba for get you gone, he says kambu. Thompson Travels in S. Afr. I 1827

Hamba! Go! Do you think I want to see you? Dan Jacobson A Long Way from London 1953

[imp. form of Ngu. ukuhamba = to go]

hamba kahle [ˌhamba'gɑːtɛ, 'gɑː-] vb phr.

10, 2. African form of farewell lit. go well, to which the reply is sala kahle, stay well (pl. salani to more than one person): see also garshly, go 10, go well 10, stay well 10, mooi loop 10, all 29vb.

HAMBA KAHLE! Mr Sebe off to Britain for a visit - and he gets a great farewell at East London airport. Daily Dispatch 14. 9. 73

[imp. sing. of ukuhamba = to go (pl. hambani) + kahle = well]

hamel ['haməl] n. pl. -s

11. A castrated ram [the term wether is seldom used]: combination wissel ~ (qv) used to indicate the age or development in slaughter stock.

An ox, a gelding, a hamel, a cut* thing ... Stuart Cloete
Bags of Glory 1963 *see cut 29vb, 11

MERINO HAMELS WITH WOOL FOR SALE 1640 MERINO
HAMELS - unwisselled to 6 tooth - well grown and in good condition.
Grocott's Mail 28. 3. 69

[Afk. fr. Du. hamel = castrated sheep, cf. vb hamble = to be lame, limp, cogn. O.E. hamelian = to maim]

ham(m)erkop ['ham ə (r),kɔp] n. pl. -s

3. See (1) hammerhead 3. [Afk. hamer cogn. hammer + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

hammerhead, n. pl. -s

(1) 3. Scopus umbretta, also hamerkop 3. A brown bird, with a large hammer-shaped head, frequenting marshy places.

The "hammerkop", or hammer-head, or tufted umbre, Scopus umbretta is another bird of a dull brown colour ... which builds an immense nest, in which, like a magpie, it stores lost articles which it picks up. ... generally frequenting places where water is found in search of frogs and small fish ... Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

(2) 12. Also ham(m)erkop(haai) Sphyrna zygaena, a shark with a hammer shaped head, "... large specimens, fortunately rare in our waters, are among the most dreaded of marine creatures." J.L.B. Smith Sea Fishes of S.A. 1961

Send out your swimmer (a small shad is best) and wait.
You can pick up anything from a giant hammerhead to a fighting barracouta.
Farmer's Weekly 12.5.71

[fr. shape of head (+ Afk. fr. Du. haai = shark)]

handlanger ['hant,lanə(r)] n. pl. -s

Sect. Bldg. 18, 19. An unskilled assistant to a qualified tradesman (qv) 19, usu. a mason (qv) 19 or plumber, who hands tools, bricks etc. to his superior: not usu. an apprentice.

The mason has a handlanger to fetch and carry for him.
Oral Informant 1970

[Afk. fr. Du. handlanger = assistant, helper]

handle off, vb phr.

[[Substand]] 29 trns, 30. To complete, settle, usu. a sale or other business deal.

The whole matter should be handled off before the middle of the year. Attorney, George C.P. 1973

[translit. Afk. afhandel = dispatch, conclude]

hands-up, vb

To surrender. [prob. translit. Afk. hen(d)sop fr. Eng. hands up]

... the sound of the firing decided Stefanus. He jumped on his horse ... "I am turning back," he said "I am going to hands-up to the English." Posman Mafeking Road 1947

also

They said that Koos was a hands upper and a traitor to his country ... intimate with a man who had helped to bring about the downfall of the Afrikaner Nation. Yet it was not fair to call Koos a hands upper. Posman Mafeking Road 1947

2

hands- [hans] n. prefix

11. See hans 11.

hands up vb.

handsupper [hæen(d)z'ʌpə] n. pl. -s

20, 19. Used of those of the Boer forces who surrendered to the British in the S. Afr. Wars: see Boer War 20, also quot. at bitter-e(i)nder 20.

... by his breeches and leggings he must be a khaki-Englander; and when he remonstrated in Afrikaans she denounced him as a renegade and "hands-upper" which is even worse. Prance Tante Rebella's Saga 1937

[fr. 'hands up' gesture of surrender + agent. or personif. suff. -er]

hanepoot ['hænə,pvət] n. pl. -s

(1) 14. A sweet white muscat grape used both as dessert fruit and for wine making, said by some to be so named from the spread claw formation of the stems, (see first quot.): often corrupted to 'honey-pot' prob. by association of ideas.

Before we proceed to the vintage, we shall first describe the best types of grapes ... It is the "Haanen-Kloote" (Cock's testicle), but called Hannen-poote by the ladies of Africa .. fr. trans. of O.F. Mentzel's Description of the Cape (Van Riebeeck Society 25, 1944)

Irrigation Farm ... Vineyards include mainly established Sultanas, while French, Hanepoot, Muscadel and Hermitage varieties more than meet the requirements of an existing 251-leaguer K.W.V. quota ... Farmer's Weekly 21. 4. 72

(2) 8. Sweet wine made from grapes, unfortified for table use, fortified as a Muscadel dessert wine; bottled under the name as n. prop.

There are two or three kinds of sweet wines made, ... The Hanepoot made from a large white grape is very rich, but scarce and dear, and only used by the ladies at their parties in the same manner as the Constantia. The grapes from which this wine is made are chiefly dried and preserved for raisins to eat at desserts. Percival Account of the C. of G. H. 1804

[see first quot.]

hans- [hans] modifier prefix

29 Prefix 11. [Also hands] Orphaned: equiv. of hand-reared cf. poddy in Austr. poddy-calf, and Jam. E. coskie fr. cosset. In combination lam (qv) 11, piggie/varkie 11 ossie(ox-calf) 11: see also hansie 11. [Afk. fr. Du. hands = by hand, hand reared] animal]

hansie ['hansi] n. and n. prop.

(1) 11. A young, hand-reared domestic animal, usu. lamb but also calf or pig: cf. Canad. and U.S. dogie motherless calf in a range herd, Austr. sook (calf) hand reared. ... the farmer, or his wife, has to bottle feed the neglected hansies or lose them. Cape Times 6. 6. 73

(2) A name freq. given as n. prop. to such an animal.

[fr. Afk. hans = orphan animal + dimin. suff. -ie]

hanslam(metjie) [hans, lamikʲ, -ci] n. pl. -s

(1) 11. A motherless, hand reared lamb, often kept in or about the farmhouse as a pet: see hans- 11, hansie 11. cf. Austr. poddy lamb, Jam. E. coffie-.

When ewes died after lambing, the offspring were taken into the homestead and brought up as the 'hanslam'. The hanslam ran all over the place, a great nuisance to everybody, dropping its 'pralines' indiscriminately. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

... whatever the mysterious link between no rains and big lamb crops, one tangible result is the tremendous number of hans-lammertjies being hand-reared this year. Cape Times 6. 6. 73

[Afk. fr. Cape Du. hans = orphan + lam cogn. lamb + dimin. suff. -etjie]

*

harder ['ha(r)də(r)] n. pl. -s

12. Any of several S. Afr. species of Mullet (Mugilidae) esp. Mugil cephalus, M. capensis, Liza ramada also known as springer (qv) 12, similar to the herring: abundant in S. Cape waters: freq. used for bokkems (qv) 7.

... the harder, somewhat of the flavour and appearance of our herring, but thicker ... Percival Account of the C. of G. H. 1804

Most prized among the smaller fish is the harder, which is of the mullet family. But so fine is its flavour that the real harder-lover will always eat it simply grilled and served with lemon. Farmer's Weekly 18. 4. 73

[Afk. harder fr. Du. harder, herder = mullet]

hard pear/peer ['hart, piə(r)] n. pl. -s

32, 18. Any of several species of Olinia including O. capensis and O. cymosa, also called rooibessie (qv) 18, 32, all medium sized forest trees, or their timber, a heavy hard wood used from the early days in wagon making. [Also used of Strychnos Henningsii a tall forest tree of the E. Province, Natal and Transvaal: called baster saffraan (qv) 18, 32]

A typical wagon of the Great Trek period would have had wheelspokes made of either assegai or kershout, yellowwood wheel names or hubs, yellowwood bed planks for the platform, wheel falloes of hard pear or saffraan ... E. Province Herald 28. 5. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. peer cogn. pear]

hard up ['had ,ʌp] adv. p. or modifier

Sect. Bldg. 18. sign. right against, flush with.

"You want this door hardup against the corner." Oral Informant Builder November 1969

This filter must be hardup against the side of the crate. I can't open it. Rhodes University Student December 1970

[unknown *poss. also printer's term*]

* hap [hap] usu. n.

Coll. 10, 7. Bite, mouthful: as in 'Give me a hap of your apple': ~~as vb.~~ 'A wasp ~~happed me~~' (child): also dimin. form ~ pie: see sout ~ 7. [Afk. hap = bite n. and vb.]

harpuisbos [ˌha(r)'pœɪs, bɔ̃s] n.

28. 32. A name for all species of Euryops, resin secreting shrubs, some of which are classified as 'undesirable plants' i. e. troublesome weeds particularly in plant migration in the Karoo.

The harpui (resin-pimple) plant is a species of Euryops, a showy composite with gay yellow blooms and a foliage not unlike that of a soft, rapidly grown, bushy young pine-tree. ... It should be remembered that its only important use is the supply of brushwood. Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

[Afk. fr. Du. harpuis = resin + bos cogn. bush]

Harry's Angels, n. prop. (pl.)

19, 16. ^{Also Harry's Flying Angels, doctors participating in}
An air shuttle service operating between Johannesburg and centres in Swaziland conveying medical specialists serving the area voluntarily. cf. Austr. flying doctor. * now also the Transkei, see quot.

The hospital at Mbabane and the other at Hlatikulu ... and a pathology laboratory at Manzini constitute the treatment centres where Harry's Angels operate ... Panorama Oct. 1971

Harry's Angels for Transkei Mr Harry Oppenheimer had placed a company aircraft at the disposal of the team. He also gave financial assistance to the scheme - hence the term Harry's Angels.

[see quot. above]

Daily Dispatch 17. 7. 74

hartebeest [ˈhɑtəbræs(t), 'hart-] n. pl. -∅, -s

(1) 6. One of the largest S. Afr. antelopes Alcelaphus ^{bucelaphus} caama, also other species of Alcelaphus, with handsome curving horns.

We saw several harte-beasts, one of the largest species of deer, and the pride of the plain the spring buck. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Cafferland 1827

(2) n. prefix 27d. Found in S. Afr. place names - Hartebeestpoort, Hartbeeskop, Hartebeesfontein, Hartebeesthoek.

[Afk. fr. Du. hert/hart = stag + beest Afk. bees (qv) poss. fr. Lat. bos sign. family Bovidae]

hartbeeshuis/hut/house, n. pl. -e, -s, -es

18. A temporary dwelling built of wattle and daub divided inside by rush- or reed-mat screens made by settlers (qv) 19, 26 and trekkers (qv) 19, 26.

~~As the lack of tools and adequate preparation in most cases precluded the immediate erection of permanent structures, most of the settlers contented themselves for the time being with thatched shelters more or less after the native fashion, usually of a type then known on the frontier as 'hartebeest huts', 'hartbeeshuise' or 'hardbieshuisies' (or, correctly, 'hardebiesieshuise').~~ Lewcock C19 Architecture in S. A. 1963

[etym. various prob. not fr. hartebees (qv) 6 but hard = hard + bies(sie) = reed + huis cogn. house, also poss. fr. Hott. haru-b = reed mat + huis]

hasie ['hasi] n. pl. -s

Coll. 6. Dimin. form of haas, hare: sign. any rabbit or hare-like creature.

hau [hɑv] interj.

9, 2. An exclamation usu. expressive of surprise or dismay among Zulus.

I couldn't translate R600 into Zulu so I told him 30 cattle. "Hau!" he exclaimed. "I can buy ten wives with that." The 1820 June 1971

[Zu. hawu! exclamation]

have, vb See p. 178.

have to, vb

Substand. 29 trns. Red. Used redundantly often in a 'cumulative effect' type of narrative e.g. 'First he had jaundice then he had three operations and then he got pneumonia - then after all that he had to have a coronary.'^x [poss. trans. Afk. moet = must, have to (without the sense of obligation unless emphasised intonationally); see must 29vb]

hawker, n. pl. -s

30, 19. In SAE sign. usu. a door-to-door seller of fruit and vegetables who requires a ~ s licence to ply his trade: freq. in the Cape a Malay (qv), in Natal Sammy (qv), Mary (qv) 25, 19, 30: see also smous 30, 19.

As far as the city was concerned, the hawkers had ceased to exist - except for the hawker patrol. But even if Cape Town remains blissfully unaware of the resentment and frustration this has caused among hawkers ... Cape Times 15.5.71

[fr. Eng. usage sign. usu. pedlar - acc. Bell's S. Afr. Legal Dictionary 'a person without a fixed place of business who goes about the streets with a stock of goods which he cries for sale ...']

hay, n.

11. Hay: has a wider application in SAE. [similar to U.S.] to a large number of dried fodder crops or stover, not exclusively grass, as in combinations kidneybean ~, cowpea ~, bean ~ as well as redgrass (rooigras (qv)) ~, oat ~ etc. all commercially supplied.^x

First Grade Winter Fodder ... Lucerne Hay (Cape) R21, 00 Red Grass Hay R11, 25 ... Lucerne and Monkey Nut Hay and Pellets Farmer's Weekly 21.4.72

[fr. Afk. hooi = hay, forage]

hazen ['hɑ:zən] pl. n.

27d. Hares: found in S. Afr. place names Hazendal, Hazenjacht.

[Du. pl. form of haas cogn. hare]

headman ['hed,mən, mæn] n. pl. -men

4b, 19, 2. The head man in charge of a kraal (qv) 2 or petty chief of a section of a tribe: see (1) induna 2, 19.

Addressing the Chiefs and headmen, the Prince of Wales thanked them for coming great distances to see him. E. Province Herald 6.7.25

Her application was supported by affidavits from her kraal headman and various old residents of the area. Evening Post 19.8.72

[fr. head sign. 'chief' adj.]

headring, n. pl. -s

2, 5. A ring of wax usu. worked into the hair worn by older African men: a mark of status. See khehla 2, 19.

One day while at work in the woods there came to us a grizzled worn-looking old kaffir, whose headring of polished black wax attested to his dignity as a kehla. Fitzpatrick Jock of the Bushveld 1907, 1909 edit.

They were village heads, prominent tribesmen who had earned the privilege of wearing the distinctive headring. Becker Sandy Tracks to the Kraals 1956

[presum. trans Zu. isicoco = headring]

heartwater, n.

11. A disease of sheep, goats and cattle transmitted by the bont-tick (qv) 21 characterised by high fever and fluid in the thoracic cavity and pericardium. ~ veld 11, grazing infested with the same tick: [animals raised on such veld (qv) acquire an immunity to the disease. cf. gallsickness ~ (qv) 11.]

When they were cut open their heart cavities were filled with straw-coloured liquid. Having no name for it, the Boers called this new sickness heart-water. Stuart Cloete Turning Wheels 1937

All these cattle are in superb veld condition and are running on severe Heartwater, Redwater and Gallsickness veld. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 27.2.74

heemraad ['hɛm,raɪ, -radən] n. pl. -en

(1) Hist. 17. A district council assisting the landdrost in the local court consisting of himself and three ~ en in the administration of rural districts before the establishment of British rule.

In country districts, the inferior courts consisted of the landdros, primarily an administrative officer, presiding over an appointed board of burghers known as heemraad. Handbook on Race Relations in S. A. 1949

(2) Hist. 17, 19. A member of the (1) ~, a petty magistrate under the landdrost (qv) similar to a British J.P.

... it was to have an unpaid magistracy by appointing special heemraden like English J.P.s ... Kate Pigot Diary 1822 cit. Fitzroy Dark Bright Land 1955

My host, a jolly consequential-looking person, was, I found, a Mynheer Van Heerden, a heemraad and kerkraad of the district (i. e. a member of the district-court and churchwarden) ... Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

[Du. heem = local, cogn. Ger. Heim, Eng. home + raad = council]

heer [hɛə(r)] n. pl. -e, -en

Hist. 19. Gentleman: see mynheer 1, 19, meneer 1, 19. (O)~! 9 Afk. mode of address in prayer: see also here 9, 10.

... a sea-cow came out of the river, rushing upon us, with a hideous cry, as swift as an arrow out of a bow; at the same time, I heard the farmer call out, "Heer Jesus!" ... Sparrman Voyages II 1786

In my way back to the village, I met a Hottentot, who, asking me if I was not de engelsche heer (the English gentleman) presented a letter from my friend Poleman. Burchell Travels I 1822
[Du. heer = lord, hence gentleman]

-heid [-heit] suff.

Equiv. of -ness n. forming suff. to adj. as in apart ~, verkramp ~, verligt ~, kragdadig ~, all (qv) and in 27b place names e.g. Verlatenheid, Eensaamheid. [Afk. -heid cogn. Ger. -heit, Eng. -hood fr. O.E. -had = state of being]

heil- [heɪl-] n. (prefix)

27e. Salvation, bliss: in S. Afr. place name Heilbron. [Afk. heil = welfare, salvation cogn. O.E. hæel (as in wæs hæel)]

hek-, n. prefix, suff.

27e. Gate(way) found in S. Afr. place names Hekpoort, Hekplaas, Hekstroom, Niekerk's Hek. [Afk. hek = gate]

helder- [ˈheldə(r)] adj. prefix

27i. Clear, serene, found in S. Afr. place names as prefix to n. e.g. Helderberg, Helderfontein, Helderzicht. [Afk. fr. Du. helder = clear, bright]

hel(s)- [hel(z)] n. usu. pref

27c. Hell(s): found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Helshoogte, Helspoort: also Die Hel, [Gamkaskloof.]

hell in, the, predic. modifier

Slang. 16, 10. Furiously angry: also moer (qv) in, the 16, 10.

Where did I find him ... looking at the mud, the hell-in because we had lost all our things again. Just our clothes, and each other. ... Now you're really the hell-in. Nothing to laugh at. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[prob. by analg. Afk. die josie in = furious, josie = the devil]

hell of a, intensifier

10. See helluva 10.

hellout, intensifier

Coll. 10, 29 trans. Used similarly to helluva. See quot. at addenda p. 553.

That tractor's hellout heavy to drive. Schoolboy 13, 1974
[translit. Afk. slang helluit = extremely, like hell]

helluva, intensifier

Coll. 10, 29 intensifier. In SAE an equiv. of 'very' or 'extremely' with adj. or adv. e.g. 'a ~ good guy': [also as Brit. she gave him a ~ life', sign. bad, unhappy, hellish etc.] see also hellout 10

They were going to start some sort of a home for sick people. 'A sanatorium,' he said, remembering the word. 'This dorp is hell of a good for T.B. they say.' Dan Jacobson Dance in the Sun 1956

herald snake, n. pl. -s

6. See rooilip 6.

herbalist, n. pl. -s

2, 16, 19 An African medicine man dealing in herbs and other materia medica usu. claiming magic or supernatural powers, who treats physical and psychological disorders with home-made remedies and spells: see also witchdoctor, sangoma, nyanga, muti man, ^{isansi, twasa} ~~2, 12, 16, 17~~ uhlaka

The witch-doctor is always a herbalist when he is facing a white man; when he turns his face towards a tribesman he becomes a witch-doctor. D. Reed Somewhere South of Suez 1950

... it was accepted that witchcraft was an extenuating circumstance in murder. Herbalism was another manifestation of the belief in the supernatural. Some herbalists were charlatans, but some used what they believed were effective remedies. (Hon. Mr. Justice D.D.V. Kannemeyer) Grocott's Mail 9. 5. 72

herdboy, n. pl. -s

19, 2. Traditional occupation of small African boys in tribal areas.

The children who helped me build my garden ... are the small shepherds or 'herdboys'. In the Transkei it is the men of the family who tend the cattle. The boys of ten to sixteen years herd the cattle and milk the cows, while their younger brothers of five to ten years herd the sheep, goats and calves. Joan Broster Red Blanket Valley 1967

Mr. Justice M— started life as a herdboy looking after his father's cattle outside Maseru. Even then he dreamed of making law his career. Drum 8. 3. 74

here ['hɪərə, 'jɪərə, 'jɪr(ə)] interj.

Coll. 9. Exclamation equiv. of Oh Lord, Lawks, etc.: various pron. and sp.

'Oooo! ^{lc} YIRRA! ALLEMAGTIG!' said Margaret, hopping from one foot to another. Always at this stage it seemed impossible that one should ever get in to water of this temperature - about 58 degrees. K. Mackenzie A Dragon to Kill 1963

Big joke? Because I cried? No. 'Here' Boesman! Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[Afk. Here fr. Du. Heer = lord]

Here Sewentien, Die

Hist. 17. See quot., also at V.O.C. 17.

The States General of the Netherlands had succeeded in establishing a mighty organization by uniting the small trading associations into one great company, with the Here XVII as directors. ... the letters VOC... (Vereenigde Oost Indische Compagnie). This mark had been decided on by the Here XVII or Council of Seventeen. [Du. Heeren = gentlemen + zeventien cogn. seventeen] Panorama Oct. 1973

Hernhutter ['herp,hoetə(r)] n. prop. pl. -s and n. modifier

18. Also boslemmer ^(9N.) knife made under the direction of Moravian missionaries at Genadendal.

... the manufacture of the celebrated Moravian knives known as boslemmers or Hernhutters. Lawrence Green When the Journey's Over 1972

A number of Herrnhutter knives made by Kühnel and four Hottentot apprentices, are also to be seen. The knives in those days were known throughout the Colony and even overseas and for a long time were the main source of income for the mission station. Panorama Sept. 1974

herstigte [,her'stɪxtə] n. pl. -s or adj.

19, 4b, 29adj. Re-constituted as in Nasionale Party: see H.N.P. name of the new ultra-conservative splinter group of the nationalist party or one of its members: as adj. of or pertaining to the party, its policies or its members.

It was announced at a mass rally held in Pretoria on 24 October that a new political party, to be called the Herstigte Nasionale Party (reconstituted National Party) was to be formed. S. Afr. Institute of Race Relations Survey 1969

The balance of the votes they lost undoubtedly went mostly to the United Party ... and to the Herstigte Nasionale Party ... No one really expected this to happen, except the Herstigtes themselves. Daily Dispatch 25. 2. 72

[Afk. her = re-(again) + stig = constitute, establish + -te or adj. forming suff.]

Hervormde Kerk [,he(r)'fɔ̃(r)mdə 'kerk, 'kɜk] n. prop.

4a. Smallest of the three Calvinist Churches to which most Afrikaners belong: [the Nederduits ~ was the official church of the first S. Afr. Republic by the Constitution, see Grondwet 4b, of 1858, also quot.]

This [Hervormde] church comprising about 3 per cent of all Europeans in the Union was made the official Church of the Transvaal Republic by the Constitution of 1858. C. P. Swart Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934

... the three federated Dutch Reformed Churches threatened to compile their own version of the metrical psalms independent of the 'Hervormde' and 'Gereformeerde' churches ... The Friend 16. 2. 34 cit. C. P. Swart Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934

[Afk. her = re- (again) + vorm = constitute, shape + -de partic. suff.]

het [het] art.

271. The: definite art.: see also de 271: found in place and other names, Het Kruis (Cross), Het Suid Western (newspaper, S.W. Cape) [Du. definite art. (neuter) het]

heuning- ['hĩoenɛŋ-] n. prefix

27e. Honey: found in S. Afr. place names as prefix to n. e. g. Heuningneskloof (nest), Heuningspruit, Heuningvlei: also in names of plants etc.

heuningbier ['hĩoenɛŋ,bi:r] n.

8. See honeybeer 8, karree 8, 27c, 32. [Afk. heuning = honey + bier = beer]

heuningblom ['hĩoenɛŋ,blɔm] n. pl. -me

13, 28. Melianthus comosis and M. major: see kruidjie-roer-my-nie 28.

heuvel ['hĩœvəl] n. suff.

27a. Hill: found in S. Afr. place names usu. as suff. to n. or adj. e. g. Klipheuvel, Bonteheuvel, Paleisheuvel. [Afk. heuvel = hill]

hey [heɪ] interj.

Coll. 9. General but esp. prevalent in SAE: used as an interrogative equiv. of (1) 'isn't/wasn't it?': (2) as a means of attracting attention or response: (3) redundantly as an utterance initiator: or alone as equiv. of 'What?' or 'I beg your pardon?'

(1) It was funny hey Boesman! Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969

(2) What do you think of that - hey? Dan Jacobson Dance in the Sun 1956

(3) Hey, how is it, man? I hear you came running out? Todd Matshikiza Chocolates for my Wife 1961

highveld ['haɪ,felt] n. prop. and n. modif.

22. The mountainous regions of the Transvaal are so designated: also as modifier ~ climate etc.

him, that's, vb phr.

Coll. 10, 29 trns. Used as an affirmative or agreement equiv. of 'Yes' or 'That's it', even when the object referred to is non-animate.

Q. Isn't that the —'s brand of whisky?

A. That's him.

Bottle Store keeper George, Cape Province 1970

[trans. Afk. dis hy = that's it/him]

Hindoo, n. prop. pl. -s and modifier.

Hist. Obs. 19, 10. A term used at the Cape for British visitors from India often servants of the East India Company, listed in Cape Directories as 'Indian Visitors' [sic]: see 'Indian: formerly Brit. Anglo-Indian': see quot. at Kaapenaar, koelie. 19, 10.

... three mistakes equally common. First that the Society of Cape Town is not fit for them; and secondly that the Kapenaars have no wish that the Hindoos should associate with them. The third is that every Cape spinster (to use the elegant Indian term) is looking out for a Hindoo husband! N. Polson A Subaltern's Sick Leave Calcutta 1837 in S. Afr. Library Quarterly 10.

... Anglo Indians. These visitors were, by the way, always known to Kapenaars as "Hindoos". P. W. Laidler Tavern of the Ocean 1926

[poss. fr. ability to speak Hindustani]

hing n.

16, 25. See Indian terms 25, also duiwelsdrek 16.

hlonipa [hlonipa] n. and n. modif.

2, (23). The system of reverence and taboos observed by the Nguni woman towards her male relatives-in-law, involving various gestures of respect and a whole substitute vocabulary of ~ words 23 enabling her to avoid speaking the radical syllable of any one of their names; occ. as vb trns. to ~.

The custom called hlonipa requires that certain relatives by marriage shall never look on each other's face, ... more especially a daughter-in-law and all her husband's male relations ... She is not allowed to pronounce their names, even mentally; and, whenever the emphatic syllable of either of their names occurs in any other word, she must avoid it, by either substituting an entirely new word, or at least another syllable in its place. This custom has given rise to an almost distinct language among the women ... William Shaw Story of My Mission in S. E. Africa 1860

[Ngu. vb (uku-)hlonipa = to respect, show honour, reverence]

H.N.P. ['eɪtʃ, en'pi:, 'ha-] n. prop.

4b. The Herenigde Nasionale Party: see Nationalist Party 4b: or the Herstigte Nasionale Party: see also Herstigte 4b.

The cliff hanger 1948 victory ... was the result of an uneasy election pact between the Herenigde Nasionale Party (H.N.P.) of Dr Malan and the small badly organised Afrikaner party ... Sunday Times 27.5.73

... the protest meetings were attended mainly by members of the Herstigte Nasionale Party, while a few U.P. members attended as "spectators". It did seem, however, that the U.P. were "as insistent as the H.N.P." that the statue be removed. Rand Daily Mail 8.3.71

[acronym of either of the above]

hoek [h^huk, h^hvk] n.

(1) 22. A valley or indentation in or between mountains.

... I got upon the ridge which divides this hoek from another winding glen called Gannahoek. Thompson Travels in S.A.I 1827

(2) 18. A corner, sometimes dimin. ~ ie: in compounds such as ~ kas 18 corner cupboard; vry ~ (ie), (Coll.) 15. a nook indoors or out suitable for courting couples.

(3) 27a. Angle, corner, found in S. Afr. place names usu. with n. e.g. Zwagershoek (also Swaers-), Olifantshoek, Dri^hhoeksrivier, also Hou(w) (qv) Hoek. cf. Hook of Holland, Scottish neuk.

[Afk. fr. Du. hoek = corner cogn. hook]

hoepelbeen ['h^hu^hpəl, b^hiən] n. and adj.

16, 10. Bow legs, bandy-legged: found esp. in folk song, see quot.

As I entered, the musicians, who were all smoking like chimneys, were playing and singing a favourite Dutch song, entitled, as I learnt afterwards, 'Janny met de hoepel been.' Cohen Reminiscences of Kimberley 1911

[Afk. fr. Du. hoep(el) = hoop + been = leg]

-hof [-h^hɔf] n. usu. suff.

27e. Court, garden, also law court: found in S. Afr. place names usu. with n. e.g. Eikenhof, Leeuwenhof, Bloemhof: also Hof Straat.

[Du. and Afk. hof = court]

hok [h^hɔk, h^hɔk] n. pl. -s

11, 18. A cage or enclosure for animals or birds: pen, sty, run etc.; in combination calf ~, fowl ~, ostrich ~: see also kraal 11, 18 and quot. at (2) bakkie 18.

Just look about how careful you had to be where you put your feet down on Chris Welman's front stoep. Half the time you didn't know if it was a front stoep or a fowl hok, ... Bosman Jurie Steyn's Post Office 1971 De Bekkersdal Marathon

[Afk. hok = pen, etc.]

hokaai ['h^hu^h,kaɪ, h^hɔ-] interj.

Coll. 9. Exclamation usu. to halt animals equiv. of whoa! Also occ. to halt or check a driver of a motor vehicle.

It was not long before the loud 'hook haai! hook haai! (the order for stopping the oxen) were heard. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

[etym. dub. poss. fr. S. Sotho hoka = stop, poss. extension of Du. Ho = whoa (to a horse)]

hol [hɔ̃l] adj.

27i. Hollow: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. e.g. Hollaagte, Holbank.

holbol ['hɔ̃l, bɔ̃l] adj.

18, 29adj. Concavo-convex: moulding designs on Cape Dutch (qv) 18 gables.

... the characteristic holbol (concavo-convex) outline.
Opperman Spirit of the Vine 1968

... a fine thatched building with a holbol gable of alternate convex and concave curves and mouldings, Lawrence Green When the Journey's Over 1972

[Afk. hol = hollow, concave + bol = rounded, convex]

Holland, modifier

10, 29adj. Used with n. instead of 'Dutch', e.g. "Beetroot Salad - Holland style" (label).

VARIETY - Hamburgers, Hollandse Beef Stuk, Minute Steaks, Sosaties, Chicken Livers, Beef Olives. Daily Dispatch Advt. 17.5.71

Go Dutch this winter! in a Holland suedette coat. Cape Argus Advt. 25.4.74

[poss. to avoid confusion with Duits = German, poss. translit, Afk. Hollands = Dutch]

Hollander, n. prop. pl. -s

Hist. 19. A Dutchman born in Holland: see quot.

A quarter of a century of autonomy had brought the Transvaal to the verge of bankruptcy and anarchy. Civil dissension had been created by the presence of the Dutchmen of European birth or "Hollanders", whom President Burgers had introduced, and whose advanced political and religious views conflicted with the rigid Puritanism of the old "Dopper" Boers. These turned to Paul Kruger, the Vice President as their leader ...
Cambridge History of the British Empire Vol VIII 1936

Hollard Street, n. prop.

30. Address of Johannesburg Stock Exchange, used to refer to the Exchange itself, cf. Wall Street.

It was another golden day for Hollard Street yesterday. The bullion price continued to zoom and gold shares were again the main feature ... Daily Dispatch 12.5.73

homeboy, n. pl. -s

[A. E.] 2, 19. Mode of reference usu. by urban Africans to others from their own tribe or area; also home girl. [cf. Canad. home boy sign. an

orphan boy from a home' in Great Britain. cf. also Colonial use of home, sign. England,] as in 'learned from our wistful mothers to call old England ~~home~~' (The Native Born 1894 Rudyard Kipling).]

... another policeman Ntoane who also came from Lesotho. Ntoane looked up as the Induna brought Monare into his room, and seeing the blanket round Monare's shoulders said: 'Welcome home-boy. What work are you to do?' Lanham/Mopeli Paulus, Blanket Boy's Moon 1953

I stayed with homeboys in Sophiatown who also got me a job with a garage. Drum 22.10.72

[Ngu. umkaya = 'home person', member of the family]

homeland, n. pl. -s

4b. . An African area, formerly traditional home of a particular tribe or nation (qv) being developed under the policy of grand apartheid (qv) 4b or separate development (qv) 4b with financial support from Government and a measure of self-rule: freq. attrib. leaders, policy etc.

Pretoria. - The Bantu Homelands Citizenship Act of 1970 became operative today in terms of a proclamation in the Government Gazette. As is already the case in the Transkei, the Act provides for certificates of citizenship to be issued to citizens of African homelands. Daily Dispatch 27.3.70

The regime has explained that this means real self-determination for the Black man in the so-called homelands. This is the new romantic name for the depressed areas of our country which until recently were known simply as the Native Reserves. E. Province Herald 19.8.74

homemade, a n. pl. -s

Coll. Sect. children 15. A large somewhat crudely made wooden top with a long pik (qv) 15.

honeybeer, n.

8. Also heuningbier: a type of mead made of fermented honey from the earliest times in S. A.: see quot.

Much wild honey is gathered because honey means honey beer. Coloured people in the Piketberg Sandveld still make it every year, and they prefer honey cakes containing young bees. That, they say, starts the fermentation properly. They use kareemoer, a powdered root, as yeast; and when water is added there is a strong drink such as primitive people made in many lands when the world was young. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

honeycake, n. pl. -s

7, 8, 29 trans. Honey in the comb: see quot. at honeybeer 8.

[translit. Afk. heuningkoek = honeycomb]

honeydew, n.

[[? Obs. in SAE]] 11. Mildew in grain: also U.S. honey-dew.

It is thought that when the honey dew touches the corn, unless there is rain within 2 or 3 days after, the ears turn black and the grain is injured. African Court Calendar for 1815

[trans. Du. honigdauw = mildew]

honey guide n. pl. -s

3. Also U.S.: any of several small birds of the Indicatoridae which lead men and animals to bee's nests usu. in the expectation of collecting a share: * [various superstitions obtain about those who deny it this, one being that the next time they will be led to a snake's nest instead: see quot.]

Many a gatherer of wild honey is aided by the honey guide. This insistent and uncanny brown or grey bird calls on human beings to rob the hive it cannot break into itself. There is no mistaking the honey guide's meaning. Its call is loud and not to be denied. When the honey is reached the note changes and the bird remains close at hand teetering with anxiety and greed. Bushmen and Hottentots always leave a share for the honey guide. They say it is a vindictive bird which will lead the way to a snake or a leopard next time if it is cheated. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

(h)oogpister [ˈ(h)ʊəx,pɛstə(r)] n. pl. -s

21. Any of several insects having as a defence mechanism the ability to squirt acrid fluid some distance often into the eye of its assailant: see also quot. at oogpister.21.

Hoogpister: The name given to a large beetle, Mantorica, because it ejects to a considerable height (and whether purposely or accidentally, often enough into the eyes of its would-be captor) an exceedingly acrid fluid. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Afk. hoog = high or oog = eye + pis = urinate + agent. suff. -ter]

hoogte [ˈhʊəxtə] n. usu. suff.

27a, 22. Height(s): found usu. in S. Afr. place names e.g. Voortrekkerhoogte, Helshoogte, Brintjieshoogte.

... I could almost name the hour when he would emerge from a certain 'hoogte' (rise) with his goatskin bag on a stick slung over his shoulder. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

[Afk. hoog fr. Du. ~~hoog~~ cogn. high + -te n. forming suff.]

hoop [hʊəp] n. abstr. usu. suff.

27b. Hope: found in S. Afr. place names freq. with possessive n. prop. e.g. Niekerkshoop, Vorstershoop, Maartenshoop, Keetmanshoop: also Ons(our)Hoop, Hoopstad.

[Afk. hoop cogn. hope]

hoor hoor [ˈhʊə(r)'hʊə(r)] interj.

9. Exact equiv. of 'hear, hear': exclamation of approval or agreement.

... matters of administrative routine, which the Raad approved perfunctorily with gruff rumblings of "Hoor! Hoor!" ... Brett Young City of Gold 1940

In spite of what has been said about modern youth, in every respect they are better than we were, in that they will help their neighbours. "Hoor Hoor." Cape Times 15.10.73

[Afk. vb hoor cogn. hear]

* [This share consists of the bees' wax, not of the honey or the bee-grubs: Informant C. J. Skead.]

hope so, don't vb phr.

Substand. 29vb. Substitute for 'I hope not' poss. by analg. 'I don't think so'. [as above or poss. trans. Afk. ek hoop nie so nie]

horries ['hɔ̃,rĩz] pl. n.

Coll. 10, 16, (8) After-effects of drugs or drinking: see also babelas 16, 8: also used loosely sign. any fear or phobia. cf. Austr. to have the dingbats - to be mad or to have delirium tremens.

I watch the activity for a while, and then I get the horries that the rodents might eat me, ... escape from the soap bubble world of the horries. Cape Times 3.7.71

[presum. fr. '(the) horrors', Afk. horries = delirium tremens]

hotel, n. pl. -s

30, 4b. Term now not permitted by the Department of Justice for any boarding or rooming establishment not conforming to its minimum hotel grading requirements: see (2) classify 4b, rotel 30, 4b.

hotnot ['hɔ̃t,nɔ̃t] n. pl. -s

1, 19. An offensive mode of address or reference to a coloured person: see also quot. at loop 9 and houtkop 1, 19.

Recently I wrote a letter to an Afrikaans Sunday paper deprecating the use of the term 'hotnot' when addressing a Coloured person. Sunday Times 22.8.71

~~These are the~~ These are the people who speak of and think in terms of "hotnots". These are the racists whether overtly so or covertly so ... Evening Post 16.7.73

[Afk. hotnot = Hottentot]

hotnots- ['hɔ̃t,nɔ̃ts-] n. prefix

29 prefix. Hottentot's-: prefixed to numerous plant names boerboon see boerboon 32; brood, Dioscorea elephantipes, see Elephant's foot 28, (also Kaffir-bread tree); buchu/boegoe Othonna graveolens, see buchu 28, 16; koekoemakranka Gethyllis ciliaris, see kukumakranka 28, 16; kooigoed (bedding) 28, any of several species of Helichrysum, kool Tachyandra hispida, T. revolutum or T. ciliatum, see hottentot cabbage 14; kool bredie, a bredie (qv) 7 made with kool, kougoed 28, 16.

Hotnotskool Bredie: Use the young unopened flowers shoots of "hotnotskool" (Anthericos longifolium). They look like asparagus ... You could use any cauliflower recipe for "hotnotskool" as it resembles cauliflower in flavour. Hilda Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

~ kougued Sceletium tortuosum [kou = chew + goed = matter]: a stimulant plant used as an intoxicant by the Hottentots: see also (3) kanna [cf. Austr. pituri, a narcotic plant chewed by aborigenes, Duboisia hopwoodii.] ~ tee, Helichrysum orbiculare 28, 16: also kaffir tea 16

Helichrysum orbiculare ... Usually found along the sides and banks of streams or in marshy places. The plants have long been used as tea by the Hotnots [sic], whence the vernacular name. The tea has an emollient action and has been used for chest troubles. C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

~ suintjie 14. Moraea edulis: see uintjie 14.

Hottentot ['hɔ̃tn,tɔ̃t] n. prop. pl. -s

(1) 19, 23. An indigenous people of S. Afr. at the time of the original white settlement.

I was told the Hottentots were uncommonly ugly and disgusting, but I do not think them so bad. Their features are small and their cheek-bones immense, but they have a kind expression of countenance ... Lady Anne Barnard Letters and Journals 1797-1801

For improving the condition of Hottentots and other free persons of colour, at the Cape of Good Hope, and for consolidating and amending the laws affecting those persons - dated 17th July 1828. S. Afr. Almanac and Directory for 1833

The Hottentots looked upon the coast-belt as theirs. Behind them were marauding Bushmen and a less generous climate. The settlement of white men upon their land was fatal to them. De Kiewiet History of S. A. Social and Economic 1941

(2) no pl. 23. The Khoisan language spoken by the ~ s.

The r does not represent a guttural in Hottentot as it does in Kaffir. Pettman S. Afr. Place Names 1931

I've tried her with every possible sort of sound that a human being can make ... African dialects, Hottentot clicks, things it took me years to get hold of ... Shaw Pygmalion 1914/16 1969 edit.

(3) 12. The edible sea fish of the Sparidae, Pachymetopon grande or P. blochii known also as Jan Bruin (qv) 12 and by numerous other names, so called on account of its brownish colour: see also quot. at allewêreld 9.

Harders are often prepared in this way, but Hottentots, herrings, pilchards, maasbankers, etc. serve equally well. Hilda Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

In flavour the hottentot beats the roman, and it has a more delicate flesh. The taste is generally described as sweet. Farmer's Weekly 18.4.73

[fr. (1) Hottentot]

(4) n. prop. prefix in numerous plant and other names: also ~ 's: see also hotnots-, | ~ apron 16, ~ s bread 28, ~ cabbage 14, ~ fig 14, ~ god 24, ~ s tea 7 all (qv).

Hottentot apron, n.

16. Obs. Traveller's term.

'An excessive development of the labia minora occurring in Hottentot women.' Webster's Third International Dictionary 1961

Hottentot(s) bread/brood, n.

28. Testudinaria elephantipes of the Dioscoreaceae: see elephant's foot 28.

These mountains are the native soil of an extraordinary plant called Hottentots Brood (Hottentot's Bread). Its bulb stands entirely above ground, and grows to an enormous size, frequently three feet in height and diameter. . . . The inside is a fleshy substance which may be compared to a turnip, both in consistence and colour. . . . The Hottentots informed me, that, in former times, they ate this inner substance, which is considered not unwholesome, when cut in pieces and baked in embers. Burchell Travels II 1824

Hottentot cabbage, n. pl. -s

14. Trachyandra revolutum, T. hispida or T. ciliatum: see also quot. at Hotnotskool 14. cf. N.Z. Maori cabbage.

The flower heads of this plant which thrives abundantly in the deep sands near the sea-shore, furnish a kind of culinary vegetable, which somewhat resembles asparagus, and is known as Hottentot's Cabbage (Hottentot's-Kohl). When stewed and properly prepared, they make no contemptible dish. Cape of Good Hope Almanac for 1856

Hottentot fig, n. pl. -s

14. Carpobrotus (mesembryanthemum) edulis: see also ghokum 14, a succulent with edible fruits.

. . . and the Hottentot fig grows in many places, spreading over the ground in large patches. It produces plentifully, in all seasons of the year, a fruit of the size of a small fig, of a very pleasant acid taste, when perfectly ripe. It must, however, be first divested of the outside pulp or coat, which is at all times saltish; and even the fruit, when unripe has a disagreeably saline and austere taste. Its name was given by the first colonists, on account of its form bearing some little resemblance to a fig, and because it is everywhere eaten by the Hottentots. Burchell Travels I 1822

Hottentot god, n. pl. -s

21. Any of several insects of the Mantidae, the 'preying' or 'praying' mantis.

The Hottentot-gods always attracted him as they reared up and 'prayed' before him; quaint things, with tiny heads and thin necks and enormous eyes, that sat up with forelegs raised to pray, as a pet dog sits up and begs. Fitzpatrick Jock of the Bushveld 1907, 1909 edit.

Hottentot's tea, n.

16. See hotnotstee 16.

hou [həv] imp. vb.

27f, 29vb. Hold, keep to: found in place name Hou(w) Hoek, in expression moed equiv. of 'keep your chin/pecker up' etc. (moed = courage, spirit) and signs links, regs (left), (right): also in jou bek, 'shut up', 9, 10; see -bek 10.

As after the 1925 floods, so now the women urged their men to hou moed, to be courageous in facing the future. Birkby Thirstland Treks 1925

[Afk. hou Du. houden = ^{to}keep, cogn. hold]

hour, n. pl. -s

24, 31. A measure of distance in S. A. since C18. "The reply to a question as to distance generally being 'Oh, so many hours'" Pettman Africanderisms 1913. This usage still obtains, calculated on varying speeds by car usu. 60-80 kph according to the driver.

The following are the distances on horseback from Stellenbosch to the principal nearest places, viz:-

To Cape Town 5 hours⁺
To Paarl 3 hours

+ By an "hour" on horseback, in South Africa, is generally understood a distance of about six miles. S. Afr. Almanac and Directory, Greig 1831

An "hour" on horseback, in South Africa, generally implies a distance of about EIGHT MILES. Ibid 1833

GENERAL DEALER'S BUSINESS . . . 1½ hours from nearest railway station. E. Province Herald 15. 1. 1921

Ag plees Daddy won't you take us down to Durban. It's only six hours in the Chevrolet . . . Song Jeremy Taylor [Wait a Minim] 1950's

house camp/kraal, n. pl. -s

11. An enclosure for farm animals close to the homestead: see (1) kraal 11.

household butter, n.

7. See butter 7.

house mother, n. pl. -s

19, 34. The matron or house mistress of a girls' boarding establishment: [also house-father, warden of a boys' hostel], U.S. and Canad. usu. with several meanings.

House Mother required, April to share supervision of girls in out of school hours and in dormitory. ~~Attractive surroundings, good salary.~~ - Apply: Sister Superior ~~School for Girls~~ Farmer's Weekly Advt. 21. 4. 72

[trans. Afk. huis moeder/vader = matron, house warden]

houtkop [həʊt, kɔp] n. pl. -pe, -s

(1) 1, 19. An offensive mode of address or reference to an African equiv. of 'blockhead.'

The "poison of racism" flowed deep in the veins of South Africans. Even in the Afrikaans language racist words such as kaffer, hotnot, koelie and houtkop, were still being used . . . Evening Post 17. 2. 73

(2) 1, 19. Blockhead, numskull: a stupid person.

[Afk. hout = wood + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

howl, vb intrns

Coll. Slang. 10, 29vb. Weep: not necessarily noisily e.g. 'I took her to ~~flick and she howled~~ from beginning to end.' Student.* [translit. Afk. huil = weep]

H.S.R.C. ['estʃ, es, a'si:] n. prop.

34, 4b. Human Sciences Research Council: a statutory body sponsoring and promoting research projects in the humanities and the arts: see also C.S. HR. 34, 4b
[acronym of above]

huilebalken ['hœɪlə,balkən] pl. n.

Hist. rare. 19. Professional mourners employed to walk weeping in funeral processions, freq. slaves: see also tropsluiters 19.

Her funeral, [Lady Charles Somerset; died 11. 9. 1815] ... was one of the last attended at the Cape by huilebalken or professional mourners. Mills First Ladies of the Cape 1952

[Cape Du. huilebalk = a blubberer, whining person + pl. suff. -en]

huisapteek ['hœɪs,ap'tɹək] n.

16. A comprehensive household medicine chest used esp. in country districts and still commercially available: [Dutch Medicines Handbook 1970] see also Dutch Medicines 16, and Old Dutch Medicines.

Every household had a "huisapothek", or a box of Halle medicines, which was so much used that it was only in very extreme cases that a doctor was called. C. Graham Botha Our S.A. Past and Present 1938

→ A tin container, the 'Huisapothek', had a complete outfit and was to be found in every household. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958
[Afk. huis = home + apteek fr. Du. apothek = dispensary]

huisbesoek ['hœɪsbə,sũk] n. pl. -e

(1) 4a. Parish or district visiting by clergy or other teachers.

Four times a year, he undertook journeys through his district for the purpose of holding these assemblies in various places, for the convenience and instruction of those whom distance prevented from coming to the church. These pastoral visits were called huisbezoekings, or domiciliary visitations. Burchell Travels II 1824

... even if this huisbesoek was not part of my after-school duties, I would have gone and visited the parents in any case. H. C. Bosman Unto Dust 1963

(2) 4b. Political canvassing or other house to house visiting.

Nationalist predictions were based on huisbesoek figures and records kept by party workers at the polls. The incorrect Nationalist predictions proved that ... many voters who had been canvassed and had promised to vote for the party but had either abstained or voted for the United Party. Cape Argus 26. 2. 72

[Afk. huis cogn. house, home + besoek = visit, call]

huis toe ['hœɪs,tũ] interj.

Coll. 9, 10. Home(wards) equiv. of 'We must be off' to a person, or 'Go home' to an animal.

It was very dark and Sanna said 'huis toe.' We ran home and sat in the dark. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

This war is not ours. It is time to trek homeward. Huis toe!
Huis toe! Brett Young City of Gold 1940

[Afk. huis toe = homewards]

hunger belt, n. pl. -s

5. See girdle of famine 5, lambili/e strap 5, 2.

Hunger belt: A thong of hide ... worn as a belt by the Namaqua Hottentots which in times of scarcity is gradually tightened to deaden the gnawings of hunger. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

hunt, vb trns. and intrns.

29vb, 20. Usu. to shoot: similar to U.S. usage, not equiv. of Brit. ~ .

~ ing season 20, 4b, the shooting season: ~ ing horse 11 not a hunter as Brit. but sign. a horse accustomed to being shot over; ~ ing dog 11 usu. a cross bred pointed type dog; ~ ed out 29adj. denuded of game. [There is a hunt in Brit. sense, often a 'drag' or jackal hunt, not fox hunting in some large centres esp. Cape Town]

"Hunt" means by any means whatsoever to kill or capture or attempt to kill or capture, or to shoot at, poison, pursue, drive, search for, lie in wait for or wilfully disturb. Section 21H of the Nature Conservation Ordinance. Ordinance 26/1965

→ The council also decided that the hunting season will run from May 31 to July 31 next year. E. Province Herald 26. 9. 73

... it was a lovely country of rolling grasslands and vleis, over which buck ran year after year. That was before they were hunted out. Iris Vaughan Last of the Sunlit Years 1969

... excellent ranching veld. Sheltered kloofs, good hunting. Daily Dispatch Advt. July 1972

[hunt SAE in terms of ordinance given]

hut, n. pl. -s

2, 18. An African dwelling usu. circular, consisting of one room of which several make up a (4) kraal (qv) 2 either mud walled with a conical, grass-thatched roof, or of a domed, beehive construction. cf. Austr. humpy, also goondie, gunyah.

Their huts, all fronting inward to the kraal, are constructed of mats stretched over a frame of sticks in the shape of a bee-hive, and afford but an indifferent shelter in cold weather. Thompson Travels in S. Afr. I 1827.

Seven tribesmen were killed, one injured and 159 huts burned down in faction fight in the Libode district, the Divisional CID officer ... said yesterday. The trouble started when an impi ... attacked the Deep Level area and killed two people. Deep Level retaliated when about 80 tribesmen killed five Ntshwongwenis, injured one and burned down 43 huts. Daily Dispatch 11. 5. 72

~ tax, 4b. a tax imposed by Government.

... although the policy of all governments (according to an official statement) is not to encourage full-time farming in the Reserves, but to impel the Native by the hut-tax to seek a livelihood on the mines or in the Boer farmer's fields, the lure of the white man's cities alone is enough to attract him. D. Reed Somewhere South of Suez 1950

[have, vb

Substand. 29red. In SAE esp. among children redundantly repeated in speech. 'We wouldn't had 've done it if we'd known.' (Schoolgirl 14) or rendered by pron. sp. 'of' in writing. 'That must of been the worst part.' (Letter Schoolgirl 17).]

I

I.D.B. ['aɪ,di'bi:] n. prop. and n. modifier

(1) 4b, 30. Illicit Diamond Buying: trade in uncut diamonds by unlicensed persons forbidden under the Diamond Trade Act which came into force on 1st September 1882, and punishable since then as a criminal offence: hence Act familiar term for this Act: see quot. at Breakwater 4b.

Kimberley and the diamond fields coined this new phrase: I.D.B. - illicit diamond buying. The crime was considered to be one of the most serious that could be committed in South Africa, and the punishment imposed ... up to seven years hard labour on the breakwater at Cape Town. Klein Stage Coach Dust 1937

Police in South-West Africa are investigating one of the biggest and most startling I.D.B. cases in the history of the Oranjemund diamond area. E. Province Herald 2. 3. 70

(2) n. pl. -s. 19, 30. An illicit diamond buyer: one engaging in the trade of I.D.B.: see also kooper 19, 30 and koppie-walloper 19, 30.

Yet the I.D.B., as the illicit diamond-buyer is called flourishes still. G. A. Farini Through the Kalahari Desert 1886

[acronym Illicit Diamond Buying/er]

-ie [-i] suff.

(1) 29 Suff. dimin.-forming suff. equiv. to -djie, -tjie etc. as in drogie (qv), bossie (qv) etc.

(2) Personifying suff. affixed to n. or adj. e.g. bergie 19, skefie 19, bangie 19, dronkie 19, all (qv). cf. Austr. broomie, fleecie, Brit. and U.S. wierdie, alkie etc.

(3) Suffix in children's names for marbles: alie, glassie, ironie, jakkie^x, all (qv) 15.

Ikey ['aɪki] n. prop. pl. -s

19, 34. A student or alumnus of the University of Cape Town: esp. a member of its sports teams.

I certainly don't hold with what the Ikeys have been doing, but I cannot understand why the police had to behave as they did now. Daily Dispatch 3. 6. 72

Ikeys, n. prop.

34. The University of Cape Town (U.C.T.) itself.

At Ikeys too, there is a lot of indifference. But that is universal. In our parents' day they had something to fight for. Star 8. 6. 73

[abbr. of n. prop Isaac]

imbongi [im'bɒŋgi] n. pl. -s

2, 19. Also mbongi, mbongo (erron.): A praise singer to an African chief, whose traditional office it is to chant and recite in honour of his person and his forbears: see also izibongo 2. [Also used occ. of a

political stooge or apologist, usu. 'mbongo' 4b, 19. See addenda p 588]

The "imbongi" or praise singer, warriors, dancing and singing ... Sunday Times 14.11.71

The mbongis are out ... dancing and singing, shouting 'Bayete' to Mnumzana V— they climb up his ancestral tree singing the praise poems of ... illustrious forbears. Drum 8.3.73

[Ngu. ~~Zu.~~ imbongi = bard or professional praiser fr. vb bonga = to praise, laud or utter the praises of]

imfe [ˈim,fe] n.

2, 11, 28. Sorghum dochna: see soetriet 28, 11.

From September to March or April, they lived chiefly on milk, and the large supplies of pumpkins, Indian corn, sweet cane (imfe), and other green crops, which they raise during the summer months. William Shaw Story of My Mission in S.E. Africa 1860

[Ngu. imfe = sweet cane]

immorality, n.

4b. In S.A. usu. sign. unlawful intercourse between black and white.

Extension of Immorality law

Mr. — (Minister of Justice), obtained leave to introduce a Bill to prohibit unlawful intercourse between European males and native females and other acts in relation thereto. The Bill was read a first time and the second reading was set down for Wednesday next. E. Province Herald 4.2.1926

They made love, the woman turned out to be Coloured and they were each sentenced to nine months' jail, suspended, for immorality. Cape Times 13.1.73

Immorality Act, n. prop.

4b. Section 16 of the Immorality Statute, see immorality 4b, providing for the prosecution of black and white who cohabit or attempt to marry, or who by a single actual or attempted act contravene it: abbr. form Immo Act 2, 4b, [A.E.]

The Immorality Act, which bans interracial sex, is still in force, but prosecutions are rare. Time 15.10.73

A day earlier he was questioned by a senior police officer, in connection with the alleged breaking of the Immo Act. Post 10.10.71

[fr. immorality (qv) 4b]

¹impala [ɪmˈpələ] n. pl. -Ø, -s

6. One of the larger and most common of the S. Afr. antelopes Aepyceros melampus, bright russet-coloured with a white belly, curved black stripe on the haunch, the male with slender ringed horns.

The reserve is advertising for 10 each of impala, hartebeest, nyala, reedbuck, waterbuck, black wildebeest and blue wildebeest. Grocott's Mail 11.4.72

black faced ~

In the west there are also some black-faced impalas, one of the rarest antelopes in Africa. Etosha National Park 1972

[Zu. iMpala = pallah antelope]

* imishologu [ˌimɪʃoˈlɔɡu] pl. n.

2. See Amatongo 2. [pl. Xh. (u)mshologu ancestral spirit.]

The impundulu is identified with the lightning; thunder is the beating of its wings, while the flash indicates the laying of its eggs ... Hammond-Tooke Bhaca Society 1962

²Impala, n. prop. pl. -s

31, 20. A jet-engined military aircraft used by the S. Afr. Air Force.

Citizen Force squadrons throughout South Africa will be equipped with Impala jet aircraft to replace the Harvard trainers within the next two or three years, Brig. Bob Rogers, head of the Light Aircraft Command of the South African Air Force, said today. Daily News 8.5.70
[presum. fr. name of antelope]

impi ['ĩmpĩ] n. pl. -s

2, 20. Formerly sign. regiment or army as in Chaka's s, now an armed band of men esp. those engaging in faction fights (qv) 2, 10: see quot. at hut 2, 18, ^{tribesmen 19, 2} and at (1) induna 2, 19.

A Zulu impi ... managed to cut off the chief's cattle and kill some of his followers. Daily Telegraph 16.5.1879 cit. W.S. Mackie

... a massive impi of about 250 men, butchered 19 fellow tribesmen from a nearby kraal. A police reconnaissance patrol which sped to the battlefield was surrounded by the 250-strong assegai-wielding impi. Daily Dispatch 2.8.72

[Ngu. impi = regiment, army, military force]

improved, vb partic.

11, 29adj. Of or pertaining to a farm or land with improvements (qv) 18, 11, also well : or un sign. land which has not been developed in any way.

FOR SALE. - Well-improved sweetveld farm, approximately 786, 4ha in the Elandslaagte district, ... Farmer's Weekly Advt. 21.4.72

improvement(s), n. usu. pl.

18, 11. Any dams, fencing or buildings including the homestead (if any) constitute the s of a farm (qv) 11: also Canad.

The lessee had no dominium in the ground and he could sell or bequeath nothing more than the opstal - that is the house, kraals and other improvements. C. Graham Botha Our S.A. Past and Present 1938

IMPROVEMENTS: Fully fenced. 26 Camps, 4 Strong boreholes, 3 with windmills and 1 with Lister diesel engine. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 21.4.72

impundulu bird,

[ĩmpũn'dulũ]n.

2, 16. See lightning bird 2, 16 and mpundulu bird 2, 16. *

[Ngu. (i)mpundulu = 'bird supposed to be used by women in witchcraft.'

Doke and Vilakazi Zulu/English Dictionary 1948, 1964 edit. *sometimes pictorially represented as an eagle with extended talons spanned by a jagged lightning flash. [fr. photograph by C.K. Skead]

in, prep.

Substand. 29 A/P/A, 10. Equiv. of 'at' usu. with 'good' or 'bad' as in 'my son's so bad in Maths but he's quite good in languages'.

"She was very good in this job", said Mr. S —. Het Suid Western 25.4.74

[translit. Afk. goed in = good at]

indaba [ɪn'daba, 'in,daba] n. pl. -s

(1) 2, 10. A tribal conference: now extended to mean any conference between politicians or other contracting parties. cf. N.Z. (Maori) korero, U.S. and Canad. pow-wow, Canad, wa-wa (parley).

A domestic now informed us, that the king was holding an en-daba (a council) with his warriors; ... Thompson Travels in S. Afr. II 1827

The indaba ended today -- informed the chiefs that they must keep their women away from the town. ... The Chiefs said the women were too much for them, but agreed to the other conditions. E. Province Herald 11. 1. 1897

Mr. --, the fiery Urban Bantu Councillor from Dobsonville, has called an indaba to discuss shortage of schools for Southern Sotho lower primary pupils at 8 a. m. today. Post 6. 12. 70

(2) 10, Concern, problem: presum. figur.

Mom refrained from adding that there was also an East wind, which ... blew, ... sweeping across the hillside to hit the small cottage bang on. Anyway she felt it was their indaba, put the cheque in her purse, and left them ... Iris Vaughan Last of the Sunlit Years 1969

"Their sex needs are their own indaba. They can have their sex somewhere else," the matron answered ... Drum 8. 12. 72

[Ngu. indaba = conference]

¹
Indian, n. prop. pl. -s, also modifier

Obs. Hist. 17, 19. Formerly used of those who were known and listed in certain directories and Almanacs (qv) 17, 46 as 'Indian Visitors[sic]' [1847, 1848, 1853 Almanacs]: persons, usu. British, spending extended periods of sick leave or furlough from India at the Cape: also coll.

Hindoo(s) (qv) 19: see quot. at Hindoo 19, 10, Kaapenaar 19.

... Mr Advocate Cloete, two Indian residents, two medical gentlemen and two English merchants of Cape Town. cit. L. H. Meurant Sixty Years Ago 1885

Take her as your free servant, no longer a slave. Take her as your friend. ... God bless you both, and when you supplicate on high, ask heaven's mercy for Wilkinson the Indian. C. of G.H. Literary Gazette Vol. I June 1830

... at about 6 p. m. arrived at Mr G. du Toit's place where I had the pleasure to meet a large company of Indians, Lord and Lady Doyle [sic] and Major Cloete. M. J. Truter Diary 26. 10. 1862 cit Gordon-Brown 1972

²
Indian, (S. Afr.) n. prop. pl. -s

25,23. A member of the Asian racial group of Indian descent or birth, mostly descended either from indentured Indian labourers, the first of whom arrived to work in the Natal sugar plantations in 1860, or from passenger s (qv) 19, 25, the merchant class who emigrated at about the same time: see Bombay Merchant, Arab both 19, 30, 25.

Indian Council, the n. prop.

4b, 25. An official body constituted by Government consisting of elected and appointed Indian members, to negotiate in all matters concerning the ²Indian community in S. A.: see quot. at coolie 17, 19.

Indian parsley, n.

25, 7, 14. See Indian terms, dhunia 25, 7.

Indian Reformed Church, n. prop.

4a, 25. See quot.

This week I spoke to the Rev Edward Mannikon, vice-chairman of the Indian Reformed Church - the Indian branch of the NG Kerk - about his views on a confrontation between the State and Church. Sunday Times 1.9.74
[as in Dutch Reformed Church (qv)]

Indian terms,

25 [Prob. largely Reg. Natal] Numerous Indian terms appear in shops, Indian recipe books etc, some of which are for convenience listed here: not exclusively SAE. sp. forms vary.

25, 5. Clothing: champals (qv), choli (qv), mundani (qv).

25, 7, 14. Foods and dishes: ^{dhajia (qv)}biriani (qv) 7; bunny chow (qv) 7; butter bread (qv) 7; butter chilli (qv) 14; chillie bite(s) (qv) 7; halim/leem (qv) 7; kalya (qv) 7; naan 7 Indian yeast bread, baked or fried; papad 7 (puppa/poppadums) thin fried wafers of pea flour commercially available; puri 7 thin fried pastry or wheat cake; roti (qv) 7 flat bread; samoosa(s) (qv) 7.

25, 7. Ingredients: chana flour 7 see gram 7; dhai 7 sour milk, usu. curds only; dhal, dhol 7 various lentils and pulse; ghee 7 clarified butter; gram 7 pea-flour; masoor 7 brown lentils; soojee 7 semolina (wheat).

25, 7. Spices: arad 7 turmeric see borrie 7; dhunia 7 coriander seed, also the green leaves called by some Indian parsley 14; elachi 7 cardamon/mom seeds; hing 16 asafoetida, see duiwelsdrek 16; jeero 7 cumin seed; masala ^(qv) 7 curry spices also in combination garam/ghurum (hot) ~; methi ^(qv) 7 fenugreek; soomf, saunf 7 fennel or anise seed, see vinkel 28; tuj 7 cinnamon usu. in stick form.

25, 7. Sweetmeats (general term mithai): burfee (qv) 7, a type of milk fudge; goolab jambo, a syrup-dipped doughnut flavoured with rose water cf. koeksister (qv) 7; mithai samoosa, a samoosa (qv) 25, 7 filled with a sweetened mixture usu. of coconut or other nuts. See also Haj 25, lounge 25, 30, goodself 25, 1, zakaat (qv) 24.

indhlunkulu [,ĩndʰũŋ'kulũ] n.

2. See great(house) 2.

indicator, honey n. pl. -s

3. ' See honey guide 3.

Indobond, n. prop.

25, 4b. A secret S. Afr. Indian political organisation: see quot.

... one of the country's best kept secrets - the existence of the Indobond, the Indian version of the very powerful and very secret Afrikaner Broederbond. The Indobond's aims are similar ... to use behind-the-scenes wheeling and dealing to control the men who control the people. Drum 22.9.73

induku [ɪn'dugʊ, -ku] n.

20, 2. See battle-stick 2, 20.

Tied up with the assegais is commonly a short stout stick, with a large knobbed head called by the kaffirs themselves indookoo and by us keerie. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

[Ngu. induku = stick for fighting or a walking stick]

induna [ɪn'dunə, ɪn'duna] n. pl. -s

(1) 2, 19. Councillor or headman appointed by a chief.

... Prince Israel Mcwayizeni, acting Paramount Chief of the Zulus, addressing chiefs and indunas of the war-like Msinga tribesmen ... urged: "These are not the times to expend your energies in the wasteful and retrograding exercise of impis but in the rewarding pursuits of knowledge. Daily News 16.9.70

The lead induna, or head man, resplendent in hyena tails and impala, monkey and civet skins, carried an Instamatic. ... When the newly enthroned Paramount Chief left the party it was in a new Chrysler. Time 13.12.71

(2) 19. An African man in charge of any band of workers, farm labourers or even cleaners.

We loaded sacks of mielies on to a lorry. The induna — kicked and hit us all the time. We do not know what we did wrong. Sunday Tribune 14.11.71

(3) 19, 30. An African man in charge of a gang of mine workers: see also boss boy 19: sometimes a mine policeman, see second quot.

... he had obtained the job of Induna or head-boy, when he had decided to leave the mines to better his position. Lanham and Mopeli Paulus Blanket Boy's Moon 1953

(4) 20 Akt. form indoenas pl. Sect. Army: 'The top brass'.

Makulu Baas now called an Induna, and requested him to take Monare to the barrack in which lived another policeman, ... who also came from Lesotho. Ibid.

[Ngu. inDuna = captain, headman, councillor]

industrial diamond(s), n. usu. pl.

30. Sect. Mining. Diamonds not of gem-stone quality in colour or size, used for industrial purposes: see grit 30, melee 30.

Nature has produced diamonds that while useless for ornamentation are now essential for industry. That is why they are generally called "industrial diamonds", a term which includes stones used for an endless variety of industrial, mechanical and scientific purposes. McCarthy Fire in the Earth 1946

lh
Inkatha [ɪŋ'kɑtɑ] n 'ɪŋkɑtɑ'

First founded in 1928 by the Zulu King Solomon as a cultural and social organisation; recently revived by Chief Buthelezi as a body aiming for a single South African State with equality for all.

[Zu. inKhata, a Tribal emblem believed to ensure solidarity and loyalty.]

1976 Sunday Times Mag. 9 May: Inkatha, his latest venture, is termed a Zulu National Liberation Movement. . . . Inkatha is seen as a means for Blacks, significantly not just Zulus, unilaterally to determine political policies independently of the White government.

influx control, n. phr.

4b. Government control of entry by Africans (qv) 19, 23 into urban areas without workseekers' or other permits.

Lack of influx control led to pools of unemployment, and unemployment to crime; overcrowding again led to sickness and epidemics: and germs were not colour-conscious. Gerald Gordon Four People 1964

... some form of influx control is necessary to prevent a flow of workless and homeless Africans to the cities. Sunday Times 12.8.73

ingelegde vis/fish, [,ɛnxə'lexdə'fɪs] n.

7. See pickled fish 7.

She [Hildagonda Duckitt] ... made all the old Cape fish dishes ... the celebrated "ingelegte vis" fried, curried then preserved with vinegar, onions, mango relish and chillies. Lawrence Green Tavern of the Seas 1947

[Afk. ingelegde = preserved fr. Du. inleggen + vis cogn. fish]

ingubu [(ɪ)ŋ'gubu] n.

(1) Hist. 2, 5. Skin blanket or kaross(qv) 5, 2, 18.

From the shoulders hangs the ungooboo, kaross, or mantle of softened hide worn with the hair next the body, and fastened with a thong at the neck. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

(2) An article of clothing, Zu. or blanket Xh: see first quot. at blackjack 28.

[Ngu. Zu. inGubu = clothing, Xh. = a blanket]

initiation school, n. pl. -s

2. A circumcision school (qv) 2 in which abakwetha 19, 2 learn the arts, and are admitted to the status of manhood: see quot. at circumcision school 2.

The fast thinning bush near the Port Elizabeth African townships was the temporary home of more than 200 youths who learnt the art of manhood at the initiation schools. E. Province Herald 16.2.74

in Katha

(I)nkona/e [(ɪ)ŋ'kɔna/e] n. prop.

11, 2. See Ngoni 11, 2.

(i)nkosi [(ɪ)ŋ'kɔsɪ] n.

(1) 2, 9. See enkosi 2, 9.

(2) Mode of reference to an African Chief.

Great chiefs (inkosee incoolo) are assisted by amapakati, or counsellors. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

(3) Poss. Reg. Natal. 1. Mode of addressing the master of the house: see baas 1, 19, also (i)nkosikazi 1, 19 and quot. at nkosaan 1, 2.

[Zu. inkhosi = king, paramount chief]

insangu [ɪn'saŋgũ] n.

2, 28, 8, 16. See quot. at dagga 8, 16, 28.

... and marched off all the smokers, leaving me with a handful of boys charged with more serious matters, such as smoking the weed called dagga or insangu (called in America marijuana) ... Alan Paton Kontakion 1969

[Zu. insangu = cannabis sativa]

inspan [ɪn,spæn] vb trns. and intrns.

(1) vb trns. 31, 26, 11, 29vb. To yoke or harness draught animals at the beginning of a journey or after breaking it, also for ploughing: see also outspan 31, 26, 11, 29vb.

In a few hours we walked out of Pilgrim's Rest. and after reaching the waggon and oxen, the latter were duly inspanned, and were soon on the move. Cohen Reminiscences of Kimberley 1911

(2) vb intrns/trns. 29vb, 31. To prepare for a journey, or make ready a wagon or other vehicle for travel.

The wind has subsided and they have inspanned as we wish to get to the foot of the Stormberg to-night. ... After a short time we inspanned again to go on to the next farm. Eliza Jane Dugmore Diary 1871

The Marico Boers inspanned their ox-wagons and took the road to Zeerust in order to attend the Nagmaal. H. C. Bosman Unto Dust 1963

(3) vb trns. figur. 29vb, 10. To press someone into service to assist or co-operate, or to set to do some particular task. cf. Brit. to rope in.

I inspanned the only living being in the vicinity, a Zulu woman named Gertrude, and set about unravelling the vagaries of a paraffin-burning refrigerator. Personality 28. 5. 71

deriv.: ing vbl n. The act of (1), (2) or (3) or the time for beginning a journey.

... we proposed to proceed at three o'clock a.m.; but a storm of snow and hail raging at that hour, we delayed inspanning till it had blown past, the horses being in the meanwhile put loose into an outhouse. Thompson Travels in S. Afr. I 1827

She had fallen into a light doze before the inspanning began and throughout it she remained silent and hidden. Pauline Smith The Beadle 1926, 1929 edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. in + spannen = fasten, hitch up, Ger. spannen to harness (horses)]

inyanga [ɪn'janga, ɪn-] n. pl. -s

2, 19, 16. An African medicine man, herbalist (qv) 2, 16 or witchdoctor (qv) 2, 16, practising either in^a tribal or an urban area: see also uhlaka and quot. at gumboot dance 15. cf. ^{*}Canad. conjuror, medicine man, Austr. koradji/coradgee; N. Z. tohunga, native doctor, Maori priest.

The INYANGA is a specialist, a man skilled above his fellows; and the number of different types of INYANGA is very great in the different tribes. Some of them are great tribal officials ... In other cases, the INYANGA is a practitioner at large, putting his skill at the disposal of those prepared to pay for it. A. Winifred Hoernle in Handbook on Race Relations in S. A. 1949

* Jam. E. obeah man/woman, samfi man/woman.

isanusi/e [ɪsa'nusi/e] n. pl. iz-

A diviner, usually a woman, trained in the smelling out (q. v.) of witches: see also sangoma, witchdoctor.

[Ngu. is, sing. prefix + anuse/i, diviner, smeller out of witches rel. ukunuka, to smell]

... he would be touched by the wand of an Isanusi as we name a finder of witches. Rider Haggard Nada 1895

Mr Mutwa, an Isanusi, or high priest among witchdoctors, is the author of several books. Sunday Times 6.6.76

An inyanga who sells goods in a shop is required to take out a general dealer's licence ... Bell S. Afr. Legal Dictionary 1951 (3rd edit.)

An INYANGA this week told how he had been robbed of his bag of herbs and mutiman's diploma ... Mr. —, a fully qualified inyanga - his diploma comes from the African Dingaka Association in Pretoria, had spent the day digging herbs for his patients in a field in Kliptown. Post 18 1. 70

[Ngu. (i)nyanga = doctor, one skilled in a profession]

inyongo [ĩn'jǒngǒ] n.

[A. E.] 2, 16. Bile, biliousness.

Sparkling XYZ ... takes away inyongo in seconds. Nothing's faster. And that's why you'll feel better all over. You can tell how quickly ... takes away bile by the fresh, clean taste in your mouth. Post Advt. 7. 4. 68

[Ngu. inyongo = bile]

ironie ['arənĩ] n. pl. -s

15. A ball bearing used as a marble by children esp. esteemed as a ghoen (qv) 15 on account of its weight: also formerly steely/ie.

Hoffie and the grubby children watched with awe and admiration as the General's 'ironie' scattered the marbles with deadly accuracy. Cape Argus 2. 4. 73

[fr. iron + -ie suff. (qv)]

ironwood, n.

18, 32. Also ysterhout 18, 32: any of several trees having particularly hard wood, also the timber itself: usu. species of Olea esp. O. capensis: in the Transvaal applied to Colophospermum mopane: see mopane 32: also umzimmete (qv) 18, 32, 2.

The iron wood or yezerhout is very common and grows very high. The wood is hard, heavy and of a dark brown colour. Percival Account of the C. of G.H. 1804

... wheelspokes made of either assegai or kershout yellowwood wheel naves or hubs, yellowwood bed planks for the platform, wheel falloes of hard pear or saffraan and ... disselboom, foretong, long wagon and other heavy carrying timbers, of black ironwood. E. Province Herald 28. 5. 73

irrigation farm, n. pl. -s

11. A farm so described or advertised has a proportion of lands (qv) 11 under irrigation, the rest being dryland(s) (qv) 11: see quot. at hanepoot 14.

An outstanding irrigation farm along the permanent Sonderend River below the Theewaterskloof Dam. 458 Hectares in extent with approx. 260 hectares irrigable land of which approx. 86 hectares are already being irrigated by means of underground pipes and sprinklers. Farmer's Weekly 27. 2. 74 Advt.

[trans. Afk. besproeiingsplaas, sproei cogn. spray]

isanusi

isibongo [ĩsĩ'bǒngǒ] n. sing. only

Tribal African clan name: see also quot. at Unkulunkulu.
[see izibongo.] [Ngu. clan name]

Clan membership is determined ... by the possession by all its members of a clan name (isibongo) ... also used as a polite mode of address or in the place of the usual formula in expressing thanks. Hammond Tooke Bhaca Society 1962

getting hitched, Her next words take me right in the guts ... I'm
11.6.75 Ploss." she reckons ... Is it? I croak. Darling

Soft Book

* izibongo [izǐ'bongo] pl.n.

2. Praise song or poetry chanted by an imbongi (qv) 2, 19, in honour of a chief or king.

I waited at the entrance of the royal kraal while my Zulu friend and interpreter, —, bowing low with folded hands, yelled out an izibongo, a song in praise of the Zulu kings ... National Geographic Magazine December 1971

[Zu. pl.n. sign. the praises or praise name usu. of a chief or king: see etym. at imbongi]

is it? vb phr. qn.

Substand. Coll. 29vb trns. 10. Pro-forma qn. equiv. of Really? Is that so? expressing astonishment, incredulity or polite interest. [Tense, gender and number are not allowed for] e.g. A. I hear they were married last year. B. Is it? or, A. He'll be here tomorrow. B. Is it? etc: see also isn't it? 29vb trans. 10. * [translit. Afk. is dit? = is that so?] * Her next words take me right in the guts ... "I'm getting hitched, Bloss," she reckons ... "Is it?" I croak. Darling 11.6.75

isn't it? vb phr. qn.

Substand. Coll. 29vb trans. 10. General tag-question inviting assent, equiv. of Ger. nicht wahr? freq. used in contexts where the tense and number of the vb and the neuter prn. are inappropriate: see also not so? 29 trans. 10; nè?; is it? 29vb trans. 10

Shakespeare wrote Macbeth isn't it? British informant quoting S. A. Student 1973

[prob. fr. Afk. nie waar nie? = isn't that so? cogn. Ger. nicht wahr?]

it, prn.

Substand. 29 trans. Sign. prn. used instead of pl. them or they.

I gave him two of mine and he gave me a small glassie for it ... Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

"I believe that if there are laws which are not in keeping with our faith, the Church must witness against it. E. Province Herald 17.10.74

[prob. fr. confusion of Afk. dit used as neuter pl. dit = they, these, (as well as; it, this, that.)]

* izibongo

izindlubu [izǐn'dlubu] pl.n.

2, 14. Zu. name for Jugo beans (qv) 14 or kaffir groundnuts (kaffer-grondboontjies)(qv) 14, Voandzeia subterranea of the Leguminosae, an underground nut much cultivated by the Zulus and cooked with samp (qv) 7 or whole mealie kernels (qv) 14.

[Zu. pl. n. (izin)dlubu = Voandzeia nuts]

izinyanya [izǐ'njanja] pl.n.

2. Also imishologu 2: see amatongo 2. [Xh. pl. of isinyanya ancestral spirit]

J

Ja [ja] affirmative interj.

Coll. 10, 9. Yes: freq. used in speech: see also Ja-nee 10, 9.

cf. U.S. yeah *comb. ~ baas (qv) ^{vb. phr. fr. n.} see third quot.*

The 450 workers present shouted a loud "Ja" when Mr. -- asked if they were prepared to strike if all negotiations failed. Rand Daily Mail 18.2.71

It seems that this is a unilingual country, or that you wish it to be," retorted Mr. --, and there were shouts of "Ja." Sunday Times 1.4.73 "I believe I was fired because I am no

[Afk. Ja cogn. yes] *ja-baas "he told DRUM. Drum 8 3.76"*

jaag [ja x] vb usu. intrns.

Coll. 29vb. Tear about, rush round,^x as in 'Don't ~ about like that in this weather: see also woel 29vb, 10. [Afk. jaag = rush, chase, fr. Du. jagen = to hunt, chase]^x *occ. trns. sign. to hustle or harass.*

jaagsiekte ['ja x, s'iktə] n.

11. Two diseases having similar symptoms viz. increased rate of breathing as in a hunted animal.

(1) Crotalariaosis in horses caused by either of two species of Crotalaria C. dura and C. globifera both known as bossie 28.

'Jaagsiekte' in horses is caused by the plants Crotalaria dura and C. globifera ... the first noticeable symptom is the increase in the rate of respiration (breathing), which may vary from 100 to 120 per minute. A dry cough is present. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

(2) A destructive lung disease of sheep, infectious but of unknown origin: sometimes called droning sickness.

Jaagsiekte has been recognised for a considerable time as a specific and very destructive lung disease of sheep in the Union ... There is no known curative treatment and no case has been known to recover. ibid.

[Afk. jaag = to chase, pursue fr. Du. jagen = to hunt + siekte fr. Du. ziekte = disease]

jaap [ja.p] n. pl. -s

19, 10. Also japie (qv) 19, 10: a crude or inexperienced person freq. a country bumpkin as in plaas ~ (qv) 19, 10: see also takhaar 19 and quot. at japie. [fr. Jaap, name deriv. fr. Jakob]

jabroer ['ja,bru:r, -brvə] n. pl. -s

19, 4b. A 'yes-man' without opinions of his own: a sycophant or 'stooge' to a politician or big businessman: *see also ja-baas (ja).*

Paul Kruger was sitting in his accustomed place on the stoep, surrounded by a group of men whom Adrian had called Ja-broers ... He rose heavily and knocked out his pipe on the rail of the stoep, nodded curtly to Janse and moved away, followed by his escort of black-coated "Ja-broers." Brett Young City of Gold 1940

[Afk. ja = yes + broer fr. Du. broeder cogn. brother]

-jacht- [-jax(t)] n.

27e. See jag 27e.

jack, half, n. pl. -s

24, 8. See half-jack 24, 8; ha-ja 2, 24, 8.

jackal-proof fencing, n.

11. Also known as vermin-proof: fencing with wire netting adequate to exclude predators such as jackals: see also verandah 30, 18, 11.

There are 14 land camps; eight grazing camps - jackalproof fencing in very good condition. Daily Dispatch 11. 3. 72 Advt.

Veld and Fencing: All boundary lines jakhal-proof fenced (except approximately 2000 yards - stock proof); 16 windmills in the veld and at homestead. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 27. 2. 74

Jacky Hangman, n. pl. -men

3. [^] Also Jacky Hanger, Johnny Hangman 3: see Jan Fiskaal 3.

... and the big brass scale showing how many grasshoppers, mice and lizards are eaten by two shrikes (Jackie Hangman) which in turn feed one hawk, far outweighing the one farmyard chicken which may happen to be caught by the same hawk. Evening Post 28. 4. 73

jacopever ['ja,kɔp'ɛvə(r)] n. pl. -ø

12. Also jakopewer, Frans Madame, dikoog, peuloog, all 12. Any of several red-coloured bulging-eyed marine fishes esp. Sebastichthys capensis: see quot. at maasbanker 12. cf. Austr. Sergeant Baker, a highly coloured fish.

Thanks to the old writer Francesci, we know that a pock-marked skipper, Jakob Evertson, had a rubicund face with protruding eyes and with the black stumps of his beard showing between the scars. His crew saw the likeness between man and fish, and Kolbe declared that everyone was "ravished with mirth in the allusion". Lawrence Green Grow Lovely, Growing Old 1951

In the very early days of the Colony, the Dutch East India Company had as captain of one of its ships a certain Jacob Evert. When the local fishermen caught a fish with a red face, bulging eyes and thick lips they named it jacopever. Farmer's Weekly 18. 4. 73

[fr. n. prop. Jacob Evert(sen)(son) C17 Du. sea captain]

-jag [-jax] n.

27e. Also jacht. Hunt: found in S. Afr. place names usu. suffixed to animal name e.g. Ezeljacht Eseljagpoort, Hazenjacht, Buffeljagsrivier. [Afk. fr. Du. jacht = hunt]

jags [jaxs] adj.

Slang. ~~Obj.~~ 29adj, 10, 16. Lecherous, 'randy' ^(objectionable) also used of an animal on heat. cf. Brit. and U.S. slang 'hot pants'. [Afk. jags = lecherous, in season]

jakkals ['ja,kals] n. prefix.

28 Prefix. Jackal: prefix to various plant names usu. sign 'something spurious or inferior' (C.A. Smith Common Names of S.Afr. Plants) e.g. ~ bessie, the fruits of Sideroxylon inerme see melkhout; ~ bos/blom any of several species of Dimorphotheca; ~ kos/food species of Hydnora etc. [Afk. fr. Du. jakkals cogn. jackal]

jakkalstrou ['jakals,trəʋ] n. idiom.

Coll. 33, 10. A monkey's wedding (qv) 33. [presum. abbr. Afk. jakkals trou met 'n wolf se vrou = there's a 'monkey's wedding']

jakkie ['jækɪ] n. pl. -s

Coll. 15. See yakkie 15.

jalappoeier [ˌja'la(p),puɪə(r)] n.

16. Powdered jalap, dried root of a Mexican plant Exogonium purga, a purgative: one of the Dutch Medicines (qv) 16.

Epsom salts, senna and jalop, ipecacuanha and Dover powders were the great remedies of those days. Lawrence Green When the Journey's Over 1972

[fr. Sp. jalapa = Mexican place name + Afk. poeier cogn. powder]

janblom ['jan,blɔm] n.

6. The rain frog: Breviceps parvus.

The shriek of the loorie and the metallic croaking of the Jan blom frog. Cape Times 17. 9. 1912 cit. Pettman

janbruin [ˌjan'brœɪn] n. pl. -∅

12. A marine fish of dull brownish colour: Gymnocrotaphus curvidens or Pachymetopon grande; see Hottentot 12; also called John Brown.

... the confusion that exists over the popular names of our common fish. ... our favourite fish, the jan bruin, is elsewhere a Hottentot, a das, a fatfish, butterfish, bluefish, or bronze bream ... Daily Dispatch 20. 6. 72

Jan Compagnie, n. prop.

Hist. 17, 10. See Company, John, Jan 17, 10.

ja-nee see p192.

Jan Fiskaal ['jan,fɪs'kɑ:l] n. pl. -∅

3. Lanius collaris, the black and white fiscal shrike, or butcher bird which stores its prey of small lizards etc. in a 'pantry' of a thorn bush or barbed wire fence: also Jacky/Johnny Hangman, Jacky Hanger, karnallie or laksman, all 3.(qv).

For nearly two centuries Cape Town's chief of police was an official with the title of Fiscal - a name which survives in the shape of the Janfiskaal, Jacky Hangman or butcher-bird. Lawrence Green Grow Lovely Growing Old 1951

[fr. Afk. fiskaal = fiscal shrike, or folk etym. as in quot.]

ja-nee ['ja,ni:, -nɪə] interj.

9. An emphatic affirmative equiv. of 'that's a fact', 'that's right' etc. : see also Yes-no 9. *see below

Ja-nee, Miems, you need cunning to be a farmer. New S. Afr. Writing 4 (no date) pub. Purnell
[Afk. as above]

Jan Groentjie [ˌjan'xruːŋki] n.

(1) 3. The malachite sun bird (qv) 3.

(2) 8. Creme de Menthe: peppermint liqueur: see quot. at van der Hum 8

[Afk. fr. Du. Johan = John, groen = green + dimin. suff. -tjie]

Janpiewiet [ˌjan'pɪrə,vɪt] n. pl. -∅

(1) 3. Telophorus zeylonus, the bokmakierie (qv) 3 shrike.

(2) 15. Title of a well-known Afrikaans folk-song.

[presum. onomat.]

japie- ['japɪ-] n.

Coll. 19. See plaas ~ 19, jaap 19.

... the insult was either intended for, or intercepted by, another young man on his left, who halted and snarled something about "bloody Japies". Walker Wanton City 1949

jas [jas] n.

5. Greatcoat, overcoat.

... he was a tall man in a great jas (watch coat), and ate mutton with a crooked knife. Burchell Travels I 1822

[Du. jas = greatcoat]

jeero, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

jerepigo [dʒerɛ'pɪgəv] n.

8. Various sp. a sweet fortified wine either white or red.

I have a notion of some Cherupiga wine for ourselves ... It is about one shilling and fourpence a bottle here, sweet red wine, unlike any other I have ever drunk, and I think very good. It is very tempting to bring a few things so unknown in England. Lady Duff Gordon's Letters 1861-62

[fr. Port. cheripiga - an adulterant of port wine, of grape juice, sugar, brandy and colouring]

*

The lady enriched my vocabulary by a glorious word, not in the phrase book, which, by means of intonation, may express affirmation, negation, approval, credulity, incredulity at will. It's just "ja-nee", which means yes-no. Morton In Search of S.A. 1948

jigger ['dʒɪgə] n.

21, 16. The sand flea Tunga penetrans of which the female burrows under the skin causing discomfort and irritation: also U.S. and Jam. E.

Sometimes with busy twigs they switched the flies
Or paused to damn a passing nigger's eyes:
Sometimes as now they peeled them off their hose
And hacked the jiggers from their gnarly toes,

Roy Campbell Veld Ecologue (Adamastor 1930)

[Orig. Span. fr. chigger, fr. chigoe]

Jim Fish, n. prop.

19. ~~By~~ An offensive mode of reference to a black man. cf. U.S. Jim Crow.

jislaaik ['jɪs,laɪk] interj.

Coll. 9. An exclamation expressing various moods according to tone, usu. surprise but also dismay or a sense of grievance: see also quot. at noh n' p'p' 9.

Jislaaik ... its origin is dubious. Is it a contraction of "Just like mamma made," "Just like the doctor ordered" or some such ungrammatical comparison? If so, how did it come about that its present meaning approximates to the Cockney "Crikey" or the American "Gee"? That it began as a substitute for a popular swear-word is more than likely... Cape Times 8. 1. 72

[etym. unknown: see quot. poss. fr. first syllable of Jesus, cf. Gee, Jeez and Afk. interj. [jɪəs], yessus (qv) 9, also Here 9]

job reservation, n.

4b. The restriction of certain kinds of employment to particular racial groups: esp. that of the skilled trades to members of the white (qv) 23 or coloured (qv) 23 groups.

Mr. -- said that already job reservation was a "dead duck". He thought that in theory the term job reservation would be retained in in order to save face, but in practice it would disappear. Sunday Times 7. 10. 73

In perhaps the most significant modification of apartheid since it became national policy in 1948, Prime Minister John Vorster last week virtually abandoned the Job Reservation Act, under which the best jobs in the country have long been reserved for whites. Time 15. 10. 73

Job's tears, pl. n.

28, 5. The hard dried spikelets of Coix lachryma-jobi which are tear shaped rather than round and still used as beads. [Also jobskraaltjies (little beads) or jobskrale(beads) in Afk.]

These good people were very civil to us - gave me calabashes, Job's tears, a pretty sort of grey seed which the Hottentots string into necklaces - and everything else they could think of ... Lady Anne Barnard Letters and Journals 1797-1801

[fr. Lat. name]

Joeys, n. prop.

Slang. 10. Johannesburg: see also eGoli 2, 10.

There are stacks of South Africans at this mining and finance firm I'm with ... It's like still being in Joeys from 9 to 5 ...

Personality 12.7.74

[fr. name Johannesburg]

John, n. prop.

Obj. 1. Mode of address to a black man whose name is unknown: see also boy 1, 19, Jim Fish 19.

On the simplest level (that of housewife and servant) madams used to discuss their maids as though dealing with a sub-species "John" seemed a good enough name to call a Black guy if you wanted to draw his attention. Star 3.11.73

[presum. fr. commonest Christian name]

Johnny hangman, n. pl. -men

3. Also Jacky hangman 3: see Jan Fiskaal 3.

joiner ['dʒɔɪnə] n. pl. -s

19, 20. Abusive term among Afrikaners equiv. of 'traitor': formerly one who went over to the British forces during the Anglo-Boer War (qv)

20: see also handsupper 19, 20 and bittereinder 19, 20.

There's Dr. -- who, like the poor, is always with us, calling the members of Verligte Aksie and ASASA "Joiners". With a grandfather who fought at Majuba, I had been led to believe that "joiners" were those who went over to the enemy. Star 8.9.73

[fr. Eng. join + agent. suff. -er]

jointed cactus, n.

known also as 'katjie' in the E. Cape:

11, 28. Opuntia aurantiaca (O. pusilla): a sprawling, much branched succulent, identified in 1903 as a noxious weed, which today ranks as one of the most serious agricultural problems (greater than that of the related species of Opuntia, prickly pear): see quot. at remotestebos.

Jointed cactus. - Opuntia pusilla, a dangerous weed: it is a near relative of the prickly pear, and threatens to become a pest. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

Methods of eradicating jointed cactus came under fire ... at the week-end. Mr. - of the Jointed Cactus Committee reported on the situation with the persistent and hard-to-eradicate pest, and said present methods of getting rid of the cactus seemed hopeless. Grocott's Mail 31.8.71

joking, you('re), interj. vb phr.

Coll. Substand. 9, 10, 29vb. Exclamation of disbelief or astonishment: equiv. of 'You're telling stories, fibbing etc. [prob. translit. Afk.

ju = you + jok = fib, lie, romance etc.] * cf. Austr. dickin, expression of disbelief.

See omissane

jol [dʒɔl, jɔl] vb and n.

Coll. Slang (1) 15, 19, 29 vb. To play, ^{frölic} have fun, occ. vb trns. among children. 'Jol you ping pong': also ^{intrans.} 'Let's jol at my place.'

(2) as n. A party or other jollification. also combination bok ~, student dance or 'hop': see also jool 15, 34. [prob. fr. Du. jolen = to make merry] ^x... plenty of jolling and singing... join the rest of the ones as the German band jols off to pasture new. Davin 9.10.74.

jong [jɔŋ] n. pl. -s

(1) Coll. 1, 19. An informal mode of address usu. regardless of sex. cf. man 1, cf. Scottish yonker young fellow.

We returned to the station and held sweet converse with diverse kêrels, to whom we were "man" and "jong" after the nature of the tribe. E. Province Herald 25. 11. 1911

"Pas op, jong, the prison guard had said to her as she left the gaol one day. "We watch all the dagga people." Meiring Candle in the Wind 1959

(2) 19. A coloured servant, prob. rare in SAE: see also boy 19.

(3) pl. in place name Jongensklip and related Jonker, = in Jonkersberg. [Cape Du. jongen = boy, lad cogn. young(ker)]

jongmanskas/cupboard, [ˈjɔŋkmans,kas] n.

18. Also jongmanskas: a fairly small clothes cupboard with two drawers side by side above and cupboard space below, freq. in yellowwood and stinkwood with turned (2) Cape feet (qv) 18. cf. Brit. bachelor's chest, a chest of drawers without cupboard space.

The restored yellowwood and teak 'jonkmans' cupboard sells at R200. Fair Lady 13. 6. 73

A good quality old Cape yellowwood cupboard, old Cape wakis ... Jongmanskas in yellowwood and stinkwood ... Tulbagh Chair ... Cape Times Advt. 7. 6. 73

[Afk. jonkman = bachelor + kas = cupboard]

[[jool [jʊəl] n.

15, 34. Afk. for annual charity rag held by the students of each S. Afr. University: see jol 15.

[Afk. fr. Du. jool = frölic, jollity]]]

juffrou [ˈjœ,frəʊ, ,jə'frəʊ] n.

1, (19). Mistress: a form of address, second or third person (qv) occ. reference, formerly to married, now only to unmarried women esp. schoolteachers: formerly also titular use with surname: see quot.

In the course of conversation our hostess, the Juffrouw Mare, gave an account of the recent death of one of her relations ... Thompson Travels in S. Afr. I 1827

If Juffrouw will but tell me where I can find her I will take her my letter. Pauline Smith The Beadle 1926, 1929 edit.

"That mark on your cheek, juffrou," I said, "Will you tell me where you got it from?" Bosman Mafeking Road 1947, 1969 edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. juffer, juffrouw = madam, mistress, miss, lady]

Jugo bean, n. pl. -s

14. Voandzeia subterranea: see izindlubu 2, 14, also kaffergrond-boontjie 14.

In addition to the leguminous crops discussed above, there are ... many promising plants which in time may assume considerable economic importance. Chief amongst these are ... Dolichos beans, the Kudzu vine and the Jugo bean. The 3 last mentioned crops will be of importance only in the lowveld areas ... Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[unknown]

jukskei ['joek,sker, 'jək-] n.

15. (1) A S. Afr. game similar to U.S. horse-shoes, played originally with s, yoke-pins or yokeskeys (qv) 31, 26, now with bottle-shaped, skittle-type pegs. (2) The peg itself.

Jukskei, the popular game played with yoke-pins, is said by some to have its origin in the days of the Voortrekkers ... V. de Kock The Fun They Had 1955

Horse-shoe pitching in America originated, like jukskei in South Africa, as a pastime among the pioneers. Cape Times 19. 4. 72
[Afk. juk cogn. yoke + skei = pin, skey]

jumat see addenda p. 588.

just now, adv. t. phr.

Coll. 29 trans. adv., 10. In a little while: phr. with reference to the immediate future as in 'I'm coming s', occ. also to the immediate past as in 'He was here s', but not the immediate present as in standard 'We have none in stock just now.' cf. certain Brit. use of 'presently' sign. 'now, at the moment', also 'in a little while.'

Just now you get a bloody good klap. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[trans. Afk. netnou = presently, in a moment, or with past time reference 'just' as in 'I've just arrived'.]

K

kaaiman ['kai:mən, -man] n.

6. Used of various reptiles usu. alligator, leguaan^x or even lizard and acc. to one superstition, a merman.

Also 27d in place names Kaaiman's River, Kaaimansgat, where the meaning of 'crocodile' is possible. sblom 13 Nymphaea capensis the blue water lily.

... a tremendous ravine called the Kaayman's-gat (Crocodile's hole). This name it has probably received from being frequented by the leguaan, a species of amphibious lizard, growing to the length sometimes of six feet, but quite innocuous. Thompson Travels in S. Africa I 1827

[Du. kaaiman fr. Port. or Span. caiman = alligator]

kaal [ka:l] adj.

(1) 29adj. Naked: found usu. in combinations blad/blaar^(qv) 28, 11, gat^(qv) 10, voet 10, 16 (qv).

The bitter stars I've tasted them, My backside is mos kaal.
Sydney Clouts One Life 1966 *The very thought of a whole klomp of nudists jollifying around*
Kaal - I mean, sis! Darling 12.2.75

(2) 27i. Bare, naked: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. e.g. Kaallaagte, Kaalrug, Kaalspruit.

[Afk. fr. Du. kaal = bare]

kaalblad/blaar ['ka:l,blat, -bla:(r)] n.

28, 11. Any of several spineless or almost spineless species of Opuntia, a near-relation to the prickly pear, see turksvy 28, introduced from America to serve as succulent stock feed (esp. for ostriches) in time of drought.

The orchard wall was backed by a thick hedge of kaalblad, whose big leaves were like flat, full-green hands. Stuart Cloete Hill of Doves 1942

[Afk. fr. Du. kaal = bare + blaar, blad = leaf]

kaalgat [ka:lɣat] adj. or adv.m.

Slang. Obj. 10, 16, 29 A/P/A. Equiv. of U.S. 'bare-assed': often in combination to swim as adv.m. See also quot. at Kaal 29adj.

Sitting there in the dust with the pieces ... Kaalgat! That's what it felt like! ... Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969

[Afk. fr. Du. kaal = bare + gat (qv) = backside]

kaalsiekte ['ka:l,siktə] n.

11. Alopecia or baldness in new born lambs and kids of ewes grazing on bitterbos(sie) veld (qv) 11: see quot. at bitter(karoo)bos 28, 11.

The plant is the cause of so-called "kaalsiekte" ... in lambs. ... Kids and lambs develop the disease from 3 days to about 3 weeks after birth. ... They often pull out mouthfuls of hair and swallow it. In severe cases the animal may lose its coat within 24 hours. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. fr. Du. kaal = naked + siekte fr. Du. ziekte = disease]

kaalvoet ['ka:l, füt, -fvt] adj. or adv. m.

29 A/P/A; 16. Barefoot: in combination ~ rangers, ~ brigade sign. poor whites (qv) 19, freq. children.

Would you have thought it was an offence to drive a car kaalvoet? A young friend assured me that it was and ... I was inclined to believe him, although I have found that barefoot driving allows more sensitivity on the control pedals. Daily News 28. 5. 70

[Afk. fr. Du. kaal = bare + voet cogn. foot]

-kaap- [ka p] n.

27a. Cape, promontory: found in S. Afr. place names as prefix or suff. also in trans. as in Kaapstad (Cape Town), Kaap St. Francis, Stormkaap.

[Afk. fr. Du. kaap cogn. cape]

ka(a)penaar ['ka pən, a r] n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. 19. A Cape Town citizen: see quot. at Hindoo 19, 10.

... at each of which [boarding houses] a stranger is sure generally to find a large party of Indians of every denomination - Qui hy, Mull and Duck - all of whom are distinguished by the 'Kapenaars' or townspeople by the generic name of Hindoos. N. Polson A Subaltern's Sick Leave Calcutta 1837 in S. A. Library Quarterly 10.

(2) 19. One born or long resident in Cape Town or the Cape Province.

The rage in the Transvaal was declared at Mr. -- Nationalist MPC for Worcester, who was reported as saying that 'we Kapenaars are better brought up than say any Transvaaler.' Cape Argus 16. 6. 73

(3) 12. Edible marine fish Argyrozona argyrozona: see doppie 12. also called silverfish.

Kaapenaar: Found only in S. A. from Table Bay to Natal, usually in deeper water to 100 fathoms ... This species is of considerable commercial significance, and the flesh is esteemed. J. L. B. Smith Sea Fishes of S. Afr. 1961

[Kaap cogn. Cape + -enaar = personif. suff.]

Kaapse- ['ka psə] n. prefix

28. Cape: sign. peculiar to the Cape, or the Cape species of a plant which occurs elsewhere: prefix to numerous plant names.

[Afk. Kaap cogn. Cape + -se possessive suff. sign. of, belonging to]

kaapse draai ['ka psə, draɪ] n. phr.

(1) 31. See draai 31, 10.

(2) [[prob. Obs.]] A feat of driving skill consisting in making a sharp turn.

... the 'bruidswa'* or smart Cape cart headed a long procession; and on arrival at the homestead the driver of the bruidswa reached the height of his skill by making the fancy curve known as a Kaapse draai. It took a fine driver to carry out that "figure of eight" flawlessly at a full gallop. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949 [*bridal carriage]

[Afk. Kaapse = of the Cape + draai fr. Du. draaien = to turn, twist]

Kaapse Hollands ['kɑ psə'hɔ̃l,ans] n. prop.

29adj. 23. See Cape Dutch 29adj, 23: also Holland 29adj. 10.

kaas(kop) ['kɑ s,kɔ̃p] n.

19. A Hollander: not equiv. of SAE Dutchman (qv) 1, 19. cf. Brit. and U.S. squarehead, a German. [Afk. kaas cogn. cheese + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

kabeljou ['kabel,j əv, ,kabel'jəv] n. pl. -∅

(1) 12. Also kob (qv) 12. The common, firm-fleshed edible S. Afr. marine fish of the genus Sciaenae: see also quot. at allewêreld 9.

Some of the fish, like the Kabeljou (Cape cod), geelbek (the so-called Cape Salmon) and pilchards are of the South African species ... Lawrence Green Under a Sky Like Flame 1954

(2) 27d. Cod, Kabeljou: found in place names Kabeljousrivier and Kabeljous.

[Afk. fr. Du. kabeljauw = cod cogn. Fr. cabillaud]

Kaboe mealie [kɑ'ə] pl. n.
14,17 Whole maize kernels, boiled: see mealie 14
[etym. dub.]^x

Kaffir ['kæfə] n. prop.

(1) Hist. 19. A member of the Xhosa, Pondo or Thembu nations, regular C19 use for those speaking the ~ language: see (2) Kaffir, and occupying ~ land (qv). In combinations ~ fair, ~ land, ~ war all (qv) [Also occ. used of any indigenous black S. African, now rare.]

The word Kaffir, meaning infidel in the Arabic, has been improperly applied to designate the native tribes of South Africa, from Natal to the colonial border. The so-called Kaffirs are divided into three great nations: the Amakosas, or the people of a chief Kosa, extending from the Keiskamma to the Bashee; the Amatembies, or Tambookies, between the Upper Kye and Umtata; and the Amapondos, or people of the elephants' tooth, from the Umtata to the south of Port Natal. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

The Caffers and Tambookies were very much pleased at my calling them by their true titles, and it is strange how they should ever have been miscalled. The name of the former is Kosa, plural Amakosa, ... The latter is Tymba, plural Amatymba. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Cafferland 1827

[Arab. kāfir = infidel, unbeliever]

(1) Kaffir fair. A trade fair (see fair 17) established for barter between (1) ~ s and Colonists.

Caffer Fair ... Early the next morning the gun was fired for the commencement of the fair ... but as there were not many traders expected it was postponed till noon, at which time about a thousand Caffers had arrived ... several of the Caffer Fair dealers had arrived from Grahamstown. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-land 1827

(1) Kaffirland, n. prop. 17, 27. Formerly also known as Kaffraria. That part of the Cape Colony comprising Pondoland, Tembuland and the territory eastwards from the Great Fish River: see quot. at Kaffir War 20.

To the eastward of the Great Fish river or Rio de Infante extends a fertile tract of country, broken into hill and dale and diversified with extensive woods of the finest forest trees. This is inhabited by a nation called Kaffers or Caffres, the country being called Caffraria or Kafferland. James Ewart Journal 1811-1814

(1) Kaffir War, n. prop. pl. -s. Any of the nine* Frontier Wars between the Colonists and the (1) ~s, during the period 1779 - 1877.

* Cambridge History of the British Empire VIII 1936

I had come to know very little more than I had read in my history books with their rambling account of an endless succession of "Kafir Wars" and an ever-shifting boundary-line on the dim Kaffrarian border. Cape Times 9. 11. 72

(2) Kaffir, n. prop.

Obs. 23. The Xhosa language, that spoken by (1) ~s, was formerly known as (2) ~; [early language texts were known as (2) ~ grammars 34 and (2) ~ dictionaries* 34 in no derogatory sense.] * see quot. at enkosi 2, 9.

I requested Mr. Whitworth to preach in English, while I translated what he said into Dutch, from which language one of our people, a very apt interpreter, rendered it into Kaffir, that at length all might know what the preacher was saying . . . We employed much of the day in collecting words for a Kaffir vocabulary, and on the second night slept very uncomfortably. Shaw Story of My Mission in S.E. Africa 1860

You hear an Englishman speak of dobo grass, dongas, tollies, tsholo, etc. which are pure Kaffir. E. London Dispatch 4. 9. 1912 cit Pettman

In combination kitchen^(qv) ~ 23 and mine ~ 23, both derogatory terms for a 'bastard' language: see fanakolo 23, and quot. at go garshly 10.

A wonderful language is kitchen Kafir, a weird medley of dialects, interspersed with English words. Cape Argus 2. 2. 1924

(3) Kaffir, kaffer ['kæfə, 'kafə] n. pl. -s

1, 19. A mode of address or reference to an African regarded by a large proportion of black and white S. Africans as offensive: a punishable offence in some parts of Southern Africa. cf. U.S. nigger. In combination

~ boetie, ~ pak, raw ~, white ~ and ~ work, all (qv)

To call an African a 'Kaffir' is an insult in the worst taste . . . English Alive 1968 ~~Cancel~~.

Called man 'Kaffir' - fined R100. Francistown. - A middle-aged White man, . . . was fined when he was convicted on two counts of using abusive language to an African. Evidence heard in court was that -- insulted a resident here, Mr. M -- , by calling him a "kaffir". Sentencing -- the Magistrate, Mr. -- , said that cases of Africans being insulted had become prevalent. Evening Post 29. 10. 71

Even in the Afrikaans language racist words such as kaffer, heitot, koelie and heutkop, were still being used . . . Evening Post 17. 2. 73

[fr. (1) Kaffir (qv) See quot. at Dutchman ~~addenda~~ p. 587.

(3) Kaffir boetie ~~as a~~ Kaffer ['kafə(r), bütɪ] n. pl. -s

1, 19. An abusive mode of address or reference to a white person thought to be a negrophile, or to one who works for or attaches importance to the welfare of black people. cf. U.S. nigger lover.

At that time the Prime Minister accused the hon. member for [place name] of going through the country and accusing the National party of being "Kafferboeties". Hansard 16. 4. 59

The BROEDERBOND-CONTROLLED Action Committee of [place name], an official Nationalist front organisation, has resorted to blatant boerehaat and "kafferboetie" smears in a desperate attempt to prevent the non-political XYZ from winning the municipal elections on Wednesday. Sunday Times 11. 3. 73

[Afk. kaffer + boet = brother + dimin. suff. -ie]

(3) Kafferpak, n. ['kafə(r),pak]

10. A thorough beating, usu. the defeat of a sports team.

The team, highly delighted over their weekend triumph, seemed totally dejected after the "kafferpak" they picked up at the hands of S.W.D. police side. Het Suid Western 19. 4. 73

[Afk. kaffer + pak = beating]

raw(3)kaffir n. pl. -s

19. An African who has not been exposed to any civilising influences: see raw 29adj. [usu. derogatory]

... a raw kaffir, who can't even sign his name, but has got to put a cross at the foot of the things he has said - this raw kaffir is allowed to stand there wasting the time of the court for ten hours on end. Bosman Mafeking Road 1947, 1969 edit.

white(3)kaffir, n.

Obj. 1, 19, 10. An offensive mode of address or reference to a white man: see (3)Kaffir. [Not equiv. of U.S. white trash; see poor white 19]

(3)kaffir work, n.

10. Unskilled manual labour despised by white persons: see quot. at poor white 19, and lekker lewe 10. [cf. N:Z. Maori P.T., doing nothing]

Then there grew up the most unwholesome tradition that most housekeeping duties were 'kaffirs' work', and that it was the sign and symbol of the ruling race to be quite idle. Bruce The Golden Vessel 1919

Widespread amongst even the poorest whites was a distaste for 'Kafir work'. There was no corresponding prejudice against all forms of manual and unskilled labour in the other great colonies. De Kiewiet History of S. A. Social and Economic 1941

(4)Kaffir(s), n. prop. usu. pl.

30. * London Stock Exchange term for S. Afr. mining shares: also Kaffers.

The mines floated on the London Stock Exchange which are classed under the general head of 'Kaffers'. Nation 19. 12. 1895 cit. W.S. Mackie. * Hist.

(4)Kaffir circus, n. prop.

30. That market of the London Stock Exchange (so-called from the early 1890's) where transactions in S. Afr. land, mining and other shares were effected: also Kaffir Market.

... the fame of the Rand was noised abroad, foreign buying, by speculators in London and Paris and New York, who barely knew where the Rand was or what shares they bought, continued to keep it spinning at an even more furious pace. They called the exchange, not unreasonably, the "Kaffir Circus". Brett Young City of Gold 1940

(5)Kaffer-/Kaffir-, n. prefix

27e, 23. Found in S. Afr. place names poss. reflecting historical events, e.g. Kafferspruit, Kaffersrivier, Kaffir Drift.

(6) Kaffir-, kaffer-, n. prefix, freq. capitalised.

A common prefix: sometimes derogatory implying inferior as in dog 10, 11, fowls 10, 11, sheep 10, 11, trader 19, 30, truck 10, 30, all (qv): more frequently occurring in plant or animal names sign. wild or indigenous e.g. boom 32 (also bean tree), bread tree 32, crane 3, finch 3, honeysuckle 13, 32, melon 14, plum 32, 14, tea 7, 16, 28, wag-'n-bietjie 32, 28, etc. all (qv): or sign. used almost exclusively by Africans in terms usu. of earlier coinage than (3) Kaffir e.g. almanac 13, beans 14, beer 8, corn 11, 14, eating house 2, 15, groundnuts 14, manna 11, piano 15, pot 18, print 5, sheeting 5, 18, tobacco 28, 8: the form Kaffer usu. prefixed to Afk. words e.g. baai 5, 18, brood(bread) 28, grondboontjie(groundnut) 14, vink(finch) 3 all (qv). cf. Austr. prefix 'blackfellow's-' sign. aboriginal as in bread, button: also U.S. prefix nigger- as in daisy, fish, toe, weed etc., Canad. prefix Indian- as in dog, brandy, corn, blanket etc.

(6) Kaffir almanac, n.

13, 24. Two species of Haemanthus, see Almanac 17.

Kaffir almanac so called in Natal, because the Zulus sow their mealies when this plant is in flower. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

(6) Kafferbaai ['kafə(r), baɪ] n.

5, 18. See sheeting 5, 18.

(6) Kaffir bean(s) n. usu. pl.

11, 14. Vigna sinensis: Cow peas, cultivated usu. by Africans as a vegetable.

Brown Haricot ... Mixed Cow Peas or Kaffir Beans ...
Farmer's Weekly Advt. 3. 1. 68

(6) Kaffir bean tree n.

32. Erythrina caffra: see boom 32.

This day Henry found the chain we lost at the top of a Kaffre bean tree where the monkey had got fast... Thomas Shone Diary II 29. 8. 1839

Kaffirboom. ... black pods containing bright red beans with a black spot, known as 'Kaffir beans' or 'lucky beans'. Beeton Index of English Usage in S. A. Vol. I No. 2 1970

(6) Kaffir beer, n.

8. Also KB 8, now also Bantu beer 8, 30, (commercially available in cartons), mqomboti 8, 2; maiza 8; tshwala 8, 2; utywala 8, 2. Orig. a home-brewed fermented beverage made from malted grain usu. (6) kaffir corn, also maize: now brewed on a large scale by municipal breweries for beer halls (qv) 8, 15: see also quot. at suurpap 7. [occ. Coll. 'whitewash']

"Kaffir beer" means the drink commonly brewed by natives - from kaffir corn or millet or other grain, and ... includes fermented liquor made from prickly pears ... fermented liquor made from honey (commonly called honey beer) and any other fermented liquor which the Governor-General may from time to time, by proclamation in the Gazette, declare to be included in this definition ... Act 21 of 1923 Section 29 Statutes of the Union of S. A.

It is true that on many occasions in urban areas, for births, ancestor-worship ceremonies, and so on, kaffir beer is bought from the municipal breweries and partaken of with due ceremony and circumspection by many urban Africans. L. Longmore The Dispossessed 1959

(6) Kaffir boom, [-bvəm] n. pl. -s

32. Erythrina caffra: also known in the early days as Coral tree or Corallodendrum. cf. Jam. E. coral bean tree, Erythrina corallodendron. A large deciduous tree with spiny trunk and usu. bright scarlet flowers. The timber is light and cork-like, the leaves thought to be toxic to stock. Its seeds, also scarlet, are called by some lucky beans (qv) 18 or

(6) Kaffir beans: see Kaffir bean tree 32.

... the Erythrina Caffra or Corallodendrum, known among the Dutch farmers and English colonists as the Kafferboom. This often grows into a large and umbrageous tree, and is sometimes met with standing apart. In the spring season it is covered with innumerable blossoms, of a brilliant scarlet colour, giving it a very gorgeous appearance. Shaw Story of My Mission in S.E. Africa 1860

(6) Kaffir bread/brood(tree/boom), ['brvət ,bvəm] n. pl. -s

28. Any of several species of Encephalartos with pith rich in starch: see Hottentot bread 28, Broodboom 28.

Two plants of the palm tribe were frequently met with, one, the zania cycadis or Kaffer's Breadtree, growing on the plains ... J. Barrow Travels 1801 cit. M.D.W. Jeffreys

(6) Kaffir corn, n.

11. Any of several species of Sorghum esp. S. caffrorum widely cultivated for its grain, which ground is used for porridge, and when sprouted for making (6) Kaffir beer (qv) 8. Sprouted ~ is known also as mtombo (qv) 8 or uitloop (qv) 8: see quot. at suurpap 7.

Mealies, Kafir Corn, Ration Meal, Flour, Mealie Meal, Kafir Corn Meal, ... Transvaal and Boer Tobacco ... Grahamstown Journal 20.9.1892

KAFFIR CORN AND MALT Excellent Kaffircorn Malt ... Best quality Mixed Kaffircorn ... Sprouted Kaffircorn ... Fine Kaffircorn Meal ... Farmer's Weekly 7.11.73

(6) Kaffir crane, n. pl. -s

3. Also mahem (qv) 3, either of two species of Balearica, B. regulorum and B. pavonia: a slate grey crane with a crown or tuft of black plume s hence also crowned crane: also applied to Bugeranus carunculatus, the wattled crane.

(6) kaffir dog, n. pl. -s

10, 11. Also kaffir brak, see brak 11. A mongrel usu. African owned: also used of an ill-kempt, uncared for dog: see quot. at brak 11. cf. Ang. Ind. pye-/pi(e)-dog.

Long after the trumpet had sounded Young Hopeful would be seen making his way toward the parade, putting his accoutrements on as he came and invariably two or three Kaffir dogs following him. Buck Adams Narrative 1884

(6) kaffir eating house, n. pl. -es

2, (30). See quot: also at eating house 15.

Kaffir eating house ... is a house in which a person carries on the business of supplying meals to natives. Bell's S. Afr. Legal Dictionary 3rd edit. 1951

(6) kaffir finch/fink/vink, n. pl. -es, -s

3, Any of several species of small S. Afr. birds including Coliopasser or Diatropura procne procne, or C. ardens ardens, with long black tail feathers: see widowbird 3 and sakabula 3: also used of the red and the golden Bishop Bird (qv) 3 Pyrolemana oryx or P. taha.

... the Kaffir finch, whose black and white plumage and red throat were set off by his long streaming tail, the feathers of which are so prolonged that they droop into a perfect arch, and when flying nearly overbalance him. Lucas Camp Life and Sport in S. A. 1878

(6) kaffir fowl, n. pl. -s

10, 11. A usu. scraggy fowl of indeterminate breed.

When I was a child kaffir fowls were a regular article of commerce on the East London market. Woman aged about 60 ex East London.

(6) kaffir groundnut/kaffergrondboontjie [ˈkafə(r)'xrɔ̃ntbũĩnkĩ, -cĩ] n.

2, 14. Voandzeia subterranea: see izindlubu 2, 14, 7: also called bambarra (ground) nut and Jugo bean (qv) 14.

(6) kaffir honeysuckle, n.

13, 32. Tecomaria capensis: see Cape honeysuckle 13, 32.

(6) kaffir manna, n.

11. Pennisetum americanum (or typhoides): large perennial grasses extensively cultivated by Africans for grain which resembles (6) Kaffir corn (qv) 11: see also babbala 11.

[Eng. manna, Setaria (Panicum) italica, Italian or Hungarian millet]

(6) kaffir melon, n. pl. -s

14. Also Kaffir watermelon 14 and t'samma(melon), karkoer and makataan 14 all(qv) Citrullus vulgaris, (lanatus) or C. caffer poor varieties of water-melon cultivated as a succulent feed for stock, used also for waatlemoen-konfyt 7: see konfyt 7.

*

(6) kaffir piano, n. pl. -s

2, 15. Also calabash piano 2, 15; marimba 2, 15; mbira (qv) 2, 15: [[Mashona piano 2, 15]]. An indigenous musical instrument similar to a xylophone but usu. played with the fingers, often suspended over calabashes, sometimes containing water, as resonators: hence calabash (qv) piano 15: see quot. at mbira 2, 15.

... the development of African musical instruments, such as xylophones or mbira (so-called kaffir pianos), upon which Africans may play their traditional music and interchange tribal compositions without having recourse to expensive foreign instruments. Handbook on Race Relations in S. A. 1949

(6) kaffir plum, n. pl. -s

32, 14. Harpephyllum caffrum, a tall flowering tree with large, sourish fruit resembling a plum, eaten by Africans: also yielding a prized reddish timber 18.

(6) kaffir pot, n. pl. -s

18. An almost spherical black iron pot on three legs used for cooking over an open fire, obtainable from smallest to very large sizes: [also used in white households as coal scuttles, flower containers or for camp cookery.]

Outside, on the stoep, were the single-furrow American ploughs, a pile of yokes, trek-gear, and three-legged Kaffir pots of various sizes, chained together by their handles. Stuart Cloete Hill of Doves 1942

... lard it well with fat bacon and cook it slowly in the good old three-legged kaffir pot ... Lawrence Green Full Many a Glorious Morning 1968

see quot. at skerm 18.

(6) kaffir print, n.

5. Also German print, (Duitse sis), African print, bloudruk: inexpensive cotton material usu. of blue or brown, closely printed with geometrical or floral designs, now also printed in shaped skirt panels.

(6) kaffir sheep, n. pl. -∅

11. A crossbred sheep inferior for slaughter purposes.

The breeds of sheep mostly encountered in these areas are the Blackhead Persian and the "kaffir" sheep the former being superior for mutton purposes. The "Kaffir" breed is scraggy and of poor conformation. Both breeds are very hardy and resistant to heartwater ... Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

*

(6) kaffir orange, n. pl. -s

14. See ²klapper 14.

(6) kaffir sheeting, n.

18, 5. Thick soft cotton material, coarsely woven, used for some African dress and favoured for inexpensive home-decorating, [not for sheets.]

... a coarse white cotton cloth called 'Kaffir sheeting' from which all Qaba dress is made ... J. Broster Red Blanket Valley 1967

SUPERIOR HEAVY QUALITY KAFFIR SHEETING Here's fantastic value for every home ... first quality Kaffir Sheeting with a novelty surface textured effect that goes with every decor. Available in 10 decorator shades that add a perfect touch to every room. Washable, colourfast and hangs well. E. Province Herald Advt 27. 3. 74

[A fk. kaffer baai = kaffer baize; see linnebaai 5]

(6) kaffir tea/tee, n.

7, 16, 28. Certain species of Compositae esp. of Helichrysum used in an infusion as a medicinal tea for colds and respiratory disorders: see also hotnotstee 28, 16.

(6) kaffir tobacco, n.

28, 8. Early term for (3) dagga (qv) 8, 16, now prob. obs.

When I was a lad dagga was known as "kaffir" tobacco and had a vast sale at 1s. a lb. Sunday Times 13. 2. 71

(6) kaffir trader, n. pl. -s

19, 30. A merchant often in a remote district largely occupied by Africans dealing usu. in foodstuffs, inexpensive goods and (6) truck (qv) 30.

(6) kaffir truck, n.

30. Buttons, beads, brass wire, trinkets and cheap soft goods, the somewhat tawdry stock-in-trade of the kaffir trader (qv) 30 collectively known as truck 30.

General Merchants and Importers, Soft Goods and Kafir Truck a Speciality. Braby's Directory 1950

Before long the more sophisticated Xhosas returned to barter their possessions for red clay. They demanded beads, buttons, trinkets and other kaffir truck in return for their goods. F. C. Metrowich Frontier Flames 1968

(6) kaffer-wag-'n-bietjie, [!'vaxŋ, bīkī, -cī] n.

17, 32. Acacia caffra: see (3) katdoring 28, 32.

kahle ['gaʔe] interj.

9. Exclamation enjoining caution, 'Take care', 'Watch out' etc.

cf. oppas 9: see also hamba truck 2, 10, go garshly 10, and go well 9.

[fr. Zu. -hle, kahle = well, softly]

kaiing(s) ['kaiɪŋs] n. usu. pl.

7. Greaves or brow(n)sels: the crisp pieces from which fat has been rendered down.

... the food now to be considered is not commonly met and certainly does not appear on any menu. But it is traditional in the Cape. Kaiings are little bits of crisp fat which remain when sheep's fat is rendered down into dripping. ... They must be eaten piping hot and, as they are very rich, should be approached by anyone over the age of sixteen with great restraint. Farmer's Weekly 25. 4. 73

[Afk. prob. fr. pl. kaaien of Du. kaan = residue of melted tallow]

kak [kak] interj. n. modifier

Slang. Unaccept. 9. Excrement: as interj. an expletive, also in vb phr. gaan ~, a savage dismissal, equiv. of 'go to hell' etc.; as n. modifier equiv. of U.S. 'crappy'. [Also used esp. by children as equiv. of 'rubbish' e.g. 'The sermon was the biggest lot of ~ I've ever heard.'] cf. Austr. bullsh, Jam. E. caca filth, excrement, anything dirty: also as vb: also Brit. low Coll. cack: [not equiv. of Austr. hardcack, bad luck.]

... you may remember that a former mayor of Naboomspruit once described Naboomspruit as a kak ou dorpie. Have you any comment on that? Sunday Times 12. 9. 71

And the final big moment came when the visiting actress says "Goodbye - and in your beautiful Afrikaans - gaan k-." Cape Times 27. 1. 73

[Afr. fr. Du. kak = excrement fr. Lat. cacare = to defaecate]

akebeenwa/wagon ['kakə,biən'va] n. pl. -ens

31, 26. A type of wagon used by early pioneers: see description.

Chief of these are two ox-waggon, their wide heavy bed-planks, worn with much use. They are what is known as "akebeen" (jawbone) waggon, because of the high, upright sides, sloping like the jawbone of an ox or a horse. The Drostdy at Swellendam (Catalogue)

[Afk. akebeen = jaw bone + wa fr. Du. wagen cogn. wagon]

kakelaar ['kākə,la r] n. pl. -s

3. ^xIrrisor viridis or red billed hoopoe, which gets its name from its loud and strident voice; also called monkey bird 3.

Its voice is harsh and resounding, and has acquired for it the name of Kackela among the Dutch, which signifies the 'Chatterer'. Layard & Sharpe Birds of S. A. 1875-84 cit. Pettman

[fr. Du. kakel(en) = to chatter, cogn. cackle + agent. suff. -aar]

kakiebos ['kākī,bōs] n.

11,28. See (3)khaki 28. Tagetes a source of essential oil: see quot.

Many a South African farmer who fights a losing battle trying to clear his fields of persistent "kakiebos" would shed tears at the sight of the devotedly cultivated fields of "tagetes" (kakiebos) on the farm. Kakiebos would also be regarded by most people as an unlikely raw material for producing fragrant perfumes. Panorama May 1974

¹kalander [ˌka'landə(r)] n. pl. -s

21, 11. Calandra granaria: the grain weevil which breeds in stored grain.

Wheat, maize and other cereals which are stored, are susceptible to attack, particularly by two small insects - the grain weevil or kalander, and the grain moth - and these insects do great damage annually ... Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. kalander = weevil prob. fr. Lat. name]

²kalander, n. modifier

18, 32. Podocarpus falcatus, the Outeniqua yellowwood: usu. in combination ~ yellowwood.

The highest prices a cubic metre of timber realised at the sales were: stinkwood R1 360, yellowwood R260, kalander yellowwood R230, blackwood R250 and witels R150. E. Province Herald 21. 9. 74

[corruption of Outeniekwalander a dweller in, or native of Outeniqualand, the Knysna-George district.]

kalkoentjie [kal'kuĩnkĩ, -ci] n. pl. -s

(1) 13. Any of several species of Iridaceae esp. Gladiolus alatus, and various Tritoniae; named for their scarlet colouring resembling the wattles of a turkey.

Flowers bloomed everywhere in the warm sunshine - gladioli, ixias, iris, heaths every shade of colour, from the crimson kalkoentjie to the pure white chinchinchees. Dorothea Fairbridge That Which Hath Been 1913

(2) 3. The S. Afr. bird Macronyx capensis

To scamper across these Flats is like riding on the top of a Scotch or Yorkshire moor, and only for the scream of some excited kalkoentjie circling over its nest in the heather, the scene is as quiet and subdued as the heart of man can desire. A Lady Life at the Cape 100 Years Ago 1870, 1963 edit.

[Afk. kalkoen = turkey + dimin. suff. -tjie]

kalya, n.

7, 25. An Indian dish of spiced chicken or mutton cooked with dhai 7, 25: see Indian terms 25.

kam(m)assiehout/wood [ka'masi(həvt): n.

32, 18. The timber of Gonioma kamassi, very hard and similar to box wood: called Knysna boxwood or False Cape Box: [when fresh there is an alkaloid toxic principle present in the wood which is dangerous to workers:] 27d. Found in place name Kamassieberg.

Kamassie is found in abundance in the Midland forests, and there it is often known as Knysna boxwood. It is of particular note as it is one of the two timbers regularly exported from South Africa, although in small quantities. The other timber exported is the Cape box for which kamassie wood is often mistaken. Palmer & Pitman Trees of S. Africa 1961

[etym. dub. prob. fr. Hott. name]

kameeldoring [ka'mɪəl,dʒəɾɪŋ] n. pl. -s

32. Also camelthorn tree (qv) 32: Acacia giraffae; see quot. at camelthorn. [Afk. kameel = giraffe fr. cameleopardalis + doring fr. Du. doorn cogn. thorn]

¹-kamma ['kama] n. suff.

27a. Stream, water: found in S. Afr. place names Goukamma, Sapkamma, Keiskamma, Kraggakamma etc. See Burchell quot. with -fontein 27a. [fr. Hott. kamma/o = stream, water]

²kamma ['kama] modifier occ. vb

Slang. 10, 16. Pretended or put on, e.g. spurious illness, sadness etc. is described as ~sick, ~sad etc. [prob. fr. Nama Hott. khamo = like, similar]

kamnassie(hout) [kam'nasi(həʊt)] n.

32. Mytenus cymosa, a greyish spiny shrub with white flowers [not kam(m)assiehout (qv)] 27c. Also in place names Kamnassieberge(n), Kamnassirivier, Kamnassidam. [etym. dub. prob. fr. Hott.]

kanallie, n. pl. -s

3. See ka(r)nallie 3.

kankerbos ['kankə(r),bɔ̃s] n. pl. -se

(1) 32. Euphorbia ingens: see naboom 32.

(2) 32, 16. Sutherlandia frutescens, S.tormentosa and S.microphylla: see cancer bush 32, 16.

[Afk. kanker cogn. cancer + bos cogn. bush]

¹kanna ['kana] n. pl. -s, ∅

(1) Obs. Traveller's term: Hott. name for eland^x (qv) 6, hence ~bos see (2), or khannabos, see ²kanna.

Here we saw with much pleasure, several herds of kannas (or elands) and quakkas grazing at a distance and appearing not much to heed the presence of our party. Burchell Travels II 1824

(2) Also ~bos, species of Salsola: see ganna 28 so called from a belief that eland fed upon it.

[fr. Hott. kanna = eland (elk)]

²kanna ['kana] n.

28, 16. Also ~wortel: Either of two species of Mesembryanthemum: Scelletium tormentosum or S.anatomicum: see hotnotskougoed 16, 28;

[a stimulant earlier erroneously compared with ginseng root and unrelated to the Salsola (gannabos)]

... species of Mezembryanthemum, which is called Channa by the natives, and is exceedingly esteemed among them. Paterson Narrative of Four Journeys 1789 cit. Pettman.

[fr. Hott. plant name channa]

kanniedood ['kan(n)ĩ,dvət] n.

28. Popular name of several species of Aloe Gasteria and Haworthia which are exceptionally drought resistant and can live without food and water, often suspended in a tree or on a verandah hence the name 'air plant': also figur. 19, a diehard. [Afk. kannie = cannot + dood cogn. dead]

-kant [-kant] n. suff.

27e. Side: found in street names e.g. Buitenkant St., Waterkant St.

[Afk. fr. Du. kant = side]

kaparring/ang [,ka'parɨŋ] n. pl. -s

5, 25. Traditional style wooden sandals worn by Malays (qv) 23, 25: see quot., similar to Japanese geta, high-soled wooden sandals.

When Lady Duff-Gordon saw them the men wore the toudang - a wide, pointed straw hat - over a red and white handkerchief bound turban-wise about their heads, and on their feet kaparangs or clogs, as the old-fashioned Malays still wear them. Fairbridge cit. Du Plessis The Cape Malays 1944

By the end of the nineteenth century Oriental dress had been discarded; but certain characteristic features have been preserved. Kaparrings, (probably from the Javanese gamparan: wooden sandals with a knot to push between the big and second toes) are still in use. Du Plessis and Luckhoff The Malay Quarter and its People 1953

[Afk. prob. fr. Javanese gambarran = sandal]

kapater [ka'patə(r)] n. pl. -s

11. A castrated goat: see also hamel 11.

One poor farmer on the coast decided to go in for breeding goats, so he went to Grahamstown where he bought a number for this purpose. Proudly he returned to his location with them, only to be informed by a more knowledgeable friend that they were all kapaters! F. C. Metrowich Frontier Flames 1968

[Afk. fr. Du. kapater fr. capade = eunuch fr. Port. capado = castrated]

kappie ['kapi] n. pl. -s

(1) 5. A large sunbonnet usu. of white lawn or linen freq. tucked and embroidered in intricate designs, worn by Voortrekker (qv) women and still by Volkspelers (qv) 19, 15 in costume: see also quot. at (1) Voortrekker 19 and moederkappie 13: in combination ~ sis 5: see quot. at bloudruk 5.

In the Dutch community, linen caps and scarves, popular since Van Riebeeck's day, have developed into the kappie, later to be the most typical feature of the Voortrekker woman's costume. . . . The fichu and the kappie were typical features of a Voortrekker woman's dress. The kappies, particularly, were beautifully embroidered in quaint original designs. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

(2) Coll. 23. figur. term for the circumflex used in Afk. as in kêrel, indicating a lengthening and lowering of the e vowel: see pronunciation table.

[Afk. fr. Du. kapje = little hood]

Karakul [ˈkæɾəˌkul] n. prop. pl. -∅

11, 5. The breed name of so-called 'Persian Lamb', a long haired fat-tailed sheep somewhat like the Ronderib Afrikander (qv) 11: see Swakara 5.

As the word Persian refers to a different breed of sheep in this country, a certain amount of confusion is bound to result from its use, so it is suggested that the true breed name "Karakul" be retained for general use in South Africa. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937 [breed name]

karamat, n. pl. -s

25. See kramat 25.

karanteen [ˈkæɾənˈtin, ˈka-] n.

12. The small marine fish Sarpa salpa or Crenidens crenidens, also called bamboofish and stre(e)pie,^{qv} often used by anglers as bait.

The Eastern Cape Bamvoosie (derived from Bamboo fish) is known in Natal as the Karanteen and in other parts as the streepie. E. Province Herald 15. 7. 71

karbonaadjie [ˌka(r)bəˈnɑːkɪ, -cɪ] n. pl. -s

7. Various sp. also carbonaadjie (qv) and karmenaadjie. Mutton cutlets or 'collops' usu. braai'd (qv) 7, 29vb over a fire: [also, rare, a present of meat from a neighbour who has slaughtered an animal.]

... I joined half a dozen burgher officers in a tent, and discussed with them mutton broth, and the well known South African karbonatje. This last consists of pieces of meat roasted on a peeled forked stick, fat alternately with lean, and with a sprinkling of salt and pepper. ... With a field appetite, this is the true way to relish mutton. Vive la karbonatje! Alexander Western Africa I 1837

I also recall 'sosaties', a meat dish roasted on sticks, 'karbonatjes' (a sort of cutlet - quite a palatable dish)... and many other specialities of the old South African kitchen. Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

[fr. Du. karbonade cogn. Fr. carbonade fr. Lat. carbones = grilled meat]

Also loan word in Eng. carbonado, scored, grilled meat.

karrehout/boom/moer, n.

32, 18. See karree

karem [ˈkærəm] n.

25, 15. A Cape Malay game related to billiards, played on a board with a cue and discs not balls, now gaining general popularity.

Mr. Ishmail Floris (84), grandson of a Malay, invented the game Karem many years ago and he still makes boards for this game, as he has done for 25 years. The game has been played by Cape Malays for the last quarter of a century. It came into being one day, when a visiting Indian asked Mr. Floris ... to copy a board that was used for a game in which people flicked discs with their fingers. Panorama Aug. 1974

ka(r)koer [ka(r)ku:r, -və] n. pl. -s

14. Citrullus lanatus or C. vulgaris: see kaffir melon 14, also t'samma 14.

... only one water-melon was on sale. Rube had a passion for them, and the dorp's licensed comedian suborned a "Coolie" to bid him up. At 7s. 6d. the Indian dropped out and Rube seized the prize, cut it greedily at once and found that it was only a "karkoer", the "Kafir pumpkin" which grows as a weed amongst the mealie-crops. Prance Tante Rebella's Saga 1937

[etym. dub. poss. Hott. fr. Bantu cakulo]

ka(r)nallie [;ka(r)'nali] n. pl. -s

3. One of the names of the fiscal shrike^x or butcher bird: see Jan Fiskal 3.

[Afk. fr. Du. kanalje cogn. Fr. canaille fr. Lat. canis = dog]

Karoo, n. prop.

See Kar(r)oo.

karos(s) [kə'rops, kə'ɔ's] n. pl. -ses, -es

(1) 5, 2. Traditional clothing of certain tribes made of skins; also combinations fore(voor) ~ and hind(agter) ~: see quot. at ngubu 2, 5.

... but the rest of their body was quite uncovered, except by a bundle of small greasy leathern aprons ... These aprons, which they distinguish into fore-kaross and hind-kaross, and which are tied just over the hips, are their only permanent clothing: for the large kaross, or cloak, is only worn, or thrown off, agreeable to the weather or the fancy of the wearer. Burchell Travels I 1822

(2) 18. A blanket of sewn skins used on a bed or occ. on the floor.

On leaving, Mr Webster made me a present of a very handsome kaross - a number of skins sewn together. Buck Adams Narrative 1884

Shall I take the blanket from the Baas's bed? Shall I bring the Baas's best karos, the one of silver jackal skins, or the rooikat? Stuart Cloete Hill of Doves 1942

[Afk. fr. Hott. (k)caro-s = skin blanket]

karree [kə'ri:, -ɪə] n.

(1) 8, . . . Also kiri: Honey beer (qv) 8 or a drink prepared fr. prickly pear syrup: see quot. at kaffir beer 8, 2, ~ moer (kirimoeer) 8, 7: the powdered root of any of several plants esp. Trichodiadema stellatum used as the ferment in making (1) ~, used acc. Pettman by Karoo housewives as leaven for baking bread: [~ berries 14 are used for making mampoer: see quot. at mampoer 8: see karreehout 32]

Detective Ferreira said that the sample produced was "karriemoer" with water. It was not exactly kaffir beer. E. Province Herald 27.8.1925

They use kareemoer, a powdered root, as yeast; and when water is added there is a strong drink such as primitive people made in many lands when the world was young. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

(2) karree- 27c. Also in place names Karreedouw, Kareemountains/berge.

[Afk. fr. Hott. karib]

karreehout/boom [ka'ri:həʊt/bvəm, kəriə-] n.

32, 18. Any of several species of Rhus more esp. R. lancea (bastard willow) and R. viminalis and their timber: some of which are also known as taaibos (qv) 32: their fruit, karree berries 14, are used for making mampoer 8.

Because the Sandveld is a semi-desert, the local carpenter's wood resources were stunted trees and shrubs. He drew not only from the farm orange grove, but from the wild olive and mulberry in his environs, the syringa and bastard willow (karree) that grew next to the river ... Baraitser and Obholzer Cape Country Furniture 1971 [fr. karoo acc. C.A. Smith Common Names of S.Afr. Plants 1966]

Kar(r)oo [k ə'ru:, -və]

(1) n. prop. 22, 27a. The arid plateau or semi-desert regions: the Great ~ and the Little ~; cf. use in second quot.

Betwixt the Zwarteberg and Nieuveld or last great chain, extend the immense arid deserts called by the Hottentot name of Karroo, where no human creature has yet attempted to fix a habitation ... James Ewart Journal 1811-14

... throwing up clouds of dust from the arid ground, which is here quite a karroo, and miserably parched and poor. Thompson Travels in S. Afr. I 1827

... the Karoo, the semi-arid but healthy plateau that covers nearly one-third of South Africa's interior, and which supports the world's second-largest sheep population. Panorama Sept. 1971

[Afk. fr. Hott. karo = dry]

(2) n. prefix. as in ~ area 22, ~ climate 33, ~ coal (qv) 18, ~ soil 11, ~ veld 22, 11 see (2) veld, ~ bush (qv) 28, 11, etc. and very numerous plant species indicating their habitat hence deriv.

Kar(r)oid adj. 29adj. of or pertaining to the (1) Kar(r)oo.

Kar(r)oo bush/bos, n.

28, 11. Generic name of numerous varieties of scrub-like bush, some useful as fodder, some toxic or semi-toxic, or noxious weeds:

bitter ~ 28 Chrysocoma tenuifolia, see bitterbos 28; ~ thorn 28

Acacia Karoo regarded as an undesirable species in the problem of plant migration: ~ buchu/boegoe an aromatic shrub Diosma

oppositifolia similar to the genuine medicinal buchu Agathosma betulina,

unpalatable as grazing: sweet ~ or goeie(good) ~ Phymaspermum

parvifolium a valuable fodder-pasture for sheep, also Pentzia incana

(ankerkaroo).

Most of the valuable Karoo bushes give off a sweet aromatic perfume when bruised between the fingers, and the flavour appears to be agreeable to the palates of herbivorous animals. The mild degree of bitterness which characterises the extractive matter is rather appreciated than objected to by them. The plants which animals neglect are deficient in these characteristics. Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

Unpalatable thorny types such as bitter bush, thorny figs, buchu Karoo bushes and Karoo thorn types are to be found on the western Karoo route [of plant migration]. E. Province Herald 28. 2. 73

Abundant water ... 13 excellent camps with water, outstanding sweet karoo grazing carrying 1200 sheep. Farmer's Weekly 21. 4. 72

Kar(r)oo caterpillar, n. pl. -s

21, 11. A voracious pest which causes rapid deterioration of the (2)veld (qv) 11 by destroying the grazing: see rusper 21, *and quot. at addenda p. 583.*

Kar(r)oo coal, n.

18, 10. Dried mis (qv) 18 used as fuel: see also quot. at Free State (coal) 18.

... it's no joke starting a fire with only dry dung for fuel. Karoo coal we call it down at the Cape. Van Alphen Jan Venter S.A.P. 1929.

Kar(r)oo encroachment, n. phr.

11. A serious veld and soil conservation problem freq. the result of over-grazing: see quot., also Stock Reduction Scheme 4b.

Karoo encroachment is a serious matter, meaning as it does in plainer words, a spreading outwards of the desert and semi-desert that so limits the farming potential of the inland plateau. E. Province Herald 14. 6. 73

Kar(r)oo veld, n.

22, 11. (2)veld supporting vegetation typical of Karoid areas: see (2)Kar(r)oo 22, also Kar(r)oo bush 28.

Although there is no doubt about it that the perennial bushes form the staple, and at times indeed the only, means of subsistence in the Karroo veld, grasses and many annual "weeds" are by no means to be despised as food for stock. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

Kar(r)oo wilg/willow, n. pl. -s [V≠X]

32. See pepper tree 32.

(-)kas [kas] n. usu. suff.

(1) 18. Cupboard: usu. suffixed to n. e.g. hoek (qv) ~, jonkmans ~ (qv), klere(clothes) ~, kos ~ (qv), linne(linen) ~, all 18.

The Dekenah kas is characteristic of the Riversdale District. These cupboards are typically made of yellowwood and teak and are of the wardrobe type with two drawers at the bottom. Baraitser and Obholzer Cape Country Furniture 1971

Country koskas with one gauze door. Ibid.

(2) ~, the, n. prop.

Slang. 10. Gaol: as in 'he landed up in the ~': see also trunk 4b. [Afk. kas fr. Du. kast = chest, wardrobe, cupboard]

-kat [kat] n. suff.

6. Cat: suffixed to names of various animals e.g. rooi ~* (qv) 6; muskeljaat ~^x (qv) 6; kommetjiegat ~†6, [also ^{octopus,} see ~ 12.]

28. prefixed to the names of certain plants e.g. ~ doring (qv) ~ bos, Lycium hirsutum, also species of Asparagus, see katdoring ~ pisbossie, Acalypha angustata; ~ naels Hyobanche sanguinea etc.: also in dimin. form ~ jie, ^(see joined cactus) ~ piering (gardenia) (qv) 13.

kat- [kat] n. prefix

27d. Cat: found as prefix in S. Afr. place names Katrivier, Katberg, Katteriver.

[Afk. fr. Du. kat cogn. cat]

katdoring ['kat,dʊərɪŋ] n. pl. -s

(1) 28, 32. Scutia myrtina: see bobbejaantou 28, droog-my-keel 28.

(2) 28, 11. Several species of Asparagus the thorns of which do damage to sheep and goat fleeces.

(3) 32. Sometimes applied to Acacia caffra the kaffir wag-'n-bietjie (qv) 32.

katel ['kɑtl] n. pl. -s

(1) 18, 31, 26. A light weight bedstead, portable and often thonged with riempies (qv) ^{see also trekbed:} 18: part of the essential trek gear (qv) 26, 31 on wagon journeys: cf. Ang. Ind. cot.

... and were weary enough at night to sleep soundly on their reim-bottomed kaatles without either feather-beds or curtains.
H. H. Dugmore Reminiscences of an Albany Settler 1870, *pub. 1871*.

... the African Trek Wagon was really a caravan in which people lived as they travelled. This meant the addition of several features unknown to the European wheelwright: the katel or bed ... is the most interesting of these, a word ... that is said to come from Hindustani. This was a wooden frame on which rawhide thongs were interwoven. It was carried under the wagon-tilt by day and brought out at night ... H. V. Morton In Search of S. A. 1948

(2) 25, 18. The bier used by Cape Malays in the ceremonies for their dead.

Three sheets of linen or kaffang are now wrapped round the body, which may be perfumed with aromatic oils and rose petals. The body is then transferred to the stretcher or katil. Du Plessis & Luckhoff The Malay Quarter and People 1953

[Afk. fr. Malay katil fr. Hindi/Tamil kattil = a bedstead poss. via Port.]

katjepiering [ˌkɑkɪˈpɪrɪŋ] n.

13. Any of several species of Gardenia including G. jasminoides, G. Thunbergia and G. florida.

There are no formal speeches, no costly gifts, but friends bring the first daphne of the year, the richest purple violets, the sweetest katjepierings, until the house is heavy with the perfume of flowers ... Fairbridge That Which Hath Been 1913

[Afk. katjie = kitten + piering fr. Malay piring = saucer (prob. by folk etymology) Malay kachapiring, the Cape jasmine,]

katkop ['kat,kɔ̃p] n.

Coll. 7. Used in various districts, ^{1957 from Afrikaans N.Z. Cape} sign. bread loaves of different kinds - sometimes doughy 'batch' type bread, cottage loaf or even occ. a standard loaf baked in a tin, ^{said to originate from brisbane see just.} cf. N.Z. barracouta, long 2lb. loaf, Jam. E. woman-breast small soft loaf etc.

~~That's not a katkop - it's an ordinary loaf. Schoolboy ex N.E. Cape Dec. 1973~~

[Afk. kat cogn. cat + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

katonkel [kə'tɔ̃kəl] n. pl. -

12. Also katunker: either of two fish Sarda sarda of the Thynnidae, also known as bonito, or the Spanish mackerel Scomberomorus commersoni called in Natal Barracuda or 'Cuda. cf. Austr. couta/coota.

... recalled the days, not so long ago, when katonkel (barracuda) abounded just off Port Elizabeth. Evening Post 27. 5. 72

Somewhat similar to the albacore ... is the katonkel, although he is, I believe, more nearly related to the tunny, the largest of all our fish, Farmer's Weekly 18. 4. 73

.. found that while the tunny in those waters took feather lures, the so-called barracuda family, to which the katonkel belongs, would not take feather lures but occasionally took bright spinners. E. Province Herald 1. 8. 74

[etym. dub. Afk. prob. fr. Malay fish name Ketung or Katjang]

kattebak ['katə,bak] n. pl. -s

31. The dickey seat of an old-fashioned motor car. cf. U.S. rumble seat.

My mother sat in front with my father and the two babies on her lap and the other three of us were strapped in with a big leather strap where the kattebak should be. Informant Guy Butler 25. 11. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. kattebak = boot or seat attached to a vehicle]

katunker [kə'tɔ̃kə(r)] n. pl. -∅

12. See katonkel 12.

kaya ['kaɪa] n. pl. -s

18, 2. See kia 18, 2.

K.B. ['keɪ,bi] n.

8, 2. See Kaffir beer 8, 2. [acronym Kaffir Beer]

keer [keɪ(r)] vb trns. and intrns.

(1) Sect. Farm. 11, 29vb. To direct or check animals being herded.

(2) 27f. Usu. om: turn round: found in S. Afr. place names Keerom, Keerom Koppie, Keerom Street: see also draai 27f.

[Afk. keer = to turn (+ om = round)]

kehla [keɬa] n. pl. -s

19, 2. An elderly African man, often a councillor, wearing a headring (qv) 2, 5: see quot. at headring 2, 5.

The old Zulu 'khehlas' and councillors felt that it was improper for a king of the Zulu nation to marry a divorcee. Drum Nov. 1964

[A.E.] 1. Endearing mode of address to a young boy equiv. of 'old chap'.

Come kehla let me brush your hair. Oral Informant (Zulu) 12. 3. 74

[Ngu. Khehla = a man with a headring, elderly man]

Kei apple [kaɪ-] n. pl. -s

14, 32. Also Dingaan's apricot 14: Dovyalis caffra esp. abundant in the Transkei and Pondoland area, a densely spiny shrub used for hedges, or its fragrant but acid fruit which is used for jam and jelly.

The kei-apple is known to many gardeners as a spiny shrub which makes a stout impenetrable hedge ... The fruit is roundish, with a diameter of from 1 to 1½ inches, velvety, and bright yellow when ripe, with a very acid flavour. Palmer and Pitman Trees of S. Afr. 1961

[fr. Kei, name of river]

kenner ['kenə(r)] n. pl. -s

19. A knowledgeable person, connoisseur.

... we found the champion red wine beautifully delicate but neither full bodied nor deep coloured ... one of the kenners told me this could possibly be because the young vines in the newly planted red grape vineyards hadn't yet got their roots down to the sub-soil. Cape Times 30. 8. 73

[Afk. ken fr, Du. kennen = ^{to} know cogn. Fr. conner + agent. suff. -er]

kennetjie ['kenɪkɪ, -ci] n.

(1) 15. The 'tipcat', a small wooden peg tapered at each end and with which the game ~ is played.

(2) The game tipcat in which the (1) ~ or tipcat is struck at one end and then batted as far away as possible by the same player.

The kennetjie itself was a piece of wood about five inches in length, and an inch and a half in diameter, tapered off at both ends. It was laid on the ground, the player then struck one end smartly with his stick, and if it rose high enough he was able to beat it away as it fell, and run ... But ... the law intervened, and kennetjie was pronounced a dangerous nuisance in the streets. De Kock The Fun They Had 1955

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Frisian kunje fr. Lat. cuneus = wedge via Fr.]

kērel [ke:r əl] n. pl. -s

(1) 1. A mode of address usu. pl. equiv. of 'chaps', unless ou ~ 'old chap': see quot. at (1) jong.

"Go right through, kērels," he said, "the dancing is in the voorhuis. The peach brandy is in the kitchen." Bosman Mafeking Road 1947, 1969 edit.

(2) 19, 15. A chap, fellow, sometimes in the sense of boy-friend 15; often in the combination slim ~ (qv) 19, a tricky, cunning fellow.

... the general's excellent defensive arrangements ... soon put a stop to their proceedings; but not before the "slim carles" had played Mr. -- an ugly trick. Alexander Western Africa II 1837

[Afk. karel cogn. O.E. ceorl, also carl]

Kerk [kerk, kək] n. prop.

4a. The Dutch Reformed Church (qv) 4a: also 18 a church building, usu. D.R.C. (qv) 4a. cf. Scottish kirk, and in place names 27e

Kerk Straat, Kerkplein; for ~ huis see nagmaalhuis 18

The Dutch farmers were tearing home from Kerk in their carts - well-dressed, prosperous-looking folks, with capital horses. Duff Gordon Letters 1861-62

[Afk. kerk = church]

Kerkbode, Die [dī'kerk, bʷədə] n. prop.

4a. The official organ of the D.R.C. (qv) 4a in which Church news is published, and the names of newly qualified dominees (qv) 19, 4a are brought to the notice of gemeentes (qv) 4a that may wish to 'call' them.

Afrikaans churches agreed with at least two amendments to the draft Bill on Publications and Entertainment, according to an editorial in the latest issue of Die Kerkbode, official organ of the NG Kerk. Evening Post 4. 3. 74

[Afk. kerk = church + bode = messenger]

Kerkraad ['kerk, rat, 'kək-] n. pl. -s, -en

4a. The parish council of a Dutch Reformed Church (qv) 4a: see quotal kerkraad

At yesterday's meeting of the Dutch Reformed Church Synod ...^{19, 17.} a delegate asked what actions should be taken in cases of members of the Kerkraad who participated in dances and races. E. Province Herald 4. 5. 1906

Although both their husbands were members of the kerkraad Mrs. -- discouraged a friendship with Mrs. --. Sunday Times 10. 9. 72

[Afk. kerk = church + raad = council]

-kerrie, knob- ['nɒbkeri] n.

20, 2. See kierie 20, 2.

kersbos(sie) ['kers, bʷs(i)] n. (pl. -s)

32, 16. Also Bushman's candle or Boesmankers: Sarcocaulon Burmannii, also S. Patersonii and S. rigidum, all species of dwarf wax-secreting shrubs which burn like a candle even when fresh, not to be confused with kers(ie)hout 32, 18. 16 S. Burmannii and S. Patersonii were used for the treatment of diarrhoea by Hottentots, and the ground roots by colonists as substitute for a mustard plaster. [S. rigidum in decoction was used as an abortifacient by the Hottentots.] 27c. Also in place name Dwarskers bos. [Afk. kers fr. Du. kaars = candle + bos(ch) cogn. bush]

kershout ['kers,(h)əʃt] n.

32. Erron. 'candlewood': Rothmannia capensis: so called from some real or fancied resemblance to European cherrywood. [Afk. kers(ie) = cherry, also candle, + hout = wood]

kers(ie)hout ['kers(i),(h)əʃt] n.

32, 18. Pterocelastrus tricuspidatus and other species, so called because of the resemblance of the wood to that of the European cherry: see quot. at hard pear 18. [Afk. kers(ie) = cherry + hout = wood]

kersie ['kersi] n.

3. *Also kersogie: Zosterops capensis (~~capensis~~) or Z. annulosa; see white eye 3, also witogie 3. [Afk. kers = candle + dimin. suff. -ie]

kersogie ['kers,vəxi] n. pl. -s

3. See kersie 3. [Afk. kers = candle + oog = eye + dimin. suff. -ie]

kettle, n. pl. -s

[[Substand.]] 18. Used freq. of a tea or coffee pot: usu. in comb. coffee ~ 18.

We had three days rashes to carrey: our coffe Kittle: our Kanteen for the water or git not one drop for twentey four hours. Goldswain Chronicle Vol. II 1838-58

~~Brass coffee kettle and iron for use with hot charcoal~~ Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

[translit. Afk. ketel]

keurboom ['kʰœ(r),bʋəm] n. pl. -s

32. Virgilia oroboides (capensis): an evergreen shrub or tree with scented pale pink to rosy lavender flowers, growing esp. freely on river banks: see quot. at assegai wood 18: 27c. Also in place name Keurboomsriver, and Keurboomstrand.

The vernacular name appears to have been inspired by the floral beauty of the plants, thus the "pick of all" (Afr:keur) species of (Afr:boom). The name was first recorded by Kolben at the Cape in 1705 ...

C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

[Afk. keur = choice + boom cogn. Ger. Baum = tree]

kgotla ['xötla] n. pl.

2. The meeting place of a tribe where gatherings and discussions are held, also the tribal court: see also lekgotla 2, makgotla 2. cf. N.Z. (Maori) marae.

But the kgotla serves another significant purpose. It gives all Bantu, even the very humblest among them, the right to bring their grievances to the notice of their superiors. The Kgotla is almost sacred ground. It is the place where a man can "Let down his hair", as the saying goes, without fear of reprisal. ... Over the centuries Bantu Law

Willem said here is a kaki. The Tommy rode fast
up to us ... Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

and justice has been controlled by what is known as the kgotla-system.
Peter Becker, S.A.B.C. Bulletin 23. 2. 70

[Sotho (le)kgotla = courtyard, meeting place]

khaki ['kaki] n. pl. -(e)s

(1) 20, 19. (4) Boer name for a British soldier during the Anglo Boer War (qv) 20 on account of the Khaki coloured uniform: [Afk. sp. kakie]

Ubique means the tearin' drift where, breech-
blocks jammed with mud,
The khaki muzzles duck an' lift across the
khaki flood.

Kipling The Five Nations 1903 See also quot. addenda p. 583.

(2) Coll. rare. 19. An English speaking non-Nationalist South African:
see also quot. at smeerlap 1, 19, 10.

Among other things the article says: "We are fighting the English. The fight has been declared against the khakies - the battlefield is wide open. "But first let us dig up the old-old hate against the English." Sunday Times 11. 6. 72

In combination gevaar 4b: see also swartgevaar 4b, roomsegevaar 4b.

Mr. — predicted the three "emotional" fronts the National Party would employ were 'Khakigevaar, swartgevaar, and rooigevaar.' 'Khakigevaar' he said, was merely a new name for 'Boerehaat'. Cape Argus 16. 9. 72

[Hindi khaki = dust-coloured fr. Persian khak = dust]

β) adj. or n. prefix.

Also kakie:
28. [^] prefixed to several usu. alien species, mostly noxious weeds:
bos/bush 28, weed/onkruid 28, klits 28, usu. sign. that they were introduced from elsewhere, in forage or equipment for British troops: assumed by Pettman to be fr. colour of foliage: see (1) khaki.
Tagetes minuta a proclaimed weed, see quot. at kakiebos 28, Inula graveolens a pest in grain lands, Alternanthera pungens and Bidens bipinnatus both of spiny habit.

[prob. fr. 'khaki sign. alien, poss. fr. colour]

khakibos, -bush, -weed, n.

28, // See (3) khaki 28 and kakiebos 28.

Khalifa [,ka'lifa, ,xa-] n. and n. modifier

25. Also Chalifa: a Cape Malay sword-dancing ritual accompanied by chanting and drumming on the ghomma (qv) 25, 15, so called from the 'Khalif' or leader, chosen for his spiritual and stoical qualities: see quot. at goëlery 16.

The Malay sword dance known as the Chalifah should really take place on the 11th day of Rabi-I-achier in honour of Abdul Kadir Beker ... but its original religious implications have been modified with the result that the Chalifah now amounts to a skilful exhibition of sword play ... Chalifa or Khalifa ... is the name of the central person conducting the ceremony. Du Plessis The Cape Malays 1944

Khalifa performances have no religious significance. Most Moslem religious leaders discourage the art as creating a misleading Malay image, and would like to see it die out. Cape Times 6. 6. 70

[fr. Arab Khalif = successor to the Prophet, leader]

Khoi-Khoi(n) ['kɔ ,kɔ (m)] n. prop.

The self-styled name of the Hottentots: sign. 'man-men', men of men: deriv. English form adj. Khoisan of or pertaining to the Hottentot and Bushman races or their languages.

The Khoi-Khoi, or Hottentot, used a word which meant offshoot and not reed. Dudley Kidd The Essential Kafir 1925

khehla ['keɬa] n. pl. -s
19, 1, 2. See kehla 1, 19, 2.

khanna ['kana] n.
6, 28, 16. See kanna 6, 28, 16: also ganna 28
Khoi-Khoi(n) see entry at addendum p. 583

khotla ['xɔ̃tla] n.
2. See kgotla 2.

kia ['kaɪə] n. pl. -s
2, 18. Properly an African hut or house, usu. loosely used of detached servants' quarters on white properties esp. in Natal: or slang for any house:

I'm half wild to be back in our kia and to grope through the sweet scented trees on the river bank. R. Y. Stormberg Mrs Pieter de Bruyn 1920.

He toddled off to his kia and from the tin trunk, which held his treasures, withdrew the parcel the boss had given him the day before. Cape Argus 24.2.73

In combination piccaninny ~ 18: see P.K. 18
[Ngu. khaya = home, house]

kiaat(hout) [kĩ'a:t,(h)əʋt] n.
32, 18. Name assigned to several species for their resemblance to teak but esp. to Pterocarpus angolensis of the N.E. Transvaal and Natal, and to the hard reddish timber of this tree: also called bloodwood,^{(qu)18}
Transvaal teak, Rhodesian teak.

Kiaat is a medium sized tree, usually not exceeding 13 m in height. ... the wood has a light brown colour and because it exudes, when cut, dark red juice, it is also known as bloodwood. Baraitser and Obholzer Cape Country Furniture 1971

[Afk. fr. Du. kajaten = teak prob. rel. Malay kaju = wood]

kick-the-tin, vb phr. as n.

15. Children's game: see skop-die-blik 15. [not equiv. of Austr. ~]

When it is full moon we play I spy kick the tin at the market bell. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

kiepersol ['kĩpə(r),sɔ̃l, -sɔ̃l] n. pl. -s
32. Any of several species of Cussonia esp. C. thyrsiiflora: also called sambreelboom (umbrella tree) from the shape of the terminal crown of leaves: the roots are chewed for their sap: also 27c place name Kiepersol.

.. there were no less than six kippersol trees. ... she went back, and took a sharp stone, and cut at the root of a kippersol, and got out a large piece, as long as her arm, and sat to chew it. ... It was very delicious to her. Kippersol is like raw quince, when it is very green. Olive Schreiner in More Tales from S. A. 1967 edit.

[Afk. and Du. kiepersol fr. Indian kittisol fr. Port. quita-sol = excluding the sun]

kierie [k'iri] n. pl. -s

20, 2. Also knobkierie, -kerrie: see also induku 20: a fighting club or stick usu. with a knobbed head. cf. N.Z. mere Maori war club, Jam. E. coco-makka bludgeon, Aust. nulla-nulla Aboriginal club, Canad. casse-tête.

Their arms consist of a long spear called a Hassagai which they throw in the manner of a javelin, with great certainty to the distance of fifty or sixty paces, and a small club called a keerie which they use when closely engaged. James Ewart Journal 1811-14

... while they were arguing Mr. — attacked him with a kerie. He grabbed the kerie from Mr. — and struck him. Post 14. 3. 71

In combination snoek ~ 20, fisherman's club used for dispatching snoek (qv) 12 which are savage when landed.

[Afk. fr. Hott. kirri/keeri = stick]

kiewietjie [k'ivi,ki, -ci] n. pl. -s

3. The crowned plover or peewit Stephanibyx coronatus, which has a loud and persistent cry esp. if defending its young.

... a peewit, or as it is called here, a Keewit; in moonlight nights they are constantly crying on the wing, and they are the harbingers of sunrise. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-land 1827

Among the plovers that love the coast are the Kittlitz sand plover and the crowned plover or Kiewietjie. Lawence Green S. Afr. Beachcomber 1958

~ bene. ^[brana] Coll. 10. Appellation for one who is excessively thin, or description of very thin legs.

She's dieted herself down to such a skeleton we call her kiewietjie-bene. Schoolgirl 16 Mar. 1974

[presum. onomat.]

kikuyu [ki'kuju] n. and n. modifier

11, 18, 28. Pennisetum clandestinum, a coarse and hardy grass species used in gardens as a lawn grass, and in certain areas as pasture.

... growing a garden in Lyndhurst is an almost hopeless business, and ours consisted of a young wilderness of coarse kikuyu grass and a few beds of petunias. Dan Jacobson A Long Way from London 1953

60 Acres under irrigation & further 100 under dry land cropping. Large areas established kikuyu & Eragrostis. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 3. 1. 68

[fr. Kikuyu, E. Africa]

Kimberley Club, n. prop.

8. A sherry-type aperitif produced in S. A. before the importation of European flor culture.

To the K.W.V. must go the credit for first making flor sherry here. Before that the Cape developed a wine of its own, different from the Spanish, with a sherry character which was and still is widely used as an aperitif. Much of this type is sold as Kimberley Club sherry. ... Some brands of Kimberley Club ... although they are dry have as much colour as some of the sweet sherries. Hastings Beck Meet the Cape Wines 1955

[prob. fr. name of Club ³ founded in Kimberley in 1881]

kingklip ['k n,kl p, -,kl p] n. pl. ∅

Any of three species of edible marine fish Acanthistius sebastoides and Epinephelus andersoni, both of the Serranidae preferring shallow water among rocks; or Genypterus capensis of the Ophidiidae caught usu. by trawl in deeper waters; all are of commercial importance and highly regarded as table fish.

South Africa: [add fish Hottentot; Kingklip; Kabeljou; Musselcrackers; nRed Roman; Steenbras; Stockfish Jean Niditch Weight Watchers' Program Cookbook 1972 1974 impression

[Afk. fr. Du. Koning cogn. king + klip = rock + visch cogn. fish]

Kimberley Train, n. prop.

Hist.

15, 20.

(1) ¹⁰ Title of a World War I folk song of the Coloured people: [also of a play on the colour question]

(2) ¹⁹ A train from Kimberley, the departure of which signified an attempt, successful or unsuccessful, to 'try for white' (qv) 29vb for Coloured (qv) 19 people.

The Kimberley Train is a-coming tonight,
It comes in black and it goes out white.

Song: A. E. Voss 1950's

kimberlite ['kɪmbə,laɪt] n.

30. The blue ground (qv) 30 of the diamond fields which occurs in cylindrical pipes: usu. weathered yellow at the surface: see yellow ground | 30, also diamond 30.

Alluvial diamonds were probably released from kimberlite by erosion. They are found along water courses and along the Atlantic Ocean. It is possible that kimberlite pipes exist beneath the sea. Panorama Dec. 1972

deriv. ic; of or pertaining to ic.

They found two Kimberlite pipes, the sort of soil structure named after the diamond city of Kimberley. ... An inconclusive scattering of Kimberlitic minerals. Daily Dispatch 14. 7. 72

[fr. place name Kimberl(ey) + ite + adj. forming suff. -ic]

kind(ers) ['kɪndə(r)s] n. usu. pl.

19, 10. Child(ren).

Distance to them is no consideration; the boor puts his vrow and kinders into the wagon, lights his pipe and sets off to travel five hundred miles with as much ease as we should ten in England. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-land 1827

[Afk. kinders fr. Du. kinderen = children:

kinderbewys ['kɪndə(r)bə,veɪs] n.

4b. Roman Dutch Law: a legal deed made by the surviving spouse of a couple married in community of property (qv) 4b securing to the children the property accruing from the deceased partner/parent.

Kinderbewys ... a deed of hypothecation or mortgage passed by a surviving spouse married in community of property, for the purpose of securing to the minor children of the marriage the portions due to them from the estate of a deceased spouse. Bell's Legal Dictionary 3rd edit. 1951

[Afk. fr. Du. kinder = child + bewijs = warranty, deed]

kingklip See entry at addenda p583.

King protea, n. pl. -s, ϕ.

13. Also giant protea: Protea cynaroides, a common S. Afr. emblem appearing on the obverse of the twenty cent piece, *formerly on the tickey (qv) 24.*

He has between 2 000 and 3 000 of the Giant (or King) protea alone. ... one of the King (Cynaroides) proteas ... This variety is much sought after overseas and a favourite among growers. Cape Times 13. 9. 74

kinkelbos(sie) ['kɛŋkəlbɔ̃s(i)] n.

32. Tetragonia fruticosa so named, not from the rattling of the seeds, see klapper(bos) 32, but from the 'kink' or twist in the stems. Also place name 27c Kinkelbos(ch). [Afk. kinkel = kink, twist + bos cogn. bush (+ dim. suff. -ie)]

kippersol n.

32. See kiepersol 32.

kirimoer ['kiri, mu:r] n.

8, 28. See karree 28, 32, (8).

kis(t) [kɪs(t), kɪs(t)] n. pl. -s, -te

18. Also kis: chest, usu. a lidded box not a chest of drawers: also Scottish kist.

A heavy kist, or dower chest, was almost always to be found in one of the reception rooms. It was of stinkwood, when locally made, and decorated with fine brass-work. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

Freq. in combination: bruids ~ (qv) 18; gereedskap ~ 31, 26^{for} tools or equipment ~~~~~ (usu. slung under a wagon); ~ klere (qv) 5; wagon/wa ~ (qv) 31, 26, 18: also agter ~, 'hindchest' in a wagon and voor ~ the 'fore chest' serving also as box seat for the driver, both 18, 31, 26.

... several features unknown to the European wheelwright: the katel, or bed, and the voorkis and agterkis, the front and rear chests or kists, in which clothes and possessions could be carried. H. V. Morton In Search of S. A. 1948

The Voorkis (the chest in front of the wagon) is bigger and has sloped front and sides where the agterkis (the chest at the back of the wagon) is smaller and square. Baraitser and Obholzer Cape Country Furniture 1971

[Afk. kis fr. Du. kist cogn. chest]

kisklere ['kɪs, klɛrə] pl. n

5. Sunday best clothes of country or farming people kept in a kist (qv) 18 and only brought out for Nagmaal (qv) 4a^{Funerals} and other solemn occasions: see quot. ^{at Nagmaal 4a.}

... at least one suit of kisklere, a carefully tended Sunday best ... Mockford Here are S. Africans 1944

For special occasions like Church services and weddings, men kept at least one suit of "kisklere." Telford Yesterday's Dress 1972

[Afk. kis fr. Du. kist + klere = clothes]

kitchen-, n. prefix

23. Low: [Pettman observes that ~ was used of Low Latin 300 years ago.] Combinations ~ Dutch 23. cf. Canad. monkey French: see (3) Dutch 23; ~ kaffir*; see quot. at (2) kaffir 23, fanakalo 23, 30, chilapalapa 23, † Also 23, a mixture of English and some African language by those speaking to servants. † and at go garshly 10.

*also S. Afr. Kissetla, Settla language.

¹
klaar [kla:(r)] adj.

10. Finished: see finish(ed) and klaar 10. [Afk. klaar = finished, ready, cogn. clear]

²
klaar- [kla:(r)-] adj. prefix

27i. Clear: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. e.g. Klaarwater, Klaarstroom: see also helder- 27i. [Du. or Afk. klaar cogn. clear]

klab(ber)ja(a)s ['klab(ər),jas, -jas] n. prop. and modifier

15. See klawerjas 15: various sp. forms.

klap [klap] n. and vb trns.

Slang. 10, 29vb. usu. among children sign. smack e.g. 'I gave him a good ~, ' or 'I'd had enough so I ~ed him': roughly equiv. of clout or 'clobber': see quot. at just now 10 and moerava 10.

← [Afk. klap = cuff, smack etc.]

klapbroek ['klap,brúk] n.

Hist. 5. Trousers closing at the waist with a flap buttoning horizontally: see quot. at Dopper 19, 4a.

... the flap-fly, which earned the garment the name of 'klapbroek' ... Trousers were of the 'klapbroek' type, and had in place of the centre fly opening, a flap (hence the name) fastened at the sides with buttons. Telford Yesterday's Dress 1972

[Afk. fr. Du. klap = flap + broek = pair of trousers cogn. breeks]

¹klapper- [klapə(r)-, 'klæp-] n. and n. prefix

28, 32. General term for numerous species usu. prefixed to -boom or -bos sign. plants with bladder-like fruits or pods which break or are broken with a sharp snap, and in which the seeds rattle. As n. pl. -s the fruits of these species esp. Nymanica capensis.

Passing through the Karroo in spring, travellers often pause in astonishment at splashes of pure and vivid colour... This is the famous klapper or Chinese lanterns, Nymanica capensis, which grows among scrub on dry rocky soil, ... ~~The flowers are comparatively insignificant-pink and somewhat bell-shaped - but they~~ develop into inflated fruits with a papery covering like that of a large gooseberry, ... ~~These fruits give the tree its common names of klapper and Chinese lanterns.~~ Palmer and Pitman Trees of S. A. 1961

[Afk. fr. Du. klapper = rattle]

(*see Pape Gooseberry)¹⁰⁴.

²klapper ['klapə(r), 'klæp-] n. pl. -s

14, 28. The fruit of Strychnos pungens and S. spinosa called also wooden orange 14, monkey orange 14 and kaffir orange 14.

We had a capital lunch from some wild fruit about three times the size of an orange, called a clapper. It has a hard shell outside, which one must batter against a tree to crack or break. Baldwin African Hunting 1890 cit. Pettman

[Afk. fr. Du. klapper = coconut fr. Malay kelapa]

klawerjas ['klavə(r),jas] n. or n. prop.

15. A card game 'pam' in which the Jack or Knave of Clubs is the highest card and all knaves are trumps: [corrupted to klabberjas, klabjas and klaberjaas 15.

Players of Klabberjas will tell you (as will bridge players of their game) that it is the only card game. ... In the bistros of Paris they call it "Belotte", the Dutch call it "Klaviarsz" and in South Africa it's often called just "Klabjas." E. Province Herald 10. 2. 72

as modifier:

The Eastern Province Klaberjaas championships ... Klaberjaas is ... similar to bridge or German whist, and is believed to have originated in Holland. It is usually played by four people, playing in two pairs. E. Province Herald 18. 7. 74

[Afk. fr. Du. klaver = club cogn. clover + Du. jas = knave of trumps = pam fr. Gk. abbr. of pamphilos = beloved (philos) of all]

kleilat(jie) ['kleɪ, lat, -laɪkɪ, -ci] n. and vb trns.

15. Lit. 'clay twig': a game played by children, the missile being a ball of mud or clay propelled by flicking it off a springy twig, or both clay and twig together: as 29vb to bombard some place or person with a ~.

When no other sport presented itself, young South Africans often amused themselves by fighting with sticks and, more especially, with the so-called kleilat or clay-stick. De Kock The Fun They Had 1955

[Afk. fr. Du. klei cogn. clay + lat = twig (+ dimin. suff. -jie)]

klein- [kleɪn, kleɪn(ə)-] adj. prefix

(1) 28. Small: used sign. 'lesser' in the names of about sixty S. Afr. plant species, opposed to groot (qv).

(2) 27i. Small: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. e. g. Klein Brakrivier, Kleinbegin, Kleinpoort, Kleinmond. Also with attrib. inflect. Kleinemonde.

(3) Also in combinations. 29adj. prefix ~ huisie (qv) 18; ~ serig (qv) 16, 29adj. 10.

[Afk. klein = small]

kleinhuisie ['kleɪn,hoɛɪsɪ] n. pl. -s

Coll. 18, 10. Privy: usu. an outdoor earth or bucket closet, occ. loosely, any lavatory. cf. 'the smallest room': see also P.K. 18, 10. cf. Austr. dunny(can), dyke, shouse, Canad. honey bucket.

The N9 may be the smiling Gateway to Cape Town; the main line is surely the way out of the back door, past the dustbin and the kleinhuisie. Cape Times 28.2.72

First to go were the cluster of uithuisies, kleinhuisies, groothuisies and the tacked-on corrugated iron stoep ... Ibid 16.8.73
[Afk. klein = small + huis = house + dimin. suff. -ie]

kleinserig [kleɪn,'sɪərɪx] adj.

Coll. 29adj, 10, 16. Over-sensitive, lit. and figur. 'touchy.'

'Ow, don't pull my hair I'm very kleinserig.'
Informant overheard in a hairdresser's 1973

[Afk. fr. Cape Du. kleinzerig, klein = small + seer cogn. sore + -ig adj, forming suff.]

kleintjie ['kleɪŋkɪ, -ci] n. pl. -s

19. Little one, child.

For three years, ever since I was a kleintjie, I serve the Vrouw Smedinga ... Fairbridge That Which Hath Been 1913

[Afk. kleintjie fr. Du. kleintje = little one]

kleios ['kleɪ,ɔs] n. pl. -se

15. Child's plaything: an ox modelled in clay used by S. Afr. children from the early days: also called (1)dolos (qv) 15. [Afk. klei cogn. clay + os = ox]

klinker ['klɪŋkə, 'klɪŋkə(r)] n. pl. -s

(1)§ Extra-hard brick used from the earliest days for exposed work, steps etc., also called geel(yellow) s and klompies (qv) 18, used today for fire places etc.: also faggot (qv) 18.

In the days of the Company small hard yellow bricks, 'geel 'klinkers' - locally called 'klompjes' - were imported from Holland in large quantities and used for all exposed work, and for reinforcing arches over openings. There was still a market for them at the Cape as late as 1829, and they were even proposed for the steeple of St. George's Church as an alternative to English bricks. Lewcock C19 Architecture in S. A. 1963

Brick klinkers and wood make an attractive combination. Like face bricks their biggest advantage is that they do not require plastering or painting. Panorama Sept. 1971

(2) Prob. figur. 7. Hard ship's biscuit, hard tack. cf. Canad. shanty cake/biscuit, hard tack.

[Afr. fr. Du. klinker = brick, klink = sound, ring + agent. suff. -er]

klip(-) ['klɪp-] n. and n. prefix

- (1) Coll. 30. A diamond: see (1) blinkklip 30, also stone 30.
 (2) Stone-, rock-: common prefix to names of flora and fauna usu. sign. preference for a rocky habitat e. g. ~ fish (qv) 12; ~ springer (qv) 6; ~ vygie 13, see vygie 13; ~ doring 28, 32: ^{having} or stony texture or appearance ~ kous (qv) 12.
 (3) 27a. Rock: stone found in S. Afr. place names as prefix or suff. e. g. Klipfontein, Klipheuvel, Platteklip, Henley on Klip.
 [Afk. klip = stone fr. Du. klip = rock]

klipfish/vis(sie) ['klɪp,fɪs(i)] n. pl. -es, -se, -s

12. Any of numerous species of Clinidae usu. frequenting tidal rock pools.

... the klipfish seldom attains a length of even 12 inches ... Hilda Gerber refers to it as growing up to two pounds. Her informant must have been a genuine fisherman, for eight ounces would be nearer the mark. The klipfish is fried in butter ... Farmer's Weekly 18. 4. 73

[Du. klip = rock + vis = fish + dimin. suff. -ie]

klipkous ['klɪp,kəʊs] n.

12. The largest S. Afr. shellfish: species of Haliotis: also called Venus Ear, as elsewhere, from the beauty of the pearl-lined shell, and perlemoen (qv) 12. U.S. abalone. * also siffia, see quot. at olly crock, 12.

A rarer delicacy is the perel-le-moen or klipkous, largest of all the Cape shellfish. This monster grows far out on the rocks, and can be reached only at very low tides with the aid of a spear. It has a beautiful shell, but the meat must be scrubbed and put through a mincer. Lawrence Green So Few are Free 1946

The perlemoen or klipkous (stone stocking) a species of shellfish ... The shells are lovely, with a mother-of-pearl lining. The fish is most delicious if properly cooked. Hildagonda Duckitt's Recipes edit. Kuttel 1966

[Afk. fr. Du. klip = rock + kous = stocking]

klipspringer ['klɪp,sprɪŋə(r), -sprɪŋ-] n. pl. -s

6. The mountain antelope Oreotragus oreotragus or O. saltator similar to the chamois of Europe.

.. the klipspringer, which is closely allied to the chamois of Europe, and coney-like, has its house on the mountain top, being furnished with singularly coarse hair, imparting the appearance of a hedgehog ... Harris Wild Sports of S. A. 1839

I shall always remember these hills as the home of the klipspringer. No other antelope could find a foothold where the klipspringer lands with ease. Lawrence Green Full Many a Glorious Morning 1968

[Du. klip = rock + spring = jump, bound + agent. suff. -er]

klipsweet ['klɪp,swɪət] n.

16. See dassiespis 16. [Afk. klip = stone, rock + sweet cogn. sweat]

klipvissie ['klɪp, fɪsɪ] n. pl. -s

12. See klipfish/vis 12.

... gazed into rockpools full of starfish, slowly waving sea plants and green-and-gold klipvissies drifting lazily from crevice to crevice - with here and there a small red crab ... Uys Krige The Dream and the Desert 1953

¹
klompie ['klɔmp(i)] n.

Coll. 10. Group or cluster of trees, animals or persons. cf. Canad. bunch (trees, horses, oxen etc.): see quot. at koal 29 adj.

A dry, arid, barren waste of illimitable distances; of queer shaped jagged edged or flat topped kopjes; of dried up watercourses and dancing dust devils, with every now and then a klompie of trees, very green against the sombre background of brown veld. The 1820 Sept. 1973

[Afk. fr. Cape Du. klomp = a lot, cluster, cogn. clump (+ dimin. suff. -ie)]

²
klompie ['klɔmpɪ] n. pl. -s

18. Also klompje: a small hard brick in use from the days of the Dutch East India Company to the present, for outdoor work and fireplaces: also called faggots 18: see quot. at (1) klinker 18.

.. the small red Amsterdam bricks were the neatest, and the glazed Dutch tiles the most artistic. Large shipments of bricks arrived until late in the eighteenth century. You find them mainly in stoeps and face works, with the yellow klompjes that have weathered so well. Lawrence Green Grow Lovely, Growing Old 1951

It is not known that 'klompjes' were even used to face an entire building at the Cape as they were in Holland. Lewcock C19 Architecture in S. A. 1963

[Afk. fr. Du. klompje; klomp = lump, nugget + dimin. suff. -je]

klonkie ['klɔŋkɪ] n. pl. -s

19. Also klong 19: a young coloured boy: see kwedien 19, 2 and umfaan 19, 2.

... the klonkies there, the small black boys, having learned it from the soldiers who camped in Venterspan during the war of 1939, saluted him. Alan Paton Too Late the Phalarope 1953

[Afk. klong, contraction of klein-jong = servant boy + dimin. suff. -kie]

kloof [klu:f, klɔf] n. pl. -s

(1) 22. A deep ravine or valley, usu. wooded; gorge between mountains. cf. Scottish cleugh, Canad. draw, gulch, gully or ravine.

I have since been informed ... that the woody kloofs, or ravines in this range, contain many of the forest trees and other plants which, according to common opinion, are only to be found in more distant parts of the colony. Burchell Travels I 1822

(2) n. prefix and suff. 27a. Ravine, gorge, valley: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. Kloofeinde, Kloofnek; alone, Kloof (Natal) or prefixed by n. or adj. Fonteinskloof, Waterkloof, Baviaanskloof, Langkloof.

[Afk. fr. Du. kloof = ravine, gorge cogn. cleft]

klopjag ['klɔp,jax] n.

4b. A police raid or round-up.

Non-Nationalists shrink away in revulsion and anger ... when there is another Security police klopjag with a whole lot of decent, ordinary citizens being raided at dawn ... Rand Daily Mail 28.8.71

[Afk. klopjag = police drive, round up, fr. Du. klopjacht = battue]

kneehalter ['ni:,holtə] vb usu trns. occ. n.

29vb, 31, 26, 11. To restrict the movement of a horse turned out to graze by tying the bridle to the foreleg, allowing the animal to graze freely but preventing its running away. cf. Austr. legrope n. and vb.

No time was now to be lost. Our horses were hastily knee-haltered (i. e. tied neck and knee to prevent their running off) and turned to graze till the night closed in ... Thompson Travels in S.A. I 1827

[translit. Afk. kniehalter]

knickerje [¹(k)nikə(r)je] n.

Obs. 15. Marble or game of marbles.

Mr. Rex made me a present of a very fine golden cuckoo. After dinner played knickerje. ... the game of knickerje learned from his Dutch neighbours must have been new and amusing to him. Duthie Diary 22.11.1830 cit. Metlerkamp Geo. Rex of Knysna 1955 edit.

also knikkertjie 18. Very hard, grey-coated seed also called seeboontjie washed up on the S. Afr. coasts used for ornaments or for infants' teething, so called because of the likeness to a marble.

cf. Jam. E. nicker a marble, and two species of Caesalpinia, greynicker and yellow nicker, the seeds of which are used as marbles.

[fr. Du. knikkeren = to shoot at, or play, marbles]

knobkerrie/kierie n. pl. -s

20, 2. Also knob/knopstick (rare): see kierie 20, 2. cf. Canad. casse-tête (war club).

Lt. — had his arm injured by a battle axe attack when police restored order and Sgt. — was hit on the head with a knobkerrie. Daily Dispatch 6.10.71

Many South Africans know the wood of Umzimbeet (which word is a corruption of the Xhosa and Zulu umSimbithi, meaning iron-wood). Until its use was protectively stopped, it was the favourite wood for the tribal craft of making knobkieries. E. Province Herald 12.1.72

knobwood, n.

and perdepramboom 32, see pram: 32. Also knophout, knobthorn, any of several species having spine tipped knobs or horn-like protuberances on the trunk esp. Fagara capensis, also its hard, yellow timber formerly used for making household utensils: see quilt at balkenhout

Amongst the most unusual of our trees are the several species of knobwoods, easily identified by the knobs which stud the stems. These are sometimes up to 3 inches long, or they may be smaller, and often tipped with thorns. A tall knobwood, with a brown trunk studded with knobs like small stout horns, is an extraordinary and unforgettable sight. Palmer and Pitman Trees of S.A. 1961

knorhaan ['knɔ̃(r),hɑ:n] n. pl. -s

(1) 3. See korhaan 3.

(2) Also knoorhaan 12. (i) Gurnard: any of several species of Trigla: T. capensis, T. kumu, T. peronii. (ii) Pomadasys operculare, also tiger, spotted grunter: see grunter 12. All these fish are named after the k(n)orhaan (qv) 3 or 'scolding cock' because of the noise they make when taken from the water.

[Afk. fr. Du. knorren = to scold + haan = cock]

kob [kɔb] n. pl. ∅

12. Also cob: abbr. of kabeljou (qv) 12.

One of the highlights in an otherwise quiet period of fishing along the Natal coast was the recent catch by H. C. at Tugela Mouth. He landed a giant kob which tipped the scales at 36,9 kilograms. This is the biggest kob caught by any rock and surf angler during recognised competitive events this year. Sunday Times 3.9.72

[abbr. kabeljou = cod, cogn. Fr. cabillaud]

koedoe ['kɔ̃dɔ̃] n.

6. See kudu 6.

koedoekos ['kɔ̃dɔ̃,kɔ̃s] n.

28. Haworthia viscosa a succulent leaved plant of rocky habitat thought to have been a favourite food of the kudu: also kuduskos 28.

[Afk. koedoe = kudu (qv) + kos fr. Du. kost = victuals]

koekoek ['kɔ̃,kɔ̃k] n. pl. -s

11. An improved purebred strain of Plymouth Rock (fowl) developed by Potchefstroom Agricultural College: hence also Potchefstroom ~.

Purebred Koekoek. - Not the old-fashioned Barred Plymouth Rock with its small eggs. A pure breed bred by Potchefstroom Agricultural College as a tablebird with stamina and high egg production. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 30.5.73

[poss. fr. Du. koekoek = cuckoo, more prob. Ngu. nkuku = fowl]

koekoemakranka, n.

28, 14, 16. See kukumakranka 28, 14, 16.

koeksister ['kɔ̃ksɪstə(r)] n. pl. -s

7. A traditional Cape confection poss. of Malay origin: a deep fried twisted or plaited doughnut immediately dipped in syrup. cf. U.S. cruller, Canad. twister: see also goolab jambo 7, 25, Indian terms 25.

They bought green-fig and watermelon preserve, and koeksisters, the plaited and syrup-dipped doughnuts that are a Cape delicacy to this day. . . .McMagh A Dinner of Herbs 1968

[Afk. fr. Du. koek cogn. cake + sissen = to sizzle, hiss + agent. suff. -ter]

¹koelie ['kūli] n. pl. -s

Obs. Hist. 19. An Anglo-Indian from Calcutta: see quot. at (1) Kaapenaar, Hindoo, and Indian 17, 19.

... I must explain to you that the Hindoos is a soubriquet by local residents to all visitors from India - whether they be Koelies from Calcutta, Mulls from Madras, or Ducks from Bombay. C. of G. H. Literary Gazette 15. 9. 1830 cit. Pettman [poss. fr. Qui-hy,* see quot. at (1) Kaapenaar: see also coolie 1, 19]

²koelie

1, 19. Obj: an offensive mode of address or reference to an Indian: see coolie 1, 19 and quot. at (3) kaffir, 1, 19.

[Afk. koelie = coolie fr. Tamil, Hindi kuli - labourer, also Chinese]

koevoet ['kū,vūt] n.

Sect. Bldg. 18. Crowbar, jemmy. [Afk. fr. Du. koevoet = crowbar, lever]

koffie ['kōfi] n. prefix

(1) 27e. Coffee: in place name Koffiefontein.

(2) 29 prefix. as in huis^{15, 30}, coffee house, old style restaurant;

ketel 18, see kettle 18; geld 4b, 17 (Afk. geld = money)

Hist. see quot.

The President still sat on the verandah of his house early in the morning, ready to meet visitors and offer them the cup of coffee, for which the Government allowed him "Koffiegeld" of £500 a year. Rosenthal General de Wet 1946

koggelmander ['kōxəl,mandə(r)] n. pl. -s

6. Any of several species of Agama or rock lizard: best known is the bloukop ~ of slightly dragon-like aspect with a large triangular blue head. [Afk. (blou cogn. blue + kop = head +) koggelmander = rock lizard.]

kokerboom ['kōkə(r),brəm] n. pl. -s

32. Lit. 'quiver tree': Aloe dichotoma, a much branched tree aloes of up to 10m high the timber of which is porous and cork-like: formerly branches were hollowed out by Bushmen and Hottentots for quivers hence the vernacular name: also place names in Namaqualand 27c Kokerboom, Eenkokerboom.

Those who lived in houses built of Kokerboom trunks stood back and watched as the matches were struck and the flames leapt and crackled through the wooden structures. E. Province Herald 28. 1. 74

[Afk. fr. Du. koker = quiver + boom cogn. Ger. Baum = tree]

kokkewiet ['kōkə,vīt] n. pl. -s

3. The bush shrike Telephorus zeylonus: see bokmakierie 3.

*

Qui-hy/hi fr. Koī hai? Is anyone there? (mode of calling a servant)

kolwyntjie [kól'verŋkí, -cí] n. pl -s

Small cake of the type formerly baked on St. Columbine's day.

~ pans usu. of copper with shaped depressions similar to
Fr. madeleine tins, are prized by collectors of antiques.

Tart-pans and kolwyntjie-pans: these are possibly the most typical of all old Cape kitchen utensils, and the most eagerly sought after by collectors. Cook Cape Kitchen 1973

[fr. Du. kolombijntje]

Kolbroek ['kɔl,brʉk] n. prop. pl. -s

11. A popular variety of pig, the first of which were rescued from the wreck of the ship Colebrooke lost off the S. Afr. coast in 1778.

On most farms in South Africa it will be found profitable to keep a few pigs for home consumption. The most suitable breed is probably the Kolbroek ... The Kolbroek is particularly suitable as it does not require so much protein and, being of a sluggish nature is less mischievous when allowed loose around the house. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. translit. of Colebrooke]

-kolk- [-kɔlk-] n. prefix and suff.

27a. A deep pool, or water hole usu. the deepest point in a vlei (qv) 22: found in S. Afr. place names as prefix and suff. to n. e. g. Kolkfontein, Granaatboskolk (pomegranate), Tontelboschkolk (qv) 32. (tinder bush), Kootjieskolk.

All over the Calvinia district you find names ending in kolk - Granaatboskolk, Abiquas Kolk, Korannakolk, Wildehondekolk, Leeukolk, Klipkolk. A kolk is a pan that holds water after rain. Lawrence Green When the Journey's Over 1972

[Afk. kolk = abyss, pool, pothole: in form draai ~, a whirlpool]

kolstert ['kɔlstert, -stɛat] n. pl. ∅

12. See blacktail: also called dassie, 12

Mr. P. — has registered the largest blacktail (kolstert) taken by a club angler for at least two seasons. The fine specimen he landed weighed 1,644 kg. Grocott's Mail 25.6.71

[Afk. kol = spot + stert (fr. Du. staart) = tail]

-kometers [;kɔm'bers, -bɛəs] n. pl. -e (-en)

Obs. Hist. 18. Blanket usu. suffixed as in vel ~ (qv) cf. Kar(r)os, also wol(wool) ~

The qualities of the linebayeri and the wolkometers were elaborately discussed ... Dugmore Reminiscences 1870 pub. 1871

[Afk. fr. Du. kombaars = (ship's) blanket]

komfoor [kɔm'fʉə(r)] n. pl. -s

18. See konfoor 18.

Brass Kettles and Comfores; Superior single and double barrelled Guns made to order for the Cape Market. S. Afr. Almanac for 1841 Advt.

kommetjie ['kɔmĩ,kĩ, -ci] n. pl. -s

22. A shallow circular depression in the ground. cf. Austr. ghilgai.

His stretcher-bearers thankfully deposited him in a kommetje (a round saucer-like depression in the ground from which the plain takes its name) while they rested their weary limbs. Metrowich Frontier Flames 1968

27a. Shallow basin-like depression found in place names Kommetje, Kommetjies Flats. [The form 'Commitee' in ~'s Drift and ~s Flats is thought by some to derive from this.]

.. We came upon a plain full of strange holes like basins: hence this plain is called Commatje Flats. One of the guides ... explained the cause of these scientifically: "The earth here" he said, "had once been much soaked with rain, and had got the shivers ..."
Alexander Western Africa II 1837

[Afk. fr. Du. kommetje = a small cup or basin]

kompanjie [,kɔmpan'ji] n. prop.

17, 4b. 30. See Company, the 17, 4b, 30. 27e Company: in place name Kompanjiesdrift.

konfoor [,kɔn'fʊə(r)] n. pl. -s

(1) 18. A warmer for a tea or coffee pot or kettle, usu. made of brass and containing a tessie (qv) 18 or firepan for coals.

Brass chafing-dishes (konfoors), coffee pots and smaller articles in brass or silver were made by the Cape craftsmen of the 17th and 18th Centuries; ... Three old Brass Konfoors intended to contain burning coals to keep a kettle hot. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

(2) 18. Also voetstofie or stofie (qv) 18: a footwarmer cum footstool consisting of a perforated wooden box also containing a tessie (qv) 18 for coals.

To preserve warmth the Dutch women use an apparatus to set their feet upon called a komfoor. It is a square box, with a few holes cut through the top, and closed only half-way up the front. Into the inside a few hot charcoal embers are introduced from time to time in an iron basin. Backhouse Narrative 1844 cit. Pettman

[Afk. fr. Du. komfoor = chafing dish, brazier; Fr. chauffoir = a footstove]

konfyt [,kɔn'feit] n. pl. -s

7. Preserves or conserve, either of whole fruit or large pieces in syrup.

A delightful Afrikander custom ... the offer to the visitor, during the forenoon, of a cup of tea, with a liberal supply ... of some beautifully preserved home-made konfyt ... Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

... spread quickly on the whole biscuits and then press on them those which have the centre cut out, filling up the cavity in the centre with crystallised cherries, or other candied konfyt ...
Hildagonda Duckitt's Recipes edit. Kuttel 1966

In combination ... ~ jar 18.

Konfyt Jars. These imported crystal jars both open and covered were among the most gracious ornaments on the table. Housewives took a particular pride in their own home-made preserves of fruit ... Wm Fehr Treasures at the Castle of Good Hope 1963

teewater ~ 7: see teewater 7: also quot. above (Wallace 1896).

waatelemoen/watermelon ~ 7. A traditional preserve of watermelon rind: see kaffirmelon 14.

They had supper. Babotie and rice, sweet potatoes and pumpkin, followed by a milk tart and watermelon konfyt. Stuart Cloete Rags of Glory 1963

[Afk. fr. Du. konfijt = preserves, conserve]

... Elder Landsman tiptoed out of the church and
went round to the Konsistorie where the Nagmaal wine was kept.
Bosman A Bekkersdal Marathon 1971

Plocepasser spp.
Passer melanurus x

konsistorie [ˌkɔ̃nsɪs'tvərɪ] n. pl. -s

4a, 18. The vestry of a Dutch Reformed Church (qv) 4a. stoel/
chair 18, a high-backed chair of the type traditionally used in the
~. [Afk. fr. Du. konsistorie = consistory, vestry]

* See qv. at addenda p.583.

kontant [ˌkɔ̃ntant] n.

30. Cash: ready money.

The slave was knocked down to the Stranger, and the
auctioneer demanded -kontant- cash. Cape Literary Gazette Vol. I
June 1830

It was not always sheer ignorance that led people to keep
large amounts of money on their farms. "Kontant", hard cash, was
the rule of the veld, ... and men buying farms and stock in distant
places simply had to have the money close at hand. Lawrence Green
Land of Afternoon 1949

Cash (kontant) for your clean used car. E. Province Herald
Advt. 5.5.73

[Afk. fr. Du. kontant = ready, available (money)]

kooper [ˈkupə, ˈkʷəpə(r)] n. pl. -s

19, 30. A buyer of diamonds during the early days of the Diamond
Fields before the introduction of legislation, see I.D.B. 4b, 30 in
1882

... it came under earnest debate whether to burn the
proprietors' tents ... or to sack the stalls of the koopers. Little
groups of the dangerous class gathered round each diamond buyer's
tent, loudly threatening ... Boyle To the Cape for Diamonds 1873

[Afk. koper angl. kooper fr. Du. koper = buyer]

koornvreter [ˈkʷərn,frɪətə(r)] n. pl. -s

Plocepasser spp.: see koring/koornvreter/voël.

lands, also Plocepasserinae (sparrow ...)

8 August 1811 ... a troublesome bird to farmers, and well
deserving the name they have given it, of Koornvreter (Corn-eater).
It has very much the manners of the common sparrow of Europe ...
Burchell Travels I 1822

[Du. koorn cogn. corn (Afk. koring) + vreet = eat (of animals),
gorge + agent. suff. -er]

kop [kɔ̃p] n.

(1) 22. A prominent hill or peak, domed, pointed or flat topped:
freq. in dimin. form ~ pie (qv). cf. Canad. coteau

Me that 'ave watched 'arf a world

'Eave up all shiny with dew,

Kopje on kop to the sun ...

Kipling The Five Nations 1903

(2) n. suff. pl. -en

27a. Hill, peak, found in S. Afr, place names usu. as suff. e. g. Boskop (qv) 34, 23, Kranskop, Daskop, Spioenkop (spy), Driekoppen, Witkoppen.

Behind the town of Swellendam are four conspicuous peaks which form a natural sundial, and for more than two hundred years these have been known to local farmers as 10 uur, 11 uur, 12 uur and 1 uur Kop. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

[Afk. fr. Du. kop = (head) peak, mountain, hill]

(3) n. pl. -s

Slang. 10. A butt or blow with the head.

... S— just swore at him. So the CID man gave him three quick kops (buted him in the face)... Sunday Tribune 16. 7. 72

[fr. Afk. kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

kop-en-pootjies [ˌkɔpən'pʊtkijs, -cijs]

7. Head and trotters - a stewed dish made usu. of sheep: see also quot. at pens-en-pootjies 7.

Concertina and guitar music goes on until dawn with few intervals, but with many rounds of vaaljapie and brandy. You remember the candle light, the vastrap music, the supper of kop-en-pootjies (head and trotters) or bloedwors, the black pudding made from blood of a pig. Lawrence Green A Giant in Hiding 1970

[Afk. kop = head + en = and + poot = foot of animal + dimin. suff. -jie]

kopje ['kɔpɨ, kɔpɨ] n. pl. -s

22. Dutch form of koppie (qv) 22.

Then mock not the African kopje,
Especially when it is twins,
One sharp and one table-topped kopje,
For that's where the trouble begins.
Kipling The Five Nations 1903

In combination ~ walloper (qv) 19, 30; ~ walloping (qv) 19, 30.

kopje walloper [kɔpɨ-, kɔpɨ-] n.

Hist. 19, 30. A usu. Jewish diamond buyer, buying directly from diggers on their claims in the early days before the I.D.B. (qv) 4b, 30 legislation of 1882. [cf. Canad. gravel puncher, miner with primitive equipment.]

... the occupation of dealing in diamonds. The slang camp term indeed for this was 'kopje walloper', derived from the circumstance that in the earliest days the diamonds were obtained from a number of kopjes or small hills in the neighbourhood of the camp, and the dealers travelled on foot from one to the other purchasing the finds as they were turned out at the sorting tables. Raymond B. I. Barnato, A Memoir 1897

kopje wallop(ing) vb. vbl n. or partic.

30. Buying diamonds in this way: see also koper 19.

... I was kopje-walloping in Kimberley, feeling more depressed and dispirited than usual, when in the course of my rounds I came across a Dutchman sorting at his table ... Cohen Reminiscences of Kimberley 1911

[presum. fr. kopje (qv) + wallop = to thrash]

(1) Otididae fam.

koring/koornvreter/voël ['kɔərɪŋ,frʊətə(r)/,vrəl] n. pl. -s

Used of numerous species of sparrows, sparrow weavers (Flocepasserinae) and other seed eaters, particularly the common Fasser melanurus which feed in grain lands.

[Afk. koring fr. Du. koorn cogn. corn + voël fr. Du. vogel cogn. fowl, or vreter, eater fr. Du. vreten, to eat greedily]

8 August 1811 :... a troublesome bird to farmers, and well deserving the name they have given it, of Koornvreter (Corn-eater). It has very much the manners of the common sparrow of Europe ...
Purchell Travels I 1822

koppie ['kɔpi] n. pl. -s

(1) 22. A hillock, flat topped or pointed, a common feature of the S. Afr. (1)veld (qv). [(Hist.) also of the Diamond Fields] see also kopje 22 and quot. at klompie 10.

When I faked death on the Serengeti one large male lion climbed a koppie that was very close by and studied me for a long time. Sunday Times 12.8.73

(2) -koppie-, 27a. Hill, hillock: found in S. Afr. place names as prefix or suff. e. g. Koppiealleen, Koppies, Weskoppies.

[Afk. kop = hill, peak + dimin. suff. -(p)ie]

korhaan [kɔr'(h)ɑ:n] n. pl. -s

(1) 3. Any of several species of Otis, the S. Afr. bustard: its name derives from its noisy call esp. if disturbed.

I saw only a few of the larger and more hardy species, such as the ostrich; the pouw, which is a sort of large bustard, and very delicate eating; the korhaan, a smaller sort of bustard, also prized by epicures; cranes, Namaqua partridges, and white-necked crows. Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827

(2) See knorhaan 12.

(3) Bustard: found in place name Korhaan 27d.

[Afk. and Du. korhaan = wood-cock, see also knorhaan]

koringkriek ['kvərɛŋ,krɪk] n. pl. -e

21, 11. An insect pest Eugaster longipes, which feeds on various crops.

Koringkrieke ... Grey or black, long-legged, clumsy, spiny long antennied [sic] grasshoppers. Common in drier parts of Orange Free State and Bechuanaland. Feed on various crops. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. koring fr. Du. koorn cogn. corn + kriek = cricket]

koringvoël ['kvərɛŋ,frɔl] n. pl. -s

3, 11. Species of Plocepasserinae: see koornvreter /voël

Ploceus spp.

korrelkop ['kɔrɛl,kɔp] n.

19, 16. One who has pepercorn/peperkorrel (qv) 16 hair

Hans is a korrelkop bushman. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

[Afk. korrel = grain, granule abbr. peperkorrel = peppercorn + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

-kos- [kɔs] n.

28. Food: usu. as suff. e. g. pad ~ (qv) 7, 31, veld ~ 28, 7; see (1)veld compounds, or prefix ~ kas 18, a store cupboard; see also quot. at lekker 10, 29adj.

Yellowwood Table; Yellowwood Washstand; Yellowwood Koskas; ... Evening Post Advt. 27.10.73

Yellowwood Wakiste ... Yellowwood Koskaste ... Grocott's Mail 25.5.73

Also suff. in plant names koedoe ~ (qv) 28 Haworthia viscosa; olifants ~ 28 Portulacaria afra, see spekboom 28; slang ~ 28 Amanita phalloides, the death cap/cup, a highly poisonous 'mushroom', etc. [Afk. slang = snake]

[Afk. fr. Du. kost = food, victuals]

koster ['kɔstə(r)] n. pl. -s

19, 4a. The verger of a Dutch Reformed Church (qv) 4a.

A little further on lived a Koster, that is, a sexton, a set of people that are more respected by the Calvinists than with us.

Trans. Sparrman Voyage I 1786 2nd edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. koster = verger]

kotch [kɔtʃ] n. and vb intrns.

10, 16. Puke, vomit: see cotch 10, 16. cf. Austr. perk

[fr. Afk. kots = vomit (vulgar)]

koud- [kəʊt-] adj. prefix

27i. Cold: found in place names Koudveld, Koud Bokkeveld.

[Afk. koud fr. Du. = cold]

kouvoël ['kəʊ,frəl] n. pl. -s

3. Aquila rapax rapax: see lammervanger 3. [prob. fr. Hott. for catch, hold + voël fr. Du. vogel = bird cogn. fowl]

-kraai- [kraɪ] n. [pl. -en]

27d, 3, 32. Crow: usu. in compounds: ~ bos (qv) 32, withals ~ 3 (white necked,) see quot. at korhaan 3: or in place names 27d

Kraaibos, Kraayenkraal, Kraaifontein, Kraaipan.

[Afk. fr. Du. kraai = crow]

kraaibos ['kraɪ,bɔs] n.

32. Diosporos austro-africana and other species of Diosporos, a small bushy aromatic shrub used medicinally in various forms by indigenous tribes: also 27c place name Kraaibos.

The black berries of a bush called kraije-bosch, or crow-bush, were greedily devoured by the crows at the Cape. Thunberg Travels I Trans. 1795

[Afk. kraai cogn. crow + bos cogn. bush]

kraal [kra:l] n. pl. -s

The Dutch word Kraal, as used in the Colony, has three different significations: - a string of beads, a cattle fold, and a native horde or encampment. Thompson Travels in S.A. I 1827

(1) n. pl. -s

11, 18. An enclosure, pen or fold for farm animals: in combinations cattle ~ 11; sheep ~ 11; goat ~ 11; skut ~ 11, 4b (see skut); lambling ~ 11; house ~ 18, a ~ close or attached to the homestead; out ~ 11, a ~ set at a distance; ~ manure 18, sheep or goats' manure collected from the ~, much favoured as garden fertiliser. cf. Jam. E, crawl fr. Colonial Du. kraal 'an enclosure, pen or building for keeping hogs', also pig crawl, turtle crawl.

.. out-houses occupied one side; and beyond them were kraals (enclosures) of thorn bushes for the cattle. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

40 Morgen newly established Eragrostis. Dip with equipped kraals. 2 Well-built Native quarters ... Farmer's Weekly Advt. 20. 3. 74

Also figur. in a political sense: a separated group, racial or political.

As for the accusation that the English Press are trying to chase the Afrikaners, like cattle, into separate "verligte" and "verkrampste" kraals, I fear that my friend seriously overestimates the power of the Press. Sunday Times 24. 8. 69

(2) rare: a game sanctuary on private property.

The buck made off for the "kraal" the sanctuary which most farmers had and where the animals soon realised they would be safe. Even wounded animals were not followed into the kraal. Daily Dispatch 22. 7. 72

β) vb trns.

29vb, 11. To drive animals into a (1) ~. cf. Brit. to fold sheep; Canad. corral, to enclose animals in a circle of wagons, see laager

I found the lady of the mansion kraaling her flocks and herds, her lord being absent; ... Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827

... do not kraal the animals but leave them in the open veld ... If they must be kraaled a wire kraal ... is the best. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

Because of past attacks by killer dogs, the Bouwers kraal their sheep every night. E. Province Herald 9. 8. 74

29vb. Also figur. often ~ off- to separate racially, linguistically or politically into groups: see quot. at (1) kraal above.

How can children from these different societies ever hope to understand each other when they are systematically kraaled off into different schools and raised in isolation from each other? Het Suid Western 19. 4. 73

(4) [kra:l, krɔ:l] n. pl. -s

2, 218. A village or settlement occupied by an indigenous tribe, formerly Hottentot or African, now usu. African: see also stat/d 2_A ^{and quot. of tribesman} 219. cf. Canad. rancherie, an Indian village.

.. the beautiful Tyumie valley besides, is now dotted with the houses of European farmers, winklers, or missionaries, surrounded by numerous kraals or villages of Fingoes, located there after the war ... McKay Last Kaffir War 1871

The entire population of one kraal attacked by an impi of 250 tribesmen on Sunday have fled and it may be several days before the first of them filter home and life at the kraal returns to normal. Daily Dispatch 3. 8. 72

(5) 2, 18. A cluster of huts occupied by one family or 'clan'.

They are divided into a great number of independant clans, or kraals, as they are termed ... Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

... combination ... head 19 2: see also headman 19. 2.

*see quot. at izibongo. 2.

*Zosterops spp.

The dour, stocky political patriarch of South Africa, ...
has the ironfistedness his fellow Afrikaners call kragdadigheid.
Time 28.6.76

Reorder quotes.

krans [krǎns] n. pl. -es

(1) 22. Also krantz, kranz: an overhanging sheer cliff face or crag, often overlooking a river or river bed. cf. Canad. rampart precipitous river bank.

But 'e wasn't takin' chances in them 'igh an' 'ostile kranzes -
He was markin' time to earn a K.C.B.
Kipling The Five Nations 1903

The vegetation consists largely of Mopane trees, the soil is sandy, and the rocky outcrops and kranzes are ideal as sleeping quarters for the baboons. Panorama May 1971

(2) -krans- n. prefix and suff.

27a. Cliff, crag: found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Kranskop, Kransberg, Klipkrans, Bloukrans, Swartkrans (qv) 34.

[Afk. krans = sheer rock wall poss. fr. High Ger. Kranz]

krans athlete [krǎns-] n. pl. -s

Slang. 19, 10. Baboon: an offensive mode of reference to an Afrikaner (qv) 19, also abbr. kransie 19, 10, thought by some to be the origin of crunchie (qv) 19, 10; see also rock(spider) 19, 10, hairy (back) 19, 10; rope 19, 10; plank 19, 10.

**

kransie [krǎnsi, kran-s-] n. pl. -s

Slang. 19, 10. See krans athlete 19, 10.

kreef [kri:f, kri:f] n. pl. ∅

12. Palinurus jesus lalandii the Cape rock lobster, Fr. langouste: see also crayfish 12, craytail 7.

'Crayfish' or 'kreeft' is also plentiful all through the summer. We also call it Cape Lobster. Hilda's Diary of a Cape Housekeeper 1912 cit. Pettman

In combination ~ boat 30, a fishing vessel carrying baskets, like Brit. lobster pots, for catching ~. Potted ~ 7, home made slightly spiced paté of ~.

[Afk. kreef = rock lobster, crawfish fr. Du. kreeft = lobster]

kremetart(boom) [,kremə'tart(bvəm)] n. pl. -bome

32. Adansonia digitata, the baobab tree, also called lemonade tree (qv) 32 from the fruits which contain citric acid, and cream of tartar tree 32 from the tartaric acid flavour of the solution ('lemonade') made from the pulp of the fruits.

Bush and koppie, withaak and kremetart and kameeldoorn were dreaming languidly under a cloudless sky. Bosman Unto Dust 1963

[Afk. fr. Du. kremetart = cream of tartar]

**

krans bee, n. pl. -s

21. Also black ~: the wild, indigenous S. Afr. honey bee: cf. Ang. Ind. dingar, large wild honey bee.

kreupelboom ['kr̥iœpəl, bʒəm] n.

32, 18. Leucospermum conocarpodendron (Proteaceae) a small tree with showy flowers, also goudsboom 32, much used for firewood hence brandhoutboom (firewood tree): [the bark was formerly used both medicinally and for tanning.]

12 Dec 1810. A long broad walk, or avenue, shaded by trees of the common English oak, divides the garden longitudinally, and leads from the street called the Heeregragt towards an uncultivated plain extending to the foot of Table Mountain, and, in some parts, abounding in low scrubby trees of Kreupelboom, much used for firewood. Burchell Travels I 1822

[Afk. fr. Du. kreupel = cripple fr. the bent lower branches + boom cogn. Ger. Baum = tree]

krev [krev] n. pl. -s

Slang. 19, 10. A crude or uncouth person: see also gom 19, 10: gops 19, 10: sometimes also an offensive mode of reference to an Afrikaner. [etym. unknown poss. fr. cleve = cliff]

krimpsiekte ['kr̥mp, s̥iktə] n.

11. Also nenta: Cotyledonosis, a disease of domestic animals esp. goats thought to be from eating various species of Cotyledon esp. C. cacaliodes, C. eckloniana Harr. and C. ventricosa Burm. all known as bossie 28, 11. There are two forms dun bossie (thin) and opblaas bossie ('bbwup', distended) i. e. the chronic form from habitual eating of small quantities of the plants, or the acute from sudden consumption of a large quantity. see nenta(bossie) 28, 11.

All our domestic animals are susceptible to krimpsiekte, but goats suffer chiefly as the krimpsiekte areas are mostly suitable for goat farming. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. krimp fr. Du. krimpen = shrink, diminish + siekte fr. Du. ziekte = disease]

kroes(ie) ['kr̥s̥i] adj.

29adj. 16. Frizzy, crisp, over-curly.

... the British Government wanted to give the vote to any Cape Coloured person walking about with a kroes head and big cracks in his feet. Bosman Unto Dust 1963

[Afk. kroes = frizzy + -ie fr. Eng. adjectival suff. -y]

kroesblaar ['kr̥s̥, bla:(r)] n.

11. Leaf curl: a virus disease of tobacco similar to leaf curl in peach trees.

... Kroesblaar ... very damaging in some years. Leaves appear crinkled, owing to deep sunk veins, and develop frilled leaf-like outgrowths from the under-surface of veins ... Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. kroes = curly + blaar = leaf]

kroeskop ['krūs,kɔp] n.

19. Someone with frizzy or over-curly hair: see korrelkop 19, 16: peperkorrels 16 and quot. at kroes 16, 29adj.

[Afk. kroes = frizzy + kop = head cogn. Ger. Kopf]

krom- [krɔm] adj. prefix

27i. Crooked: found in S. Afr. place names prefixed to n. e.g.

Kromdraai (qv), Kromkloof, Kromrivier. [Afk. krom = crooked]

Kromdraai(ape)man ['krɔm,draɪ] n. prop. pl. -men

34, 23. A primitive man, Paranthropus robustus or Australopithecus robustus, with an extraordinarily massive jaw, known from skull and other fragments discovered at Kromdraai, Transvaal, S. A.

cf. Swartkrans ape man 23, 34: see also Boskop man 23, 34.

[fr. place name Kromdraai]

kromnek(disease) ['krɔm,nek] n.

11. A virus disease of tomatoes, tobacco and other plants spread by feeding of thrip or white fly. U.S. tomato streak.

Kromnek: a very destructive disease which attacks plants at any age. Growth suddenly stops ... Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. krom = crooked + nek cogn. neck poss. sign. stalk]

kruidjie-roer-my-nie ['krœɪkɪ'ru:r,meɪ,nɪ] n.

28. Any of several species of Melanthus esp. M. major the leaves of which are highly toxic to animals: [however, excellent honey is produced from the copious nectar of the flowers hence the name heuningblom (honey flower) 13] [19. Used in Afk. of a touchy or 'stand-offish' person.] [Afk. fr. Du. kruidjie = little herb, plant + roer = touch + my = me + nie = not]

kruis [krœɪs] n.

27e. Cross: found in S. Afr. place names Het Kruis, Kruisfontein, Kruis Vallei. [Afk. fr. Du. kruis cogn. cross]

kruithoring ['krœɪt,hvərɔŋ] n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. 20. A horn usu. of a cow, with a lid or cap, used for the carrying and storage of gunpowder.

Each man had three rifles, ready primed with small bags of slugs at hand and the horns (kruithorings) filled with dry powder. Daily Dispatch 16. 12. 71

(2) 4b. The emblem of the Nationalist Party (qv) 4b.

[Afk. fr. Du. kruit = gunpowder + horing fr. Du. hoorn cogn. horn]

krummelpap ['kroeməl,pap] n.

7. A crumbly, dry-cooked mealie-meal (qv) 7 'porridge' served both as a breakfast food and as an accompaniment to meat and gravy or (2) braaivleis (qv) 7: see also putu 7, 2.

Mieliepap for every Taste. Have you tried it with meat & gravy? A real old time South African favourite - perfect at braais. Make the firm stywe pap or the dry and crumbly Krummelpap ... 'Krummelpap' (Crumbly): Add $\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoon salt to $\frac{1}{2}$ cup water and boil. Add 1 cup maize meal and boil slowly for 15 mins. Stir with fork till mixture becomes crumbly. Fair Lady 30.10.68

[Afk. krummel = crumb + pap = porridge]

kudu ['kʊdu, 'kʊdʊ] n. pl. ∅

6. Also koedoe: Strepsiceros capensis or S. strepsiceros, a large species of antelope with magnificent curling horns: shot for venison, biltong (qv) 7 and the hide: see leather/skin 5: a traffic hazard in the E. Cape: see quot.

At night, the car lights attract the kudu, which then tends to jump on to the vehicle. With these animals weighing up to 800 lbs, severe damage can be inflicted and lives endangered. Daily Dispatch 2.9.71

Farmers in five areas of the Eastern Cape have been allocated hunting permits to shoot 1 409 kudu during the June-July hunting season. E. Province Herald 12.6.73

feet 18. A style in furniture making cf. Brit. hoof feet both in silver and furniture.

... lounge suites made in ball and claw, Queen Anne or Kudu feet. Farmer's Weekly 21.4.72

skos 28, Haworthia viscosa see koedoekos 28.

leather/skin 5. The hide of the ~ sometimes used for making vel(d)skoen (qv) 5, whips etc.

GAME LEATHER SHOES, (veldskoene), Strong Kuduleather Uppers; feathercrepe soles, comfortable and durable, natural yellow or brown suede. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 21.4.72

Stockwhips from plaited Koodoo skins R3, 30; heavier R5, 30 ... Farmer's Weekly Advt. 20.3.74

[Afk. koedoe fr. Hott. prob. fr. Nama kudu-b or kudu-s]

kudu milk, n.

Poss. reg. E. Cape slang. 8. Brandy^{*} cf. Canad. moose milk, wolf juice. [also tiger/tier milk/melk (qv)]

Kudu milk is the Albany for brandy. Informant Guy Butler 1971

kugel ['kʊgəl] n. pl. -s

Sect. Jewish. 19. A young girl of the wealthier class whose interests are men, money and fashion, speaking a recognisable drawling dialect developed within the group.

... a kugel (kugel is a Yiddish word meaning pudding, but in this country it now also means daughters of wealthy parents whose only interest in life is their appearance and how to spend more money. Kugels have developed a jargon and accent of their own... Personality 29. 1. 71

[Yiddish kugel = a heavy suet pudding sometimes with raisins cf. Ger. Kugelhopf]

Kuhne meal n.

kuier ['kœiə(r)] vb intrns.

Coll. 29vb. To visit, usu. to make a stay as opposed to a call.

They soon began to feel themselves at home as they were allowed to visit, or as they call it, kuyer, at the kraal ... Burchell Travels I 1822

[Afk. kuier = to visit fr. Du. kuieren = to walk, stroll]

kuif [(keɪf) kœif] n. pl. -s

Coll. usu. among young boys. 16. Also errone kyf (pron. sp.) a brushed back quiff of hair as opposed to a forward brushed fringe.

For heaven's sake Ma don't make my hair into a kuif. ' Boy aged 12 1973

[Afk. kuif cogn. quiff (of hair)]

kuil- [kœil] n.

27a. Pool, hole, pit: found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Kuilsriver, Kuilfontein. [Afk. kuil = water-hole]

kuku ['kũ,kũ] n. pl. -s

Coll. 11. A fowl: see koekoek 12. cf. Austr. chook(y). [Ngu. nkuku = a fowl prob. onomat]

kukumakranka [,kũkũma'kraŋka, ,kœkũmæ'kraŋkə] n.

28, 14. All the species of Gethyllis: usu. sign. their fragrant club-shaped fruit which are eaten, dried for scenting rooms or cupboards, or infused as ~ brandy 16 : see quot. a remedy for abdominal discomfort, colic etc.

On Green Point and on the Flats in the neighbourhood of Cape Town, grows a celebrated little plant which still preserves its original Hottentot name being known by no other than that of kukuma-kranki. It has ... a bulbous root close to which is produced a long, yellow, soft fruit, of the length and size of a lady's finger, its top just appearing above the ground. The taste of it is somewhat pleasant, but its smell is delightful, having a perfumed odour of ripe fruit for which it is chiefly valued. Burchell Travels I 1822

South Africans have for generations attached a particular value to kukumakranka brandy, buchu brandy, clove brandy etc., and these bottles occupied an honoured place in the medicine chest. Opperman Spirit of the Vine 1968

Kuni/ymeal ['kuni-] n.

See Kuhne meal.

"It's a loaf of Gary Player bread" ... "It's supposed to be made from something called kuni meal but I just used flour ... Molly Reinhart cit. Sunday Times 22.12.74

Kupugani [,kǔpǔ'gani] n. prop.

A non-profit making organisation established in 1962 for supplying nourishing food at below-retail prices, esp. to Africans:

attributively ~ soup kitchens, ~ biscuits etc.

] unknown: said to mean 'help yourself']

Their slogan is 'Nutrition is our Business'. They are Kupugani, a non-profit making organisation which aims at providing nourishing food at low cost to the needy. *Fair Lady* 13.11.74 p 21.

kussingslaan ['koes n, slaan] n.

Traditional game: see also boeresport.

Amid cheers of "very good, Boetie!" these youngsters had a go at "kussingslaan" (a pillow fight on a beam) - one of the traditional boeresport items. *Panorama* Oct. 1975

[Afk. kussing = pillow + slaan = to strike, hit]

E

... a jar with a stout stopper, half filled with brandy, each koekemakranka placed in the liquid and the jar tightly screwed. After a period of fermenting, the liquid could be used as a remedy for stomach complaints. Cape Argus 29.5.71
[Hott. name]

kunmeal ['kuni-] n.

7. ~~Very coarse, crushed wholewheat flour used for kuni- or kunimeal bread.~~ ~~cf. Boer meal (qv) 7. [unknown].~~ See kunne meel
See quot. at addenda p.584.

kurper ['kɔpə] n. pl. -s

12. Any of several varieties of freshwater bream of the family Cichlidae: in combinations banded ~, blue ~, canary ~, Cape ~, rooibors(red breast) ~ etc: see quot. at moggel 12, and at oog 27e.
Loskop Dam, which has been the scene of record-breaking kurper catches ... is at last delivering some nice fish, mostly from the kurper shoals congregating in the Olifants River inflow ... had limit bags of blue kurper over a weekend outing. Sunday Times 27.10.74
[Afk. fr. Du. karper = carp]

kurvey [kɜ'veɪ] vb intrns.

Obs. 31, 30, 29vb. To convey goods by oxwagon, usu. over long distances, from the coast up country. ~ or n. pl. -s 19. A carrier: see also transport rider/ing 30, 19. cf. Canad. packer.

... according to local legend a karweier of the early days, an English transport rider nicknamed John Bull, drove his horse too hard up that hill, so that it died. Lawrence Green These Wonders to Behold 1959

~ ing 30 vbl n. the trade of a kurveyor 19.

I tried a trip at kurveying, I took a load to Fort Willshire. Thomas Stubbs Reminiscences 1876

[fr. Afk. karwei = to cart goods prob. by folk etym fr. Du. karweien = to do a job]

Kussingslaan see addenda p.590.

kustingbrief ['kœstɪŋbrɪf] n. pl. -ven

Sect. Roman Du. Law. 30, 4b. A special type of mortgage bond (qv) 30, passed simultaneously with registration of title securing the purchase price of the property.

A kustingbrief is a particular variety of special mortgage bond. It is a bond intended to secure the purchase of land and passed simultaneously with the transfer thereof. Wille The Law of Mortgage and Pledge 1961

[Afk. fr. Du. kusting = mortgage + brief = letter, note]

kwaai [kwai] adj.

Coll. 29adj. 16, 10. Bad tempered, harsh: vicious or savage if used of an animal: in combination ~ vriende 10; see also bad friends 10, and in place name 27i Kwaihoek. cf. Austr. fr. dial. Eng. maggoty, ill-tempered, also niggly, lemony.

The Daily News commenting on President Kruger's recent speech, says it is all to the good, when there is any question of tampering with the paramount position of Great Britain, that the Queen should be found "een kwaai vrouw." E. Province Herald 15. 3. 1897

But oh, my dear Baas, I am very frightened of the old Miesies! She is so kwaai, that old Miesies. Meiring Candle in the Wind 1959

... don't say anything. Just sit still. Pretend we're still kwaai vriende. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969

[Afk. kwaai fr. Du. kwaad = bad]

kwaal [kwa:l(ə)] n. pl. kwale

Slang. 16, 10. Ailment, complaint, usu. pl.

Don't ask her how she's feeling, she's always full of kwale and you'll never get away. Schoolgirl aged 15, 1973

[Afk. kwaal = complaint]

kwagga ['kwaxa] n. pl. \emptyset , -s

6. Also obs. kwakka, see quagga 6.

Kwazulu [,kwa'zulu,] n. prop.

23. Formerly Zululand.

The people of KwaZulu want to live in one land and not the Bantustan pieces. Drum 8.9.72

On March 30, 1972, a legislative assembly was established for KwaZulu. The assembly was constituted on the same lines as the former Zulu territorial authority (in accordance with the Bantu Authorities Act of 1951) ... Panorama July 1973

[Zu. kwa - adv. locative formative equiv. of 'at' or 'in' + Zulu = sky, heaven (praise name^x)]

kwedin [,kwe'din] n.

19, 2. A young boy usu. Xhosa (see Zu. umfaan 19, 2,) strictly only before circumcision: see abakwetha 19, 2: occ. loosely used of any boy or child.

One White trader complained that kwedings (boys) had destroyed more than 1 000 white telephone cups in the Idutywa area by shooting at them with catapults. Daily News 18.12.70

Come on you kwedins, call Mum, jump in the truck and we'll be off to town. N. E. Cape Farmer, Sept. 1973

[contraction of Xh. inKwenkwendini vocative case of inKwenkwe = uncircumcised boy]

kweek [kwræk] n.

11, 28. Also quick (qv) 28 (prob. error): a name generally applied to several lawn or pasture grasses referring to their habit of growth i. e. propagating by underground or surface runners, which root at the nodes. Orig. Cynodon dactylon, fyn ~ called 'fine quick', also Stenotaphrum secundatum; growwe ~ known as coarse quick.

Also in numerous compounds e.g. khaki ~ 28, see (3)khaki;
rooi ~ (red) 28; strand ~ (seashore) 28 etc.

There is a large number of pasture grasses which develop dangerous amounts of prussic acid when they are wilted. The most dangerous of these are the "quick grasses" or "kweekgras" different species of Cynodon. Handbook for Farmers in S.A. 1937

[Afk. fr. Du. kweek = dog's grass poss. rel. kweken = to cultivate, grow]

kwela ['kwelə, 'kwe:la] n. or n. prop.

15, 2. African pennywhistle music: see quot.

The Xhosa verb - kwela is in this context used to mean to begin, to get moving. The word, which originally meant to climb, assumed this different meaning during the time of the penny whistle music. Before the famous pennywhistle group, the Black Mambazo with which Kwela Music is associated), began playing, their leader would talk dramatically, and to notify his band that he had finished and that they should begin playing he would say 'Kwela' meaning begin. From this, then, the name 'Kwela music' was given to pennywhistle music. Drum December 1965

Here is Lemmy Special Mabaso who put kwela and the penny-whistle on the map and took kwela music around the world. Drum Mar. 1971

[Ngu. khwela (vb) climb on, mount]

kwela-kwela ['kwelə-'kwelə] n. pl. -s

Orig. [A.E.] 2, 4b. A police van, pick-up van.

On the left is the kwela-kwela van used on April 2 when three prisoners died. The picture was taken when the judge trying the driver and his assistant ... inspected the van. Golden City Post 27. 4. 69

A young cop in a kwela-kwela who happened to be passing by, gave chase. Drum 8. 11. 72

[Ngu. khwela = climb on, in, mount]

kwêvoël ['kwe:,fʌl] n. pl. -s

3. The go-away bird (qv) 3 or grey loerie (qv) Corythaixoides concolor concolor, occ. known as groot(great)muisvoël 3 from the similarity of appearance: see quot. at Spooring

[onomat. fr. bird's alarm call]

K.W.V. ['keɪ,dʌblju'vi:, 'kɑ,vi 'fi:] n. prop

30, 8. Cooperative wine producers union often used as prefix e.g.

K.W.V. 10 year Old (Brandy) etc.: see quot. at Kimberley Club 8 and at (1) hanepoot 14.

[acronym Koöperatieve Wijnbouwers Vereniging]

kyf [keɪf] n. pl. -s

16. Erron. form kuif (qv) 16.

L

laager [ˈla:gə(r)]

(1) n. pl. -s Hist. 26, 31. A semi-fortified usu. circular encampment of wagons lashed together for the protection of the people and animals within, and as a barricade from which to fire on attackers; the regular defence of the Voortrekkers (qv) 26, 19 and other pioneers; occ. loosely a refuge from attack by hostile tribes; see second quot. cf. Canad. corral n. a circle of wagons.

... the Voortrekkers began to see the folly of the lonely laager in a country ravaged by savage hordes. A laager was formed by the wagons being drawn up, end to end, to form a circle, square or triangle, according to the nature of the terrain. The spaces between the wheels were barricaded with rawhide riems and thorn-bushes. Mockford Here are S. Africans 1944

This farmhouse had formed a valuable laager and refuge for other neighbouring members of the Bowker family during these Kaffir Wars, as it was best suited for protection purposes. E. Province Herald 9.2.73

(2) vb trans. freq. pass or as partic. (Hist.) 29vb. To form or be formed into a (1) ~ .

... advanced into their country with 5 weak columns, did not laager the camp at Isandula [Isandhlwana] and this occasioned the fearful disaster there. Sir James E. Alexander MS. Sketch Book 1878-

The transport wagons were to be laagered and left behind. Stuart Cloete Rags of Glory 1963

(3) 27e. In Afk. form laer, in place name Laerfontein, Laersdrif, Laerwag.

[Afk. poss. fr. Ger. Lager cogn. Eng. lair]

(4) 4b. Figur. a protective environment usu. in a political sense sign. an ideologically impenetrable enclosure.* [cf. Brit. figur. fold n. esp. in ecclesiastical sense.] *see (1) and (3) kraal.

... ex-servicemen returning to South Africa from the war had a more cosmopolitan outlook. People wanted to read what was happening outside the laager and turned to the overseas magazines which poured on to the market. Personality 11.6.71

Dr. —'s main assignment, after all, is to bring as many Afrikaners as possible back into the laager. Sunday Times 24.9.72

[fr. (1) laager]

laagte [ˈla xtə] n. pl. -s

(1) 22. Also leegte: a low lying area, valley, dip or depression. cf. Brit. and U.S. bottom(s), low lying grass land, also Canad. river bottom.

A herd of wildebeeste and zebra were grazing in a leegte. Stuart Cloete Turning Wheels 1937

Two leopards, a male and a female, trotted down the easy slope of a three-mile-wide laagte ... Stander The Horse 1968

(2) -laagte n. suff. 27a. ^{Also leegte:} low lying area, dip, found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Hollaagte, Elandslaagte, Langlaagte, Volstruisleegte (ostrich). cf. U.S. Mississippi River Bottoms.

[Afk. fr. Du. laagte = valley, low ground, alternate form leegte]

I shall miss ... Table Mountain but it will be good to see bowler hats sloshing their way to work once more, and I do prefer 'luv' to 'lady'. Letter English visitor 1.1.75

-laan [la:n] n. suff.

27a. Avenue: found in street names e.g. Eikelaan, Stellenberglaan.
[Afk. fr. Du. laan cogn. lane]

laatlammetjie ['lat,lamiki, -ci] n. pl -s

Coll. A child born long after the others in a family. cf. Eng. 'afterthought': occ. in trans. 'a late lamb.'

[Afk. laat cogn. late + lammetjie = lambkin]

She told me she was born when her mother was 40.
"I was a laatlammetjie - twelve and sixteen years behind my two brothers and I cried and nagged for a little brother or sister to play with." Fair Lady 17.9.75

lacky/ie ['laeki] n.

Coll. Sect. Children 15. Strong, stretching rubber usu. square in section used for making catapults: see cattie 15 and mik 15: also knicker elastic etc.
[presum. fr. elastic]

lady, n.

1. A mode of address usu. among Afk. speakers, more courteous than 'madam': see mevrouw 1, 19: [sometimes misinterpreted by SAE^{or other} speakers as an impertinence^x as in U.S. 'Step on the gas, lady' etc.] *See quot. at addenda p. 584.

* I do wish the man on the telephone exchange wouldn't call me 'lady', I can't bear it. Informant ex Cape Town aged about 40.

That's quite all right lady. I jus' come to visit. Don't worry about me. MacLennan The Wake 1971

[trans. Afk. dame = lady]

ladyfinger(s) n. usu. pl.

Poss. reg. Natal, not only SAE. 14. Small-fruited delicately flavoured bananas: also Jam. E., U.S.

ladyfish, n. pl. Ø

12. See (2) moonfish 12.

Laëveld ['laə,felt] n. (prop).

22. See lowveld 22.

laer ['laər] 27e. See (3) laager 27e: for combination ~ plek 26 see quot. at gatjaponner 19, 4a.

lager ['la:gər] n.

26. See (1), (2) laager 26,

laksman ['laks,man] n.

3. Executioner, hangman: name for the Fiscal Shrike Fiscus (Lanius) collaris collaris: see Jan Fiskaal 3 [also in combination e.g. boslaksman (bush shrike), applied to numerous species of the Laniidae]

It is commonly known as the 'Jack-hanger' and 'Butcher bird' in the Cape, the 'Jacky-hangman' in Natal, and the Lachsman in the Transvaal. Haagner and Ivy S. Afr. Bird Life 1908 cit. Pettman [Afk. fr. Malay laksamana, title of high ranking state official, hence equation with Fiscal (qv) 17 one of whose concerns was corporal punishment]

lambili/e strap [,lam'bilĩ, -e] n. pl. -s

2, 5. See girdle of famine 5, hunger belt 5.

The leathern strap worn round the waist is called by the savages a lambele strap, or hunger-girdle. Harris Wild Sports of S. A. 1839

[Ngu. Xh. ukulambile = to be hungry, Zu. lambile perfect of lamba = become hungry]

lammergeier ['lamə(r),xəɾə(r)] n. pl. -s

3. Used of S. Afr. species of ~: any of several species of Gypaetus (Aquilidae) the largest European bird of prey: see lammer-vanger 3.

lammervanger ['lamə(r),faŋə(r)] n.

3. Also lammergeier^x (qv) 3: used of the tawny or golden eagle of S. A. Aquila rapax rapax (kouvoël), and of the rare Gypaetus meridionalis (Aquilidae) which destroys lambs and poultry.

The South African birds which you begin to know very quickly are the egret, or tick-bird, the secretary bird, the big eagle, the lammervanger, who is sometimes seen sitting on a rock brooding, or more often gliding about the sky on unmoving wings ... H. V. Morton In Search of S. A. 1948

MALTAHOHE, Thursday. - A 13 year-old White youth captured a long taloned golden eagle (lammervanger) with his bare hands here. Daily News 4. 6. 70

[Afk. fr. Du. lammer = lambs + vang=catch + agent. suff. -er]

lamsiekte ['lam,sĩktə] n.

22. A paralytic disease of cattle caused by eating toxin-containing organic material esp. bones, in phosphate deficient areas where 'osteophagia', bone craving, is frequent: [dosing with bonemeal is sometimes adopted as a preventative measure] also gal ~ (gall, bile) bovine parabotulism, as above, complicated by anthrax or splenic fever: see also styfsiekte 11.

... Messrs. P. and C. — lost 6 cows from lamziekte ...
They say that they are even more convinced than ever that the
disease is caused through the cattle eating putrid bones. E. Province
Herald 25. 1. 1921

[Afk. fr. Du. lam = paralytic cogn. lame + siekte fr. Du. ziekte =
disease]

land, n. pl. -s

11. A cultivated field, usu. fenced, see camp vb 11, 29vb. cf. Brit.
field, similarly combined wheat ~, mealie ~ etc. *see also good at. kweekgras*

... Lands - Excellent for all kinds of grain; at present there
are lands for 16 bags of mealies, but more lands can be made. *and*
The Friend Advt. 25. 8. 1930 *ant heap*

About fifty years ago the grave was dug up by some farmers
while they were making a land. Metrowich Frontier Flames 1968
In combination dry ~ 11; see also irrigation farm 11.

... well improved mixed farm ... 120 Hectares dry lands
and 5 hectares under irrigation ...

12, 8ha Irrigation. 214ha Magnificent dry lands. Balance
thick bushveld teeming with game.

Farmer's Weekly Advts. 21. 4. 72

~camp, a fenced cultivated area as opposed to fenced or enclosed
grazing. see also camp 11.

The farm is divided into four grazing camps and 10 land
camps - well fenced and watered ... Daily Dispatch Advt. 14. 8. 71
[Afk. fr. Cape Du. land = cultivated or arable field]

Land Bank, n. prop.

4b, 11. An autonomous institution responsible through Parliament
to the Minister of Finance: its main business being to advance money
to farmers, and agricultural co-ops. ~ loans are of four types,
mortgage loans, charge loans, hypothec* loans and loans in the form
of cash credit accounts.

... such a scheme would have to be partly or largely financed
by either the Land Bank or some other financial organisation. Where
else may one obtain the finance required and at what rates of interest?
... Money is very scarce and expensive. The Land Bank's rate of
interest is six per cent, plus an insurance premium of between 1½ and
two per cent. Farmer's Weekly 21. 4. 72

[abbr. Land and Agricultural Bank of South Africa]

* 'Roman and Civil law : an obligation, right or security given by
contract or by operation of law to a creditor over property of the
debtor without transfer of possession or title to the creditor.'
Webster's Third International Dictionary.

landdrost ['lan(t),drɔst, 'læn,drɔst] n. pl. -s

Hist. 17. A magistrate having jurisdiction over a particular
magisterial district or drostdy (qv) 17, superior in rank to the field/
veld cornet (qv) 17. cf. Canad. (hist.) district warden.

District of Cape Town His Majesty's Fiscal Officiates
as Landdrost for this District. African Court Calendar for 1807

13 Oct 1830 Whereas the office of landdrost was abolished on the 31st day of December, 1827 ... Statutes of the Cape of Good Hope (1862)

Before civil commissioners were appointed for the Cape districts, the landroost was the chief officer in each; and his residence was styled "the droostdy." Alexander Western Africa II 1837
[Du. land = country + drost = sheriff, bailiff]

lang [ˈlaŋ(ə)] \ adj. prefix

27i. Long: found in S. Afr. place names as prefix to n. Langkloof, Langverdriet (sorrow), Langberg, Langklip; also with attrib. inflect. Langeberg, Langebaan or as adv. in Langgewens (long wished for, desired). [Afk. fr. Du. lang cogn. long (+ attrib. inflect. suff. -e)]

langbek [ˈlaŋ,bek] adj/adv.

Coll. 10, 16, 19, 29 A/P/A. Used of one who is sulky, pouting or depressed: see also dikbek 16, 10, 29 adj. cf. Brit. phr. down in the mouth. [Afk. lang cogn. long + bek (qv) = mouth]

Language Movement, n. prop. pl. -s

34, 4b. See Taalbeweging 34, 4b, *addenda p. 585.*

lap [lap] n.

18, 10. See lappie 18, 10.

¹lapa [ˈlapə, -a] adv./modifier

Coll. 10. 'Here', or demon. 'this' as in 'lapa side.' In combination language 23, an appellation for fanakalo (qv) 23, 30: see also chilapalapa 23. [Ngu. lapa = here, this side]

²lapa, n.

2. The courtyard of a cluster of Ndebele houses: see quot.

The houses ... are structures built on the simplest rectangular plan. But each complex is integrated in an individual fashion. In some, the units are grouped about a centralised fore-court - or "lapa" - with entrance through a gateway in the decorated "lapa" wall. Panorama May 1974

[Ndebele courtyard]

lap(pie) [ˈlap(i), ˈlæpi] n. pl. -s

Coll. 18, 10. Any cloth or rag for cleaning, dusting, patching etc: *

Someone on foot gave the man who held the letter a white lappie tied to a stick, a white rag on a stick - a flag of truce. Stuart Cloete Hill of Doves 1942

*see quot. at verneuk 29vb.

In combination: pop 15, a rag doll [pop = doll]; smeer (qv) slang, 19, 10, 11 'grease-rag' term of abusive address or reference; jammer (pie) a damp cloth used for spills, accidents or for wiping the hands at a (1) braai (qv) 15, etc.

Table napkins were seldom provided in those days, but a special wet cloth known as a jammerlappie was passed around after a meal so that guests could wipe their hands. Lawrence Green When the Journey's Over 1972

pie legs 16. n. modif. Used of one with poor or sloppy gait.

piesmous 30. A soft goods pedlar, see smous 19, 30.

tjanga (pie) 2, 5. Coll. see beshu 2, 5, mutsha and tanga.

[Afk. lap = rag, cloth + dimin. suff. -(p)ie]

lawaai [,la'vaɪ] n.

Coll. Slang. 10. Noise, disturbance, row: see also bohaai 10.

Then this morning in all the lawaai and mix-up - gone! I wanted to look, but Boesman was in a hurry. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969 1973 edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. prob. ex Low Ger. lawaai = noise, row]

lay-by, n. and n. modifier

30. The reservation of an article by payment of a deposit followed by regular instalments, or the article itself: also Austr. lay-by n. also occ. as vb trns. to reserve an article in this way.

LAY-BY SHOPPING HAS PITFALLS FOR UNWARY Shopping on the lay-by system has pitfalls for the unwary buyer. If a person finds he cannot continue paying instalments on the article reserved for him in the shop, he seldom gets his money back. E. Province Herald 11.6.73

lead water, vb phr.

29vb, 11. To irrigate, usu. by means of sloots (qv) 18, 11 or furrows (qv) 18, 11 from a public supply in towns which have water erven (see erf 18), from farm dams or other irrigation schemes: freq. in form lead out water: see quot.

On examining the banks I observed with regret the impracticability of leading out the water for irrigating the adjoining lands by dams and ditches - the usual and only method of cultivating the soil in the interior of Southern Africa. Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

It's mainly a matter of water. Piet has spent most of his money on that; he's made furrows, built dams. The whole farm is a network of furrows that follow the contours; he can lead water anywhere. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

[trans. Afk. water lei]

leader, n. pl. -s

(1) Hist. 31, 26, 19. A small boy, often a Hottentot, employed to lead a team of draught oxen for those travelling by wagon: see voorloper 19, 31; touleier 19, 31.

... little Hottentot boys, who usually run before and guide them ... The attachment of the animals to their little leaders is very great, and sometimes you will see them look about for them and keep bellowing and uneasy until they come to their heads. Percival Account of the C. of G.H. 1804

23 Feb 1812 Old Hans had engaged a Half-Hottentot, named Daniel Kaffer, and his son, to be the driver and leader of my waggon from the river bed to Klaarwater. Burchell Travels I 1822

(2) Hist. 26, 19. Used of the head of an 1820 Settler party (qv) 26.

The plan of the large joint-stock parties was ill devised, and proved a fertile source of disunion. The heads or leaders were in many instances merely nominal, and neither in property nor intelligence superior to their followers. Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

[(1)trans. Du. and Afk. leier cogn. leader, prob. fr. touleier (qv) 19, 31, 26, (2) Eng. leader]

leaguer ['li:gə] n. pl. -s

24, 3. An old Dutch liquid measure of 5.82 hectolitres, about 150 gallons, sometimes a vessel containing this, or a greater amount: [see quot. at (1) hanepoot presum. not obs.]

... the wine is kept in very large vessels somewhat shaped like the hogshead ... Each of these butts or reservoirs, which they call leaguers though an inapplicable term, as a leager is a measure of one hundred and fifty gallons, will contain from six to seven hundred gallons. Percival Account of the C. of G. H. 1804

... the roads are bad, lying chiefly through deep sand, and require eighteen oxen to convey two leaguers of 152 gallons each, occupying two or three days to perform the journey... Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

[fr. Du. ligger, legger]

learn, vb

(1) vb intrns. Substand. 29vb, 34. Used mainly by children as equiv. of 'swot' or 'study' as in 'I've been learning for three hours' or 'I must go and learn.'

(2) vb trns. Substand. To teach. cf. Brit. slang 'I'll l(e)arn you': see quot. at fanagalo 23.

[trans. Afk. leer = to teach, learn cogn. O. E. laeran = to teach]



(-)leegte ['li:xtə] n. pl. -s

22, 27a. See (1), (2) (-)laagte 22, 27a.

leeningsplaats ['li:nɪŋs,plɑ(t)s] n. pl. -en

17. See loan place/farm 17, and quot. at opstal.

Varanus niloticus (water leguaan)
Varanus albigularis (rock leguaan)

lekker ['lekə(r)] adj.

Coll. A term of general approbation esp. among children sign. pleasant, excellent, delicious etc. Sometimes rendered as adv. + -ly, also inflected _____ est: see also mooi and quot. at nog-'n-piep. cf. Austral. beaut, bottler n. and adj. (something or somebody), excellent.

Lekker kost as much as you please,
Excellent beds without any fleas.

Sign - Farmer Peck's Inn near Muizenberg circa 1840 cit
Gordon-Brown S.Afr. Heritage 1965

K — makes lekker padkos ... packs to feed any
number of travellers ... tastiest takealong food for people on the
move. Advt. E. Province Herald 28.5.76

'XYZ the Lekkerest thing between meals !' E. Province
Herald Advt. 7.10.75

In place names Lekkerdraai, Lekkerlag and Lekkerrus.

leervis/fish ['lɛə(r),fɛs] n. pl. -Ø

12. Hypacanthus amia also called garrick: an edible S. Afr. game fish, cf. Austr. leather jacket, thought to be named for its leathery skin.

... more leervis should be caught in our waters. This is a wide ranging fish round the Eastern Cape where it was*found wherever salt water occurs. Leervis are caught at sea, in the surf and in estuaries right up to the highest point of tidal influence in some rivers. E. Province Herald 2.5.74 *[sic]

[Afk. fr. Du. leer, leder = leather + vis fr. Du. visch cogn. fish]

leeu- [lju:] n. prefix

(1) 27d. Lion: found in place names e.g. Leeukop, Leeublad, Leeukraal, Leeufontein.

(2) 28. As prefix in plant names esp. ~ bekkie 13 (little mouth) = Antirrhinum magus, also Nemesia capensis; ~ gras 28, Aristida marlothii, see twa(a) grass 28; ~ doring 28, Harpagophytum recumbens. [Afk. fr. Du. leeuw= lion]

leguaan ['legʊɑn] n. pl. -s

6. Also Afk. likkewaan: various spellings: the iguana, a species of monitor lizard Varanus usu. V. niloticus which attains a maximum length of between 2 and 3 metres in S. A. Austr. go(h)anna, iguana, Varanus: see quot. at kaaiman 6.

... frequented by the leguaan, a species of amphibious lizard, growing to the length sometimes of six feet, but quite innoxious. Thompson Travels in S. A. 1 1827

legkotla, [,le'xɔtla] n. pl. (a)ma-

2. A tribal court, now urban: see also makgotla 2, kgotla 2.

An indication of local concern with crime has been the re-emergence of the traditional legkotla, or tribal court, ... The legkotla tries offenders and dispenses the rough justice of public floggings with a sjambok on Sunday mornings in Naledi township. Sunday Times 27.10.74

[Sotho (le)kgotla = courtyard, court]

lekker ['lekə(r)] adj.

Coll. 29adj. 10. A term of general approbation esp. among children sign. pleasant, excellent, delicious etc. Sometimes rendered as adv. + -ly: see also mooi 29adj. 10: also in place names 27i Lekker-draai, Lekkerlag and Lekkerrus. cf. Austr. beaut, bottler n., adj. (something or somebody) excellent. See also addenda p. 588, and quot. at neg. in piep. 9.

~~Multum in parvo! Pro bono publico.~~

~~Entertainment for man and beast, all of a row.~~

Lekker kost as much as you please,

Excellent beds without any fleas.

Sign - Farmer Peck's Inn near Muizenberg, ^{circa 1840.} cit.

Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

K. makes lekker padkos pads to feed any number of travellers ... tastiest take-along food for people on the move. Adv. E. Province Herald 28.5.76

Freq. in combination ou, see ou 1, 19.

To rank as a lekker ou at Bishops, Michaelhouse or St. Andrews is surely not to have lived in vain no matter how savagely the inwardly delighted recipient of this accolade lashes out at corruptions of English pure and undefiled ... "He was a lekker ou" Jislaik! Cape Times 1.8.72

jeuk [^{ˈjœk}] [jeuk = itch] Coll.16. Scabies: a skin disease caused by parasites ... would appear to have something called lekker-yuk, and this can be cured with anti-scabies lotion. Post 21.6.70

Also lewe [^{ˈlɔvə}] 10 [lewe cogn. life] cf. Italian la dolce vita

The Boer's idea of what he called the lekker lewe, the sweet life, was the free and easy life of the frontier. ... It would be pleasant to report that they had attained the lekker lewe. But the lekker lewe, of course, is one more mirage; it is not a state that men can ever achieve, or were meant to achieve. White The Land God Made in Anger 1969

We have developed an attitude of "we can't do that, it's Kaffir's work." Yes, we prefer "die lekker lewe." Evening Post 21.10.72

and prefix lekkerruik-²⁸, pleasant-smelling: prefixed to certain plant and flower names: bossie either of two species of Lippia 28; gras Eleonurus argenteus 28, heide/heath sweetly scented species of Erica 13; pypie 13 Cyrtanthus suaveolens, see brandlelie.

[Afk. fr. Du. lekker = nice tasting, dainty, pleasant etc.]

-lilie- [^{ˈlɪlɪ}] n. prefix and suff.

(1) 13. Lily, suffixed to certain names of flowers e.g. vark (qv) 13, berg (qv) 13, blouwater 13, see kaaimansblom, also paddapreekstoel 28, 13; brand (qv) 13 etc.

(2) 27c. Lily: found in S. Afr. place names e.g. Leliesfontein, Blouleliesbos.

[Afk. fr. Du. cogn. lily]

lemonade tree, n. pl. -s

32. Adansonia digitata: the baobab tree: see kremetartboom 32.

In these pods is the white pulp that gives the baobab yet another name, the "lemonade tree", for when this is mixed with water it makes a refreshing drink with the cream of tartar flavour. Lawrence Green Full Many a Glorious Morning 1968

lend, vb trns.

Substand. 29vb. Borrow, as in 'Can I lend your tennis racquet?'

cf. borrow 29vb [A.E.]^x [trans. or translit. Afk. leen = borrow, also lend]^x *Reign of pop on a net. In case if [his hair] gets caught in the machine he lands the net off of his own only the fat little sequins off first part 7.10.74.*

length, n.

Substand. 24. Height, as in 'Give your length and waist measurement.' Adv. Sunday Times (no date). [translit. Afk. leñgte = height (of a person)]

Leopard, n. prop. pl. -s

15, 19. A member of the African S. Afr. national rugby team, black equiv. of rugby Springbok (qv) 15, 19.

The burly Leopards prop, M. — M — was fired when he reported back from Italy at his job as a labourer at a factory ... here yesterday. E. Province Herald 29. 5. 74

Lesotho [lə'sutũ, ,le-] n. prop.

23. The country formerly known as Basutoland: see also Botswana 23, Kwazulu 23: see quot. at makulu 29adj. 2.

let, vb trns.

Substand. 29vb. To cause to do, to make, not equiv. of 'permit' or 'allow': as in 'Order the things and let the shop deliver them.'

I don't want to give up work - I won't until my doctor lets me. Informant aged about 25 1969

[translit. Afk. laat = to cause to do, make; cogn. O. E. forlaetan = to cause to do]

leting ['le,tɪŋ] n.

2, 8. A Sotho drink, not as strong as Kaffir beer (qv) 8, 2.

Before the day had ended a bag of green mealies and a large pot of leting, which is a milder drink than kaffir beer, found its way to our doorstep. Victor Pohl The Dawn and After 1964

[Sotho leting]

lice, pl. n.

21. See louse 21, 11

liedjie [lɪkɪ, -cɪ] n. pl. -s

15. An Afrikaans folk song: see also boeremusiek 15.

The songs, in the Afrikaans language, were plainly old folk-songs, known in South Africa as 'liedjies'; but not one of the listeners could recognise either tunes or words. Lawrence Green Where Men Still Dream 1945

Afrikaans liedjies and some of the Bantu singing that made an impression during the Royal Tour will be a feature of a £25,000 "Meet South Africa" exhibition due to open in London on March 18. E. Province Herald 6. 3. 48

[Afk. fr. Du. lied = song cogn. Ger. Lied(er) + dimin. suff. -jie]

lightning bird, n.

2, 16. See mpundulu bird, 2, 16.

He went on to speak of the Lightning Bird and other things which caused trouble. Iris Vaughan Last of the Sunlit Years 1969

likkewaan ['lɛkə,vɑ n] n. pl. -s

6. See leguaan 6 and quot. at kaaiman 6. [Afk. fr. Du. leguaan]

line, n.

18. Loosely used of string of any thickness even thin rope.
[translit. Afk. lyn = string, rope, cord]

links [lɛŋks] direction

31. Left: see hou ~ 10, 9. [Afk. links = left (direction)]

linnebaai ['lɛnə,baɪ(ɪ)] n.

Obs. 5. A fabric of wool and linen used for clothing in the early days.
cf. Brit. and U.S. linsey-woolsey: see also quot. at kombers 18.

... plain and printed Muslins, Voerchits, Linnebaay, Sail
Canvass ... Grahamstown Journal 1.8.1833

[Afk. linne fr. Du. linnen = linen + baai = flannel, baize]

liretlo [lɪ'retlɔ] n.

2. Ritual killing as practised among the Basotho: see quot. *also ritual*

... the Moruti, the priest who had baptised him ... *murder.*
denounced all killing as evil, and Liretlo, the ritual killing, as the
greatest evil of all. ... the clever lawyer ... had surely made plain
to the court that Liretlo was not murder as was any other killing where
men took life for some petty personal motive such as gain, greed,
revenge or lust for power. That which had been done had been done
for the good of all Lesotho - and was the proof of the matter not clear
for all to see. The crops were good and the land fertile. Fulton
The Dark Side of Mercy 1968

[Sotho liretlo = ritual killing]

litre, liter, n.

24. A measure of cubic capacity in S. A.: see volume 24.

210 litre freezer R10, 32 monthly 210 litre refrigerator
R9, 42 monthly. Advt. circular received 28.5.74

Deep-Freezers Big '15' 428-litre Pretoria News 3.10.74

little, adj.

29 Red. adj. Used redundantly in SAE as direct transference of Afk.
dimin. form of noun following klein = small e.g. 'n klein blikkie = a
small tin.

You think I haven't got secrets in my heart too? That's mine.
Sies! Small little word, hey. Sies. But it fits. Fugard Boesman and
Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

What's the use of buying a small little tin like that? Overheard
in Supermarket 1972

[fr. Afk. suff. -tjie, -jie, -ie etc.]

loan place/farm, n. pl. -s

Hist. 17. A tract of land, originally granted at an annual rent of twenty-four rixdollars (qv) 17, 24, the tenure being a lease in perpetuity; some ~s became quit-rent estates: see also quot. at improvement 18.

Land Tax or Rent of Estates, which (with the exception of a few freeholds) are all held of Government under the denomination of Loan Lands or Places, and at a rent for each place of twenty four rixdollars per annum, and the regular payment of this rent insures a perpetuity of the lease. The method of allotting and laying out their estates is singular enough. [On the spot where the houses are to be erected, a stake is driven into the ground, and round it as the centre a circle is described, with a radius of half an hours walk, care being taken that no part of this circle infringes on the adjoining estates . . .] James Ewart Journal 1811-1814

Every holder of a loan place, on his making application by memorial to the government for the purpose, shall have a grant on his place, on perpetual quitrent . . . Cape Statutes 6 Aug 1813

In 1717 the Company decided to halt the issue of freehold land. Instead the farmer could obtain a 'loan farm' in return for an annual rent. De Kiewiet History of S. A. Social and Economic 1941

[trans. Du. leening(s) = loan + plaats = farm, place]

lobola [lə'bɔvlə, lɔ'bɔlə] n.

2, 24. The bride price, usu. in cattle, paid by an African man to the parents or guardians of his prospective wife: see quot.: used attrib. in ~ system 2, ~ cattle 2, 11 etc.

My girlfriend and I want to get married. The problem is that I do not have cattle for lobola. Drum August 1971

According to tradition it is the divine right of kings for the Prince to take whoever he pleases to the royal place, Kethomthandayo - which means choose the one you fancy . . . Zulu monarchs are exempt from paying lobola. It is the nation that has to pay it. Drum 18. 4. 72

[Ngu. Xh. ukulobola = to give dowry, Zu. vb lobola, n. lobolo]

location, n.

(1) Hist. 26, 17. The land granted to a party (qv) 26 of Settlers usu. named after the party, e. g. James's Party; also used as the land of an individual settler.* cf. Canad. location parcel of Government land applied for and granted for settlement, Austr. block, section (also N.Z.) lot into which land is divided for settlers by Government.

Monday 25 (December 1820): Expected Mr Bird, it threatened rain, he did not come - the D(algairns) went to Mr Bailey's location to a dance. Sophia Pigot Diary (Transcript) 1819-1822

. . . could not fail to give a spur to the exertion of the Settlers. As the nights had considerably shortened, and the Caffers had ceased to harrass the Locations the people were allowed by degrees to separate and settle in smaller parties. S. Afr. Almanac and Directory for 1831 (Greig)

(2) 4b, 22. A segregated area on the outskirts of a town or city set aside for non-white use. African housing and accommodation, which whites require a permit to enter: see also township 22, 4b.

'Is the Moruti staying in Johannesburg?' 'Yes, I stay at Orlando Township - that big location we are now approaching. Lanham/Mopeli Paulus Blanket Boy's Moon 1953

A Bantu Council for a specific residential area, such as a location, may be established at the instigation of the local authority, but can also be requested by a Bantu Advisory Board. Personality 23. 10. 70

[fr. Lat. locatus fr. locare = to place]

locks, pl. n.

11. Also lox 11: Woolbroker's term, the lowest grade consisting of shearing shed sweepings, dung-soiled parts of fleeces. cf. Austr. dag(s), usu pl. (lock of wool clotted with dung); also locks small pieces of wool that fall off during shearing.

Locks: the lowest or most inferior line of wool made when wool classing and includes sweatlocks, stained wool, second cuts and shankings. Veterinary Products Handbook (Date unknown)

locust bird, n. pl. -s

3. Also known as sprinkaanvoël (qv) 3: any of several species which destroy and feed on locusts including the European white stork, the great ~ 3. (Crombach's form)

We are happy to be enabled to announce that the Locust Bird has at last visited this district in such numbers, that there is every prospect of a deliverance from the Locusts now in their larval state. Grahamstown Journal 24. 2. 1832

loer [lu:r] vb intrns.

Coll. Slang. 29vb, 10. To peer, pry or spy upon as in 'always loering after us to see where we're going.' [Afk. loer = peep, peer, etc.]

loerie [lʋəri, 'luri] n. pl. -s

(1) Afk. and usu. S. Afr. form of lourie, lory: any of several of the Musophagidae (Loriinae): parrot-like touracoes of brilliant plumage: esp. the Knysna ~ of the Knysna forests, ^{the purple crested} the grey ~, ^{of Natal and} kwêvoel 3 or go-away bird (qv) 3 ^{in combination} 1; ^{the purple crested ~ of Natal etc.} [also ^{the} vlei ~, ^{the} rain bird (qv) 3 ^{Supercilliosus} Centropus burchellii of the Cuculidae] also Austr. lory. and ^{the} bush ~ Narina trogon of the Trogonidae]

He was kind enough also to give me the lovely 'lourie' wing, which he tells me is obtained from a rare bird in the Knysna forests ... When flying in the sun, they glitter all over like burnished metal with the lustrous green and deep claret hues of their feathers. Life at the Cape by a Lady 1870, 1963 edit.

(2) 27d. Found in S. Afr. place names Loerie, Loeriesfontein.

At night we came to Lory's River, so called from a species of parrot, which is found there. Masson Botanical Travels 1776
[Afk. fr. Du. ex Malay luri, form of nuri = a parrot]

longdavel [ˈlɒŋ,davəl] n. pl. -s

18. A rondavel (qv) 18, lengthened by a rectangular section between two semicircular ones, resulting in a building of roughly oval shape.

"RED-TOP" PREFABRICATED STEEL RONDAVELS complete with door and window ... "RED-TOP" STEEL LONGDAVELS comp. 1 door, 2 windows Farmer's Weekly Advt. 20.3.74
['portmanteau word' long + rondavel]

longsiekte [ˈlɔŋ,siktə] n.

11. See lungsickness 11. [Afk. long cogn. lung + siekte fr. Du. ziekte = disease]

loop [lʊəp] vb usu. imp.

29vb, 9. Go! Run, an imp. sign. 'go away' or else 'march': used by wagon drivers to their teams: see also hamba 9.

Without delay, the drivers clap their long whips and ... loudly call out to the oxen, Loop! and instantly the whole of the caravan are again in motion. Burchell Travels I 1822

Then this morning: Loop, Hotnot! Just had time to grab our things ... I didn't even have on a broek or a petticoat when we started walking. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. lopen = walk cogn. lope]

* cf. Canad. mush [marchez]

looper [ˈlʊəpə(r), ˈlu:pə] n. pl. -s

20. Large sized buckshot or slugs.

A Corporal Walker, who sat among the number, remarked "I will put some loopers" (ounce ball cut into four parts) "into my musket, and if any Kafir comes within range, he will not run far afterwards ... McKay Last Kaffir War 1871, 1970 edit.

... he, forgetting that he had taken the big 'looper' cartridges from his gun and reloaded with No. 6, fired. Fitzpatrick Jock of the Bushveld 1907, 1909 edit.

[Afk. = slug]

loshotnot [ˈlɔʃs,hɔʃnɔʃt] n. and n. modifier

Slang, 19, 10. One who is 'footloose and fancy free,' without responsibilities, unoccupied: also of or pertaining to such a person.

School holidays, thank goodness! I'm loshotnot again. Informant School Teacher, Grahamstown 1969

[Afk. loshotnot - one free of responsibility, holiday maker, also free-lance, grass widower etc.]

lounge, n. pl. -s

[I.E.] Poss. reg. Natal. 25, 7. A restaurant (Indian) is so designated e.g. Bhagat's Vegetarian Lounge, Peter's Lounge, Victory Lounge (Durban). ^x *Now Albany Lounge, Grahamstown.*

Now that the building is finished they're making a director's lounge on the top floor so we don't have to go out for meals.
Indian Informant Durban Nov. 1972
[unknown]

louse, n. pl. lice

21, 11. Erron. tick: see bosluis 21.

They've billed me to talk about the lice of the Eastern Cape!
Visiting British Tick Expert 1972

[translit. (bos)luis = tick]

lowveld [-felt] n. (prop.)

22. Afk. Laëveld: the subtropical area of the N. and E. Transvaal where malaria is endemic: the climate 33 of intense heat and damp is generally considered unhealthy.

The swamp-miasma and the tsetse-fly killed off his sheep, cattle and horses; while the lowveld mosquito gave malaria to the members of his clan ... Mockford Here are S. Africans 1944

The lowveld is sub-tropical ... Altitude about 500 to 2,000 feet. Frostless. Temperatures up to 120°F in the shade during summer. Rainfall 15 to 20 inches in north increasing to 20-25 in southern portion. Area occupied by dry savannah-like type of bush consisting mainly of Acacias. N. L. King Tree Planting in S. A. 1951

[trans. Afk. laeveld]

lucky bean, n.

28, 32. The black-eyed scarlet seeds of Erythrina Caffra (Kaffir-boom), sometimes called Kaffir beans (qv) 32 and those of Abrus precatorius which are used as charms, are both so designated, the former are freq. sewn like beads into mats, necklaces or other ornaments by African women.

lungsickness, n.

11. Pleuro-pneumonia, a highly contagious disease of cattle, and horses, against which immunization can be successful.

There is a terrible murrain, called the lung-sickness, among horses and oxen here, every four or five years, but it never touches those that are stabled, however exposed to wet or wind on the roads. Lady Duff Gordon Letters 1861-62

Lung sickness, "longziekte", or pleuro-pneumonia, a highly infectious disease in cattle, is one of the most severe stock scourges in the Colony. Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

[trans. longsiekte (qv)]

M

Ma- [ma] prefix.

1, 2. African feminine titular prefix sign various relationships: Ma-X can sign. 'mother of' or loosely, equiv. of 'Mrs.' [In Sotho sign. both 'Mrs.' and used as a clan prefix. Prefixed, often in speech, to the maiden name of a Zulu married woman, thus Ma-H- sign. 'daughter of the H-s' though her married name may be Mrs. N-. In English language African fiction usu. sign. simply 'Mrs.' also 'mother-of': see quot.]

... it was because of Ma-Ndlovu and Mkhulu that Thembi's mother came to know the whole story and truth ... but Ma-Thembi was wise every time to have a good look at these gentlemen. Drum 22.9.73

George had been engaged to play the piano for the two days by Auntie Ma-Ndlovu. The drinks, skokiaan and other concoctions, were sold in a room adjoining ... Dikobe The Marabi Dance 1970 [see definition]

maagbom ['ma x,bɔ̃m] n. pl. -me(n)

7. See (2) stormjaer 7. cf. Jam.E. stick-in-the-middle (dumpling), Austr. buck-jumper. [Afk. fr. Du. maag = stomach + bom cogn. bomb]

maak gou [,mak'xəv] imp. vb phr.

Coll. 9, 29vb. Make haste: equiv. of 'hurry up', buck up' etc.

"Kaartjies, tickets. Come on you black skelms. Maak gou." Fulton The Dark Side of Mercy 1968

[Afk. maak = do cogn. make + gou = quick(ly)]

maar [ma(r)] adv.

10, 29 Red. Usu. equiv. of 'just': often used redundantly in SAE:

In combination toe ~ (qv) 10.

A. 'Roast fowl roast ... potatoes fried steak ... vetkoekies ...'

B. '... we wouldn't dare give you any of those things.'

A. 'What ... did you ask me for then?'

B. 'Well maar ask* something reasonable.'

* see ask 29vb.

R. Y. Stormberg Mrs Pieter De Bruyn 1920

If they want more land, why don't they maar apply to the Land Bank ... Daily Dispatch (Cartoon Caption) 6.5.72

[Afk. maar = but, yet, only, just]

maas [ma s] n.

7, 2. Also amasi, amaas: thick, naturally soured milk, a favourite food-beverage of Africans: a commercially available dairy product. cf. Jam.E. bani (kleva): also used in cookery (see Indian terms 25, dhai 7) and for making ~ kaas 7 (kaas cogn. cheese) cottage cheese, also obtainable commercially under this name.

... Umslopogaas brought Nada the Lily maas to eat and mealie porridge. She ate the curdled milk, but the porridge she would not eat ... Rider Haggard Nada the Lily 1895

... it seems a great pity that the urban African should be deprived of the cheap, healthy, nourishing "maas" he has been able to make in the past from naturally soured raw milk. E. Province Herald 11.5.72

[Ngu. amasi = sour milk]

maasbanker [ˌmasˈbɑŋkə(r)] n. pl. -Ø, -s.

12. The horse-mackerel Trachurus trachurus, used in S. A. instead of herring for making kippers, also for bokkems (qv) 7.

June Fish in Season ... Ray, Maasbanker, Jacob Evert etc. S. Afr. Almanac (Greig) 1831

Some harders and maasbankers were hung to dry as 'bokkoms' in the wind and sun on lines stretched between posts near the fishing villages. Grindley Riches of the Sea 1969

[fr. Du. marsbanker = horse mackerel]

maaskaas [ˈmasˌkas] n.

7. See maas 7, 2.

maat [mɑːt] n. pl. -s

Coll. 1, 19. Mode of address or reference to a friend often ou(old) ~ : see also chommie 19, pellie 1, 19, (ou)boet 1, 19. cf. Austr. mate.

Many of the Bechuanas selected maats or comrades, after their manner, from among their allies, presenting, in a formal manner, an ox to the individual pitched upon. Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827

"P-, ou maat," 86-year-old Mr. E.F. P- said as he nearly dislocated my shoulder with his handshakes. Drum 8.12.72

[Afk. fr. Du. maat = friend, comrade, cogn. mate]

mabela [ˌmaˈbeːlə] -lə] n.

14, 7. Usu. called kaffircorn (qv) 14: Sorghum caffrorum, millet, extensively cultivated orig, by Africans for the brewing of beer from the malted grain: also available ground as meal, malted or plain, for making porridge. [Ngu. amabele(pl.) = grain ; sorghum, millet]

madāla [maˈdala, -lə] n.

1, 2. Old one: a mode of address among workmen to, not the chief but the oldest among them. cf. Brit. gaffer. [Ngu. -dala = old, aged]

madolo [maˈdolɔ] n.

[A.E.] prob. Slang. 8, 2. Wine: cf. Austr. plonk.

... he has a nipinyana of "madolo" which is the name non-voters prefer to call wine and which wine he buys from Bra Victor at the bottle store ... begins to partake of the "madolo" and I do the same with the ndambola. Drum 8.3.74

[unknown poss. fr. Zu. amadolo = knees]

madressa [mə'dressə] n. pl. -s

25, 34. A Muslim school in which Arabic and the Quran are taught by the moulvie(qv) 25, 19 or mullah 25: also in name Madressa Arcade, Durban.

This will be flanked by a double storey Madressa, consisting of nine classrooms, a library, caretaker's residence and offices. Mur-al-Islam Masjeed Appeal, Lenasia, Nov. 1970

Since the beginning of this year, our local Madressa has been held in a classroom. Whatever the children are taught in Arabic, is also translated for them into Afrikaans. Drum June 1971

[presum. Arab.]

madumbi [ma'dʊmbi] n. pl. -s

14. Arum esculentum: a native plant of the East yielding starchy tubers cultivated by Africans in Natal and Mozambique since before the coming of Europeans to S. A.

Madumbies (Colocasia esculanta (L) Schott) are grown in warm humid areas with a good rainfall and require a soil rich in organic matter. It has underground organs similar to a canna or artichoke. The mother madumbi is fibrous and is usually used as seed while those radiating from it are eaten. Farmer's Weekly 7. 11. 73

[Zu. (a)ma pl. prefix + (i)Dumbi = tuber, Colocasia antiquorum]

mafufunyana/e [ma'fʊfʊn,jana, -e] n.

2, 16. Condition of extreme hysteria, usu. in women, freq. self-induced by belief in witchcraft, [often cited as a mitigating circumstance in criminal cases]: cf. Canad. piblokto, Eskimo madness: hysteria esp. among women in the dark winter.

... a girl ... who was suffering from Mafufunyana, a type of hysterical condition, which residents in the Tsomo district believed to be induced by witches. The court was satisfied that the murder was committed because of the belief of the people who did it that M- was a witch who was causing the girl to suffer from "mafufunyana." Such a belief has been repeatedly found to constitute an extenuating circumstance. Daily Dispatch 3. 3. 70

[Bantu; Zu. ufufunyana/e = disease causing delirium and mania]

mafuta [ma'futa] ^{medicized} n. pl. -s

(1) 1. Mode of address to a fat person equiv. of 'Fatso', or 'Fats': see also vetsak 1, 19.

She glanced back over her shoulder into the kitchen. 'Mafuta!' 'Nkosikazi.' A round black face, split by a dazzling smile, peered out of the pantry. Collins The Impassioned Wind 1958

(2) 2, 16. Fats of various real or mythical creatures e.g. lion, likkewaan (qv) 6, tikoloshe (qv) 16, crocodile etc. part of the stock in trade of the witchdoctor (qv) 2, 16, 19. or herbalist (qv) 2, 16, 19. cf. Jam. E. balm oils; oil of consolation, oil of Virgin Mary etc.

MEDICINAL AFRICAN Herbal College for 20 years has taught the people how to use African Mutis and Mafutas and also wonderful imported Herbs by correspondence. Low fees. Easy terms. Post Advt. 23. 5. 71

[Bantu (a)mafutha = fat]

pl. n.

Magaliesberg [ma'xalʃsbəg, -berx] n. prop. usu. as modifier

8. A Virginian tobacco grown in the Magaliesberg area.

The pipe tobacco manufactured from Magaliesberg leaf might be described as a mild smoke. H.W. Taylor Tobacco Culture 1924 cit C. P. Swart Africanderisms: A Supplement 1934

He sat brooding on his stoep under a vile cloud of Magaliesberg tobacco-smoke from his new pipe ... New S. Afr. Writing Vol. 4 (no date) pub. Purnell.

[fr. name of mountain range]

mahewu [ma'xeu] n.

8, 2. A drink made of thinned, slightly fermented mealie-meal porridge: various sp. (a 'mix' is commercially available.)

... they drank mamarghew which is made from mealie meal and water ... Mamaghew is made and left overnight before it is drunk. Daily Dispatch 18.8.71

... the children had interrupted their lessons at about 10am on Wednesday for the traditional drink of "maheu" the vernacular name for their nutritional drink. Evening Post 2.11.73

[Bantu various sp. Zu. (ama)hewu = fermented porridge drink]

magtig/tie ['maxtɪx, -tɪ] interj.

Coll. 9. An exclamation usu. of surprise equiv. to 'Good Lord', 'Lawks' etc. poss. abbr. to avoid any suggestion of blasphemy: see also Here 9.

... an old Hottentot sat down ... and swore with a round oath (almagtig) that he would not go back ... Alexander Western Africa II 1837

And I'm afraid of a mad person, ou Baas. Magtig, but I am afraid! Meiring Candle in the Wind 1959

[abbr. of ^{afk.} allemagtig = almighty]

mahem [meɪ,hem, 'ma-] n.

3. *The crested Balearic Crane Balearica regulorum regulorum, one of those birds known as brom voël (qv) 3, named from the sound it makes: see quot.

... they hold in high estimation a beautiful crane ... they call it maahoom from the noise it continually makes. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-land 1827

... and if a person kill by accident a mayhem, (or Balearic crane), ... he is obliged to sacrifice a calf or a young ox in atonement. Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

In combination skuif 28 [kuif = topnot] a grass, Rendlia altera.

[Xh. (a)ma pl. prefix + (i)Hemu = crested crane, onomat]

mahog(a) [ma'hɔg(a), -hɔg-] n.

[A.E.] Slang. 2, 8. Brandy or poss. other brown coloured spirit: cf. Brit. dial. mahogany, strong brandy and water; Cornish, gin and treacle: see also quot. at ha-ja and straight both 24, 8, 2.

... each time he has a few slugs of mahog mixed with be-ah under his belt he begins falling all over the place. Drum 8.1.74

See also quot. at ha-ja 8, 2, 24 and straight 2, 8, 24.

[prob. abbr. mahogany]

mail boat/ship, n. pl. -s

4b, 30. The weekly, formerly passenger ship of the company contracted to the S. Afr. Government to carry mails to and from Britain: see quot. at overseas 10.

The departure of the mailship on Wednesday afternoons never fails to arouse an answering thrill in the hearts of spectators crowding the Ocean Terminal to watch this majestic sight. Panorama July 1971

→ maiza ['mai(t)za] n.

8, 2. African beer (see Kaffir beer, tshwala, mqomboti, KB, 8, 2.): made from maize see mealies 14, for consumption usu. in beerhalls (qv) 8, 2: see also quot. at ai-ai 8, 2.

I went to a beerhall ... As bold as a bachelor on pay day, I walked right in to one of those boozing temples and supped my maiza with the best of them. Drum Oct. 1970

Maiza is the greatest source of revenue for the city council. Drum 8.10.73

[presum. fr. maize]

maizena [mə'zi:nə, ,meɪ-] n. prop.

7. Cornflour (trade name): formerly also trade name maizeko.

... thicken the soup with a little maizena dissolved in water, and a lump of fresh butter. Hilda Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

Mix the maizena, salt and lemon juice. Then add the orange juice and stir over boiling water until mixture thickens. Evening Post 27.10.73

[fr. maize]

mak- [mak-] adj. prefix

28. Prefixed to numerous plant names sign. a variety which is not wild, also occ. 'harmless' e.g. dagga 28, 8, 16:

boerboon 32, ghaap 14 etc.: see dagga, ghaap, boerboon.

mak- in compound vernacular names literally has the opposite meaning of wild(e), used in the sense of "domesticated" or "cultivated" or "of cultivation" or "growing near dwellings". C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

[Afk. fr. Du. mak = tame]

makataan [,makə'ta:n] n. pl. -s

14. Citrullus lanatus: see Kaffir melon 14, also t'samma melon, karkoer 14.

Makataans, stock or kaffir melons and Tsamma are types of non-saccharine melons used for stock feed. This group is more drought resistant and does better in poor sandy soils than pumpkins. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Tswana makataan]

make, vb trns.

Substand. 29vb Do, sign. prepare, cook; of a raw material as opposed to a dish, as in 'I'm ~ing chicken, ~ing rice, ~ing sweet potatoes' see quot. cf. Canad. make land, timber, fish etc. sign. 'work'.

... on our South African dishes - things like sosaties, the real bredies, sweet potatoes as we make them, pumpkin too ...
Sunday Times 3.3.74

[poss. translit. Afk. maak = do]

make a plan, vb phr.

[[Substand.]] 29vb, 10. In common use equiv. to 'think of, arrange, fix up something', or 'work it out' even in quite trivial matters.

We will make a plan to show that uitlander a thing or two, nè
New S. Afr. Writing Vol. 4 (no date) pub. Purnell

[translit. Afk. 'n plan maak = devise a scheme]

makgotla [,ma'xǒtla] pl. n.

2. 'Bush courts' based on the tribal courts of former times now operating in urban areas in the interests of law and order to stamp out violence, gang warfare and other tsotsism (qv) 2: see also quot. at lekgotla 2.

"We formed the first lekgotla here in Naledi during December last year. There are now 20 makgotla in Soweto ... More are being formed weekly." How do the makgotla work? "A person comes to the lekgotla to report that his son is giving him trouble. We send word to the boy to be here on Sunday when the lekgotla sits. At the court each side has his say, and the men of the lekgotla discuss the case and if the boy is found guilty, he is sjamboked. All in African tradition.
Drum 22.8.74

Councillor M — told the police officers that the residents had shown their full support of the makgotla. He said it was the parents who brought their children for flogging to the makgotla. The World 13.5.74

[fr. sing. (le)kgotla (qv) 2.]

makoti [,ma'kǒtǐ] n.

1, 19, 2. Mode of address or reference by the husband's people to the daughter-in-law in a Zulu household as the one who has married into it. ^{whatever her age,}

... they sang the whole night, and had by custom to be fed by the people of makoti (the bride). L. Longmore The Dispossessed 1959

[Zu. makoti = bride]

makulu [mǎ'kulǔ, ma-] adj.

Coll. 29adj. 2. Big, great: usu. in combination ~ baas, also ~ trouble etc.: see also quot. at great 2, 29adj.

Now was the heart of Monare lightened, for the Makulu Baas turned out to be the sort of white man who spoke his language, Sesotho, and who had travelled in his homeland, Lesotho. Lanham/Mopeli Paulus Blanket Boy's Moon 1953

[Bantu -kulu = great: Xh. makhulu]

Malay, n. prop. pl. -s

25, 23. Usu. in combination Cape ~: Muslims (Mahommedans) of Asian descent living largely in the Cape, now officially classified as Coloureds: see (1) classify 4b, 29vb.

The Malays form no inconsiderable part of the population of Cape Town. These have been brought at different periods from the Dutch settlements in Java and neighbouring islands. James Ewart Journal 1811-14

In Cape Town the terms "Malay" and "Mohammedan" are often used as synonyms; but strictly speaking "Malay" stands for that section of the local Muslim community in which the descendants of Malay slaves and political exiles are to be found. Du Plessis The Cape Malays 1944

malgas ['mal,xas] n.

3. The common Cape gannet, Morus (Sula) capensis, found on all S. Afr. coasts: also 27d in place names Malgas and Malgasrivier.

... another mystery joins the sardines - the Cape Ganett [sic] commonly known as Malagas, "Moras Capenses". These ganetts come all the way from West Africa. How then do they know the exact day of the arrival of the sardines ... Daily Dispatch 25.9.71

[Afk. fr. Du. malagas, mallegas, prob. abbr. fr. Port. mangas de velludo = sleeves of velvet fr. black wing tips]

mali ['mali, ma-] n.

Coll. or [A.E.] 2, 24. Money. cf. Austr. moolah, splosh; U.S. dough.

... promised that a Kaffir runner leaving with despatches should bear it; but intelligent 'Ikona Mali' (No Money), and two others of his fraternity who at later intervals were also despatched ... were but broken reeds on which to depend. Du Val With a Show Through S. A. II 1882

Mali - a word in constant use among the natives, and frequently heard among the colonists also, for money. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Ngu. iMali = money]

malombo [ma'lɔmbɔ] n. prop.

[A.E.] 15, 2. A jazz idiom combining tribal rythms with urban jazz: see quot. Combinations ~ drum, ~ sound etc. see also mbaqanga.

Seldom have jazzmen been so reticent about themselves. Try as DRUM would they kept mum and said: "Look, dad, the term 'Malombo' comes from the Venda and means spirit. You've heard people ... speaking of "soul" in jazz. Well, ours is based on tribal rythms blended of course with urban township sounds." Drum Nov. 1964

In our Black society, when the ancestral spirits speak through somebody, we beat the malombo drums as accompaniment for the spirit voices. I just happen to be a musical medium. ... We introduced the malombo sound successfully and now hope to make a record when we reach Europe ... Drum 22.3.73

[fr. Venda see quot.]

malpitte ['mal,pætə] pl. n.

16, 8. The poisonous seeds of the stinkblaar (qv) 28, Datura stramonium which contain belladonna and which, when swallowed or smoked, are hallucinogenic: see quot.

... stinkblaar ... a weed which must be treated with respect however. Generations of South African school boys have known these seeds as malpitte because of the queer behaviour and delirium they produce. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

... a nightmare four-day hallucinatory drug trip induced by a common garden weed, known as "malpitte" (mad pips), which grows wild in gardens and open ground is the latest craze among South African teenagers and drug-takers ... the pips were a poison which affected the brain and could do mental as well as physical harm. An overdose was sufficient to kill and the drug was as hallucinatory as the drug L.S.D. E. Province Herald 27. 4. 73

[Afk. fr. Du. mal = mad + pit = pip + pl. suff. -(t)e]

mama ['mama] n.

1, 2. Mother: a mode of address for older women used by younger Africans: see also tata 1, 2. cf. Jam. E. Ma, respectful address, title. [Bantu form of address uMama]

mamba ['mãmbə, 'mamba] n. pl. -s

6. Venomous snake of the genus Dendroaspis, with a deadly bite: usu. in combination green ~, black ~.

On ploughing through an ant-heap he cut a large mamba in two. Unfortunately the mamba, before dying, bit Botha on the leg. Botha expired within two hours ... E. Province Herald 11. 3. 1926

... he tells me, the black mamba is by no means the world's most poisonous snake. "he's in the top 10, I suppose, in about eight or ninth position ... Ibid 10. 4. 73

[Bantu iMamba = snake]

mamba, green, n. pl. -s

(1) 6. See mamba 6.

(2) 8. See green mamba 8.

mambakkie, n.

15. Erron. form: see mombakkies 15.

mamlambo [,mam' lambɔ̃] n.

2, 16. A river snake mythical or actual concerning which there are varied beliefs: that it is a beneficent fertility spirit for wealth and prosperity, a love amulet (see etym.) or a malevolent force even causing death: see quot., also tokoloshe and mpundulu bird 2, 16.

... these fairies of Africa are sinister and terrible creatures. Sexually depraved and of insatiable appetite, they are mysterious beings of an invisible world. They exercise great powers of magic, cast spells and can change themselves into animals. The best known and most common are Thikoloshe, Mamlambo and Mpundulu, ... Mamlambo the mother of the river is a mythical snake that lives under the water in river pools. She escapes from the river as a beautiful woman and in this guise a man falls in love with her. Immediately he is in her thrall she takes up her abode in his kraal and causes his father, brother or uncle to die. J. Broster Red Blanket Valley 1967 [Ngu. umamlambo = riversnake. Zu. "water-snake kept in the hut by women of a polygamous household to ensure the husband's favour (this is a current Native belief)" Doke and Vilakazi Zulu Dictionary 1948; 1964 edit.]

mampara [ˌmam'para] n. pl. -s
19, 1. See mompara 19, 1.

mampoer [ˌmam'pu:r, -'pvrə(r)] n.

8. Home distilled spirit often called peach brandy, made of the juice of peaches and numerous other soft fruits including wild marulas (qv) 14, medlars mispel ^(qv) 14, prickly pears (Opuntia) and karee (qv) 14 berries.

Even peach brandy, they say, can make you forget the rust in the corn quicker than the mampoer you make from karee-berries. ... But karee-mampoer is white and soft to look at, and the smoke that comes from it when you pull the cork out of the bottle is pale and rises in slow curves. Bosman Mafeking Road 1947, 1969 edit.

The canteens carried a surprisingly large range of goods - from Cape "dop" and "mampoer" to imported liquers. Sunday Times 23. 4. 72 *[sic]

[Mampuru n. prop of Sotho chief sign. 'strongest man']

man [mæ̃n] interj.

(1) 9. As interj. used for emphasis. cf. U.S. (Oh) Boy!

It's working perfectly, Man! I mus' say I like these old stoves. Maclennan The Wake 1971

(2) 1. A mode of address regardless of the sex of the person addressed and often redundant as in 'Come on man, Ma, we're all waiting for you', or replacing a proper name: equiv. use in Jam. E. See addenda p. 588 ^X quds. at 'skypu' ed. toe maay
We returned to the station and held sweet converse with diverse kerels, to whom we were "Man" and "Jong", after the nature of the tribe. E. Province Herald 25. 11. 1911

(3) [mæn] n. pl. men. 19. Husband.

In this house I saw the first trait of female industry, the vrows being employed in making clothes for their "men". Lady Anne Barnard Letters and Journals May 1798

The country lady strolls in to buy a hat ... tries on everything in the shop ... tells them to put it down to her "man's" account ... Pay next year when the wool comes in. R. Y. Stormberg Mrs Pieter de Bruyn 11920.

[Afk. fr. Du. man = husband]

manel [ma'nel] n. pl. -s

5. A black frock coat worn by elders, see ouderling 19, 4a; diakens 19, 4a and other officials of the Dutch Reformed Church (qv) 4a usu. with a white tie (qv) 5: see also gatjaponner 19.

... when Elder Landsman came back into the church he had a long black bottle half hidden under his manel. Bosman A Bekkersdal Marathon 1971

[Afk. fr. Du. manille fr. Span. malilla = frock coat]

maningi [ma'ningi] intensifier

10, 2. Usu. as intensifier equiv. of 'very' etc. occ. as numeral substitute equiv. of 'lots of —'.

The gardener arrived at my study window and said it was "maningi hot" and could he have shorts like the cook? Sunday Times 21.2.71

[Zu. pl. prefix a(ma) + -ningi = plenty, many]

manitoka^(*) [ˌmæniˈtɔkə] n. pl. -s

28. Myoporum insulare, a native plant of Australia naturalised in S. A. esp. as a plant used for hedges near the sea.

A tarred road circled the middle of the thickly grassed park, and the caravans were standing in rows on four different levels, with hedges of fleshy, narrow leaved manitokkas bushing out between the caravan sites. Marie Philip Caravan Caravel 1973

[poss. Austr. aboriginal name]

manna ['mænə] n. usu. suff.

11, 28. Usu. in compounds, equiv. of millet, boer ~ Setaria italica, also called Italian millet; red/rooi ~ , white/wit ~ , yellow/geel ~ all 11: Kaffer ~ (qv) Pennisetum Americanum also babbala grass 22.

SEEDS. - We are buyers for Manna and Millet. Samples. ... MACHINE CLEANED AND AIR WASHED Imported Red Millet. Red Manna ... Yellow Manna --- Mixed Bird Seed ... Golden Millet ... White Millet ... Babala ... Farmer's Weekly Advt. 20.3.74

[Eng. manna = species of grass Setaria: Shorter Oxford Dictionary]

manyano [man'janɔ, -jə-] n. (pl. -s)

2, 4a. An African women's church association of any of several sects, usu. meeting on Thursday afternoons throughout S. A. each having a distinctive uniform: *

Mia Brandel-Syrier ... the author of a penetrating study of the manyano church women's associations (Black Women in Search of God) ... Sunday Times 26.9.71

An energetic churchwoman, Mrs. — ... has been chosen as the president-elect of the Grahamstown District Methodist Women's Manyano at the annual conference in Port Elizabeth. E. Province Herald 30.6.73

[Ngu. umanyano - (Women's) Union]

* [men's church unions are also known in some parts as ~, the uniform being usu. a waistcoat of the same colour as the jacket of the women's ~ of the same denomination.]

marimba [ma'rimba, -rɪm-] n.

15, 2. See mbira 15, 2.

mark [mark] n.

27e. Market, mart: found in city place names, e.g. Groentemarkplein, Markplein, also Eng. Longmarket Street, Shortmarket Street, Greenmarket Square. [Afk. mark cogn. mart, market]

market master, n. pl. -s

19. A municipal official in charge of the market in each town: the ~'s report on current prices is freq. published in the press; see quot. at (2)mevrouw 19.

UITENHAGE MARKET REGULATIONS The proceedings of the Market to be under the controul [sic] of a Market Master ... The following Tariff of Fees shall be exacted for the purpose of paying the Market Master a salary ... One Farthing sterling on every Rix-dollar under the sum of Twenty-five Rix-dollars ... S. Afr. Almanac and Directory for 1831 (Greig)

MARKET REPORT. The Market Master, Mr. C.T. W —, reports as follows on the sales held at Grahamstown for the week ending April 5. Grocott's Mail 11. 4. 74

maroela [ma'rūla] n. pl. -s

32, 14. See marula 32, 14. [Afk. form is ~]

marsbanker, n. pl. ∅, -s.

12. See maasbanker 12.

marteva [ˈmatə,vɑ n] n. pl. -vanen, -s.

18. A large earthenware storage jar used aboard Dutch East Indiamen: 'Martaban jar': see quot. also Ang. Ind. Martaban jar.

Martavanen were large earthenware jars of Chinese origin used on board Dutch East Indiamen for carrying oil and wine. They were mostly shipped from Pegu in the Gulf of Martaban, Burma, of which the name is a corruption. Gordon-Brown S. Afr. Heritage 1965

... a magnificent pair of Martevaans in brown glaze decorated with panels of flowers R625 the pair. Cape Times 26. 1. 73

[fr. place name Martaban]

marula [ma'rūla, -ə] n. pl. -s

(1) 32. The deciduous tree Sclerocarya birea (S. caffra) common in the hotter parts of S. A.: also a place name 27c Maroelaboom.

The marula, with its straight bole and dense, graceful foliage, is a common sight in the lowveld of Natal, Swaziland and the Transvaal, and in Rhodesia. Palmer and Pitman Trees of S. A. 1961

(2) 14. Its fruit also known as berries, used for jam and jelly and for making beer 8 and mampoer (qv) 8, and which in the fermented state intoxicate birds and animals.

It was the season of the ripening of the marula, that yellow plum-shaped fruit which the natives call umgana or "friend". . . . the women and children of the village stooped below, gathering the fallen fruit into baskets and gourds for the brewing of marula-beer. Brett Young City of Gold 1940

I hardly saw any animals in the Kruger Park - except an elephant that had got drunk on marula berries. E. Province Herald 10. 4. 73

[fr. Sotho name]

Mary, n. pl. -ies

(1) 19, 25. Obj. An Indian woman (now considered offensive by many): see quot. also (1) Sammy 19, 25.

Because "Mariamma" was a common name among Indian women and "Munsamy" among the men, we were referred to as "Marys and Sammys". This was considered to be insulting. Fatima Meer cit. E. Province Herald 22. 9. 73

(2) 19. An Indian girl or woman fruit and vegetable hawker (prob. reg. Natal): see (2) Sammy.

Why did you buy your veg. from the other Mary this week? Indian Informant Durban 1954

→ [prob. fr. n. prop. Mariamma]

(3) 19. Loosely: a non-white woman, cf. Austr. slang Mary (also gin or lubra), an aboriginal woman [also New Guinea pidgin sign. woman]

Look at the colour-scheme that Mary's wearing - you and I couldn't get away with it. Informant White Woman Grahamstown 1971 [unknown: poss. New Guinea, poss. Austr. poss. fr. (1) and (2) Mary]

masala, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25.

Saffron, Spice, Masala, Brassware, Ornaments
Advt. Grocotts Daily 18.6.76

mashona piano, n. pl. -s

15, 2. See mbira 15, 2.

mason, n. pl. -s

19, (18) In S. A. a bricklayer, Brit. stonemason, poss. equiv. U.S. mason (who builds with stone or brick): see quot.

Town Mason. H. Schutte African Court Calendar for 1807

Mason. - This word, influenced probably by the Dutch use of the word metselaar for both mason and bricklayer, is used all through South Africa, where, in England, the word "bricklayer" would be employed. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

. . . work therapy provides the prisoner with a wide variety of types of work . . . masons, carpenters, electricians and many others. Farmer's Weekly 20. 3. 74

masoor, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25, also biriani 7, 25.

mass, n.

24. Weight: under the S. Afr. system of metrication (qv) 4b, 24, ~ is calculated in grammes and kilogrammes, and is not equiv. of volume (qv) 24: see also litre 24 and quot. at middelskot 11, 24.

Due to its light mass and flexibility the XYZ pipe is ideal for irrigation systems. Farmer's Weekly 4.7.73

I am 20 years of age, 1,5m tall, mass of 75kg, have black hair, brown eyes ... Ibid 'Hitching Post' 11.7.73

over ~ 16, 29adj., overweight.

Are you overmass? The body must have some fat, cushioning the organs and bones, for protecting body temperatures and as an emergency source of nutriment. Test yourself by taking hold of a piece of fleshy skin over the lower ribs along the side of the body. Make a little roll of it between the thumb and forefinger. If the roll is more than 3cm thick you should lose mass. E. Province Herald 1.5.74

~meter a scale.

[S. Afr. Bureau of Standards term]

-master, n. suff.

17, 4b. Suff. sign. 'man in charge of ...' in combinations such as market ~ (qv) 19, and pound ~ (qv) 19. [presum. trans. Afk. fr. Du. -meester (qv)]

mat, n. pl. -s

Substand. Coll. ^{10, 18.} Loosely, sign. carpet and in [A. E.] linoleum also.

Carpets: of course you have one in the lounge but remember to call it a mat. Personality 5.6.69

sleeping ~ 2a, a grass mat used by tribal Africans woven usu. of Cyperus textilis: see matjiesgoed 18, 28.

[poss. fr. Eng. mat, Afk. mat = floor rug]

matie ['mati] n. pl. -s

19, 34. A student or alumnus of Stellenbosch University, freq. used in reference to a member of the University's rugby team: see also Ikey, Tukkie, Uppie. ~land, Coll. Stellenbosch.

Piet —, 23-year-old Stellenbosch senior education diploma student, has been elected cheer leader of the Maties for this year's intervarsity at Newlands on May 15. Cape Argus 4.5.71

[acc. to some abbr. Afk. tamatie = tomato fr. red colour of Stellenbosch University's rugby jersey, cf. naming of N.Z. All Blacks: acc. others fr. matie cogn. matey fr. friendly character]

matjiesgoed ['markĩs,xũt] n.

18, 28. Also mat rush (obs.): Cyperus textilis, a reed used esp. by Africans for thatching and for making mats and baskets. *

Our guides ... brought me, to suit their own purposes, to a part of the river where the mat-rush grew in great abundance; expecting this to persuade me to stop here several days, till the rush-gatherers had finished their work. Burchell Travels I 1822

Cyperus textilis ... A rush 2 or 3 feet high, which grows in marshy localities and in the beds of rivulets. From it baskets and mats are manufactured by the natives who call it mat-rush (matjiesgoed). Pappé in C. of G. H. Almanac for 1856

The roofing material was still generally thatch, made from 'matjes goed' reed ... Lewcock C19 Architecture in S. A. 1963

[Afk. fr. Du. mat + dimin. suff. -je + goed = material]

* cf. Jam. E. basket withe.

matjiestou(w) ['markĩs,təv, -cĩs-] n.

18. Cord or line (qv) 18 made from matjiesgoed (qv) 28, 18, formerly used for tying or binding thatch.

matjiestou(e). Cyperus textilis ... The name applied to the rope (Afr: tou) made from the culms [of matjiesgoed]. C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

[Afk. fr. Du. mat + dimin. suff. -jie + tou(w) = rope]

Matric, n. prop.

34. Abbr. Matriculation (qv) 34.

Matriculation, n. (prop)

34. Usu. abbr. Matric: the examination written at the end of Standard (qv) X. 34: ~ exemption 34 qualifying students for University entrance: [conditional exemption 34 is granted to certain students wishing to begin their University studies, conditional upon their completing the requirements for ~ exemption before having credit for any university courses passed. A school-leaving certificate may be awarded to a student not satisfying the full ~ requirements, on the same examination or on a combination of subjects not constituting a full 'University Matric.'] See also addenda p. 584.

JOINT MATRICULATION BOARD (constituted under the provisions of Section 15 of Act No. 61 of 1955 to control and conduct the Matriculation Examination of the Universities of South Africa. Matriculation Examination Handbook 1973

mat rush, n.

Obs. Traveller's term 18. See quot. at matjiesgoed 18, 28.

mawo [ma'wɔ] interj.

9, 2. An exclamation of dismay ^{surprise} or sympathy used by Xhosa speaking Africans: see also hau 9, 2.

Tant' Sannie sighed. The Hottentot maid sighed, the Kaffir girl who looked in at the door put her hand over her mouth and said 'Mow-wah! Schreiner Story of an African Farm 1883

[Xh. interj.]

Mayibuye i Afrika [,maɪbuje(i) 'afr̩ka] vb phr. interj.

2, 9. Also abbr. Mayibuye: 'Come back Africa', cry or motto of the now banned African National Congress (see ¹A. N. C. 4b, 2), also the song of the organisation. cf. E. African uhuru.

... she raised her glass then she sipped slowly, ... She said, 'Heil, Gesundheit, Mayibuye.' Todd Matshikiza Chocolates for my Wife 1961

Africa emerging from the colonial haze, poised between two oceans ... her face impressive but evocative as the rapacious sun, Mayibuy'i Afrika! Poem: Drum 8.5.73

[Ngu. mayibuye = come back (Africa)]

mbaqanga [mba'kaŋ(g)a +] n.

15, 2. African music mode which originated in Soweto, Johannesburg: see also malombo 15, 2, [acc. purists ^{and quot. at patha-patha} not jazz: see third quot.]

... there has been the Zulu-idiom, which forms the basis of what is loosely termed "Mbaqanga", or pop jazz. But the Malombo sound is unique. It is hard to pinpoint. Drum Nov. 1964

"CATS" in Windhoek ... are raving mad with mbaqanga, the Soweto originated song-dance mood, ... Post 15.6.69

And don't sell people a pack of lies telling them that it's going to be a jazz festival, when you know that it'll be a hodgepodge of jazz, soul and mbaqanga. If you call it a jazz festival, let it be a jazz festival. Drum 8.7.1974

[unknown poss. rel. Zu. umbaqanga = thick porridge of mealie meal or mabele (qv) 7 poss. sign. 'mixture']

mbira [m'bir̩a] n. pl. -s

15, 2. A musical instrument found in S. and Central Africa called variously marimba, Mashona piano, calabash piano, Kaffir piano (qv) 15, 2, related to the xylophone and played with the thumbs, sometimes over a calabash containing water.

Posselt might have remained longer at Zimbabwe but he listened to a native playing the mbira or kaffir piano with such exquisite melancholy that he became homesick and decided to return ... Lawrence Green Full Many a Glorious Morning 1968

... one of the Mbiras which he has designed. This instrument is often wrongly called a thumb piano. Panorama May 1973

[poss. Swahili, Kumbundu marimba = xylophone]

mbombela [(m), bõm'be:la] n.

31, 2. [A. E.] African term for a train carriage of the open sit-en-kyk (qv) 31 pattern. See also bombella train, addenda p. 587

But hundreds of them ... hastily bundled their blankets, clothing and other belongings and caught the "mbombela", or workers' train, home to the Transkei ... Gordon Four People 1964

[unknown poss. onomat. poss. rel. Xh. mbomba(loza) = grumble; also poss. rel. Zu. bambela = catch, hold on to, also poss. Zu. mbombozela 'applied form' of vb. sign. resound or rumble]

(-)meal, n. and n. suff.

7. Also meel: ground grain: suff. to the name of any grain, coarsely or finely ground e. g. mealie ~ 7, kaffir corn ~ 7, mabela ~ 7, all (qv). cf. oatmeal: also in combinations boer ~ (qv) 7 brown wheat flour containing bran; kuni ~ (qv) 7 coarse crushed wheat see quot. at samp 7, and at kuni ~ 7.

... none of this white-flour business either. 'Meel', it said, which I translated as 'meal' and measured 9 kg into a great tub. Fair Lady 7.3.73

[Afk. meel = ground grain cogn. mill, Afk. meul = mill]

mealie ['mill] n. pl. -s

14. Zea mays, maize, Indian corn: U.S. and Canad. corn: Afk. form miedie (qv) 7, extensively cultivated and used in numerous forms in S. A.

Though it is not indigenous to South Africa, the mealie could almost qualify as our national vegetable. Evening Post 27.10.73

green ~ 7, fresh ~ s boiled and served like sweetcorn on the cob as a vegetable or separate dish.

White maize, at the semi-sweet stage, known as the good old "green mealie" has been sold as a substitute for sweet corn in this country for many years ... Farmer's Weekly 13.6.73

Made into green ~ bread, also called ~ bread similar to U.S. corn pudding or corn pone, Jam. E. dokuno (various sp.).

... green mealie bread made for him by a trader's wife in Pondoland. She put the mealies through a mincer three times, added baking powder and salt, and boiled the mixture in a dish cloth. It looked like a suet pudding, but served hot with butter it was delicious. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

In combination ~ cruncher (qv) 19, ~ meal 7 finely ground, granular maize meal (qv) 7 white or yellow*, the staple food of much of the S. Afr. population [not equiv. of cornflour, see maizena 7], equiv. of Italian polenta, U.S. hominy grits, Jam. E. corn-corn:

* straight run ~ meal, ^{sign} yellow unrefined ~ meal, containing maize ^{germ.}

'I'd much rather the children didn't have so much mealie meal and rice,' said Mrs. Dladla said, 'But I have to keep their tummies full.' Fair Lady 24.11.71

Why is it so difficult to buy yellow unrefined mealie meal? ... several appetising recipes for straight-run mealie meal, their name for unrefined mealie meal. Ibid 19.4.72

~ pap: see mieliepap 7; ~ rice 7, dried maize kernels ground to resemble fine rice grains, used as a substitute for the more costly rice: see also samp 7 [mngqusho]

Serve hot with mealie rice. Drum 8.11.72

MAIZE PRODUCTS Samp 90 kg ... R5, 46
Mealie Rice ... R4, 98

Farmer's Weekly 21.4.72

~ pip, mielie pit. Coll. 11. maize grains or seed usu. for planting.

The yellowfish greedily ate at the porridge, but they tricked themselves with a single mealie pip ... Farmer's Weekly 12.5.71

stalks, mielie stronke 11. The stalks of already harvested s used as green feed or as stover for stock, also milled for ensilage: (stalk)borer ^{21, 11} Afk. mielie rusper ^{21, 11} Calamistis fusca 21 a pest which attacks maize crops; kaboe ^(qv) stamp s 7, see samp 7, [fr. Afk. mieli prob. fr. Port. milho fr. Lat. milium = grain esp. millet]

mealie cruncher, n. pl. -s

19, 10. An offensive, contemptuous mode of reference to an Afrikaner of the lower class: see also (abbr.) crunchie, hairy(back), krans-athlete, kransie, krev, plank, ^{rock,} rope, ^{spider,} all 19, 10.

[mealy bug, n.

21. Non SAE. A scale pest of the Pseudococcidae occ. known in S. A. as Australian bug (qv) 21: also a type of scale]] *

mebos [mīb̥ps, -b̥s, 'meib̥ps] n.

7. A confection of salted and sugared dried apricots. cf. Jam. E. dolce, dosi (of guava or mango).

I have bought some Cape "confyt"; apricots, salted and then sugared, called "mebos" - delicious! Lady Duff Gordon Letters 1861-62

[Afk. prob. fr. Japanese umeboshi = pickled plum (ume = plum)]

(-)meel [mɪəl] n. suff.

7. See (-)meal 7.

meelbol [mɪəl|bōl] n.

7. Traditional infant cereal made of flour, ^{see quot.} ~~baked or boiled in a ball and afterwards ground.~~ ~~also available~~ [commercially ^{available}]

When Baby needs more than milk, build him up with wonderful XYZ Meelbol. The balanced food that always agrees. Cape Argus Advt. 13.5.71

[Afk. fr. Du. meel = flour + bol cogn. ball]

meercat/kat ['mɪə,kæt, mɪə(r)kat] n.

6. Any of several small S. A. mammals of the Viverridae similar to the mongoose, Suricata tetradactyla (also applied to other species Cynictis pencillata, Suricata suricatta, Mangusta levaillantii) sometimes tamed as a pet but subject to, and the commonest carrier of, rabies: the main types are the slender tailed or stokstert waaierstert waaier- or bushy tailed graatjie corruption of gharretjie (qv) 6.

* Mealy bugs ... These insects belong to the same family as the scale insects and Australian Bug. Eliovson Complete Gardening Book for S. A. 1960 1962 edit.

... a sick meercat ... the prettiest, but most ferocious little brute I ever saw. Of these animals there are several kinds, only to be classed together by their habit of living in holes upon the veldt, and standing on hind legs to survey the prospect, in a very droll manner. Boyle To the Cape for Diamonds 1873

Of the confirmed cases, nine were meercats and one a wild cat ... warn their children ... not to catch wild animals especially meercats. He said sick animals were usually docile and easily caught and such animals could have rabies. E. Province Herald 15.9.71

[Afk. fr. Du. meerkat = type of monkey: meer = sea + kat cogn. cat hence an imported creature]

meester ['mɛstə(r)] n. pl. -s

(1) 1. Mode of address to a teacher or other scholarly person.

The station porter called me 'meester' - I suspected him of irony. University Professor, Grahamstown 1972

(2) Hist. 19, 34. A resident tutor in a Dutch family, or an itinerant school-master, often an ex-soldier moving from farm to farm: see quot.

7th July 1811 The daughters ... were under the tuition of an itinerant tutor, or Meester, as he was called, who had been for several months an inmate of the family. Burchell Travels I 1822

There were many men of his kind, old soldiers, English and German, attached to the households of the frontier Boers in those days. For the most part they acted as "meesters" being allotted the task of instructing the children of the family in reading and writing and ciphering ... Brett Young They Seek a Country 1937

[Afk. fr. Du. meester = teacher, (school)master]

meid [meɪt] n. pl. -e

19. A non-white girl or woman usu. coloured, unless in combination kaffer ~ 1, 19, obj.

It's mos funny, Me! Ou meid being donnered! ... You've made it worse for yourself. Dead Kaffer and a Hotnot meid with bruises ... and Boesman sitting by with no skin on his knuckles. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[Afk. cogn. maid]

meisie ['meɪsi] n. pl. -s

19. A young girl: found also in place name 27e Mooimeisiesfontein.

And the girls who provided tasteful items in the programme in the intervals between burgher "liedjies" and soldier-songs - they were a refreshing novelty in Afrikander life, not shy like the backveld "meisje" ... Prance Tante Rebella's Saga 1937

Any girl hereabouts who resents being called a mooi meisie must be singular of her kind even if she is of Norman blood and the line of Vere de Vere. Cape Times 8.1.72

[Afk. fr. Du. meisje cogn. Ger. Madchen = maiden, girl]

* freq. in combination mooi ~ a pretty girl, see mooi 29adj. 10.

-mekaar [mə'kɑ:(r)] prn. suff.

(prn.)
27e. Each other, one another: found in two S. Afr. place names as object of imp. vb, Helpmekaar and Soekmekaar. (Du. zoeken = seek, search for) [Afk. fr. Du. malkander = one another, each other.]

melée ['me,leɪ] n.

30. Sect. Mining. Diamond trade term, non SAE: small diamonds: authorities vary as to the exact size which constitute : see quot. 'A small diamond cut from a fragment of a larger stone and usu. less than one-eighth carat in weight.' Webster's Third International Dictionary.

There are also special terms for diamonds classified by weight, 142 carats being reckoned to the ounce. Small diamonds of less than a carat are known as 'melée', while broken stones are described as 'chips' if of melée size, and 'cleavages' if larger. White The Land God made in Anger 1969

"Stones" are usually over one carat (a carat being 200 milligrams). Anything smaller falls in the "melee" category. Panorama Dec. 1972

[unknown poss. fr. Fr. se mêler = to mix, mingle, or mêlée = a scramble]

melk- [melk-] n. prefix

28. Lit. milk: prefixed to numerous plant names sign. the presence of white latex or 'milk' which can, esp. in the Euphorbiaceae, be poisonous, and corrosive on the skin, e.g. boom, hout, bos all (qv) 32, 28. [Afk. fr. Du. melk cogn. milk]

melkbos ['melk,bɔ̃s] n.

28, 32. Any of numerous species of Euphorbia (also Austr. milk bush) and species of Aesclepiadaceae, all containing white latex, some of which are poisonous e.g. A. glaucophylla (blou), whereas E. Mundii skaa(sheep) 28 is much favoured by sheep. 27c. Found in place names Melkbospoort and Melkbosstrand. [Afk. fr. Du. melk cogn. milk + bos cogn. bush]

melkboom ['melk,bvəm] n.

32. Any of several trees with white latex in the bark and esp. the arborescent species of Euphorbia: see melkbos 28, 32: also naboom 32. [Afk. fr. Du. melk cogn. milk + boom cogn. Ger. Baum = tree]

melkhout(boom) ['melk,(h)əʋt,bvəm] n.

32. Used of several trees with milky latex, esp. in the bark and esp. of Sideroxylon inerme and/or its closely grained timber: see milkwood 18. 27c. Found in S. Afr. place names Melkhoutkraal, Melkhoutfontein. [Afk. fr. Du. melk cogn. milk + hout = wood (+ boom cogn. Ger. Baum = tree)]

melksnysels ['melk, sneisəls, -z] pl. n.

7. A traditional Cape dish containing 'dough-cuttings' similar to noodles: *see also snysels* 7.

And melk snysels, cooked with milk, sugar and cinnamon.
Stuart Cloete Watch for the Dawn 1939

[Afk. fr. Du. melk cogn. milk + snysel(s) = slice(s) fr. Du. snijdsel]

melktert ['melk, tert] n.

7. Traditional Cape custard tart usu. dusted with cinnamon, nutmeg or other spice: see quot. at poffertjie 7 and at sea-cat 12.

The Cape Malays excelled in the art of baking, especially the melktert with crushed cardomons and cinnamon slightly strewn on the egg and milk filling. Cape Argus 5. 6. 71

It is wrong to talk of milk tart - an insipid, anaemic-sounding name for a really delicious old Cape delicacy. WHAT IS WRONG WITH MELK TERT? Ibid 10. 7. 71

[Afk. fr. Du. melk cogn. milk + tert, cogn. tart, Fr. tourte]

meltsiekte ['melt, siktə] n.

11. See miltsiekte 11.

meneer [mə'nɪə(r)] n.

(1) 1. Also mijn-, mynheer: a mode of address equiv. of 'Sir': also in titular use with surname ~ X or Christian name and surname ~ Jan X as equiv. of Mr (abbr. Mnr); and used as a mode of address in the third person: see quot.: see also mevrouw 19, 1 and third person address 29, 1.

Her mind, her heart, her soul - all these were now his and he might do what he would with them. 'Mijnheer knows,' she said again. 'Let him do as it seems right to him.' Pauline Smith The Beadle 1926, 1929 edit.

(2) A mode of reference (also Mynheer) now poss. archaic equiv. of 'the gentleman'; also occ. of 'the dominee' (qv) 4a, 1, 19.

... good looking cheerful Frouw, two neat daughters and the mynheer a very capital specimen of the best class of Dutch Boer. Traveller's Journal 1821-23 edit. Gordon-Brown 1972

... when Meneer die Predikant turned up in person on his rounds - ... there was a period of intensive worship ... Jackson Trader on the Veld 1958

[Afk. fr. Du. myn/mijn = my + heer = lord (hence gentleman) = sir]

Meraai [mə'raɪ, me-] n. prop.

15. The female character in Gammatjie jokes 15: see quot. at gammat 19, 15.

"Sowaar, Meraai - I'm suffering from an energy crisis - I just can't get up!" Gammatjie Cartoon Caption Drum 8. 1. 74

[presum. corruption of Maria]

met(h)i

16, 7, 25. Fenugreek: see Indian terms 25.

... (Fenugreek is obtainable in Indian shops under the name of meti.) Gerber Cape Cookery 1950

metrication, n.

24, 4b. Either the process or the accomplished fact, of adopting the metric system of weights and measures in S. A.: in combination

Board 4b: see litre, mass, volume ^{Cummet} all 24, 4b.

METRICATION Important Notice. The Executive Council of the Newspaper Press Union of South Africa in collaboration with the Metrication Board has agreed that a ban be placed on the use of Imperial Measures and Figures in all advertisements. Evening Post 2. 3. 74

[adj. metric + n. forming suff. -ation: term suggested to the S. Afr. Bureau of Standards, see S.A.B.S. 4b by Oxford Dictionary editors: now also adopted in Australia]

mevrouw [mə'frəʊ] n.

(1) 1. A mode of address to married women, esp. to Afk. school teachers (see also juffrou 1), equiv. of 'Madam', see lady 1: also in titular use with surname X as equiv. of Mrs (abbr. Mev.) used also as a mode of address in the third person: see quot.

And does Mevrouw like it too and - and your daughter?
Fairbridge That Which Hath Been 1913

(2) 19. A mode of reference to a married woman, also to the mistress of a household.

Mevrouw appealed to her husband when she found him at her side, to back up her statement that the Market Master had assessed her berry wax ... Fitzroy Dark Bright Land 1955

... preparations for these guests ... kept Mevrouw busy in her kitchen with Andrina in constant attendance upon her there. Pauline Smith The Beadle 1926, 1929 edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. mevrouw = madam, mistress]

mfezi, [m'fe:zi] n.

6. Naja nivea: the Cape Cobra, see rinkhals 6. [Zu. imFezi = cobra, rinkhals]

middlemannetjie ['mɪdl̩,manɪkɪ, -ci] n. pl. -s

31. Also middelmannetjie: a hump, usu. continuous, between the wheel ruts in an unsurfaced rough road or track.

Remember when mud and middlemannetjies made motoring a continuing adventure? Well, not all romance has left the road with tar. E. Province Herald 4. 3. 74

[Eng. middle or Afk. middel + mannetjie (man + dimin. suff.)]

middelskot ['mɛd],skɔt] n.

11, 24. Intermediate payment made to farmers for their crops between the voorskot (qv) 11, 24 and the agterskot (qv) 11, 24.

According to a statement issued by the Board in Pretoria, the "middelskot" will be paid on the net mass of buckwheat delivered by producers to agents of the Board during the period January 1 to October 31, 1972. Cape Times 9.11.72

[Afk. middel = middle + skot cogn. shot (share) = intermediate payment]

mielie- ['mĩli-] n. pl. -s and n. prefix

14. See mealie 14: ~ gif 28¹¹, see rooibloom 28: ~ pit see mealie pip/pit 1: ~ stronke see mealie stalks 11. [Afk. fr. Port. milho = millet fr, Lat. milium = grain esp. millet]

mieliepap ['mĩli,pap] n.

7. Mealie (maize) meal porridge of various types: staple food of the African people, but used by most S. Africans: see also putu 2, 7, krummelpap 7, stywe pap 7, and pap 7: also quot. at vleis 7.

cf. Canad. sagamite, supon: U.S. cornmeal mush, Jam.E. turn-turn (ton-ton).

"All I'm longing for now is a big dish of well cooked mealie-pap and a chunk of meat. I have been missing them," he greeted us. Drum 22.9.73

The Zulus [in uMabatha] ... Their diet will be typically English and instead of mieliepap they'll have to settle for oatmeal porridge ... | E. Province Herald 15.6.73

The typical South African food that still means as much to us today as it meant to our father and grandfathers. ... Mieliepap for breakfast. Mieliepap with meat and gravy. Mieliepap with dry beans or other vegetables. ... Mealiepap. It's the king of foods. It's the power food of our people. Bona Mar. 1974 (Maize Board Advt.)

[Afk. mielie (qv) + pap = porridge cogn. pap = semi-liquid food]

mies(ies) ['mĩ,sĩs] n.

1, 19. Mode of address and occ. reference with def. art. the ~ to the mistress of a household: also to or of other white woman usu. by non-whites: equiv. of 'madam'; also in form missus (qv) 1, 19: see quot. at kwaai 29adj, 10. cf. Hong K. tai-tai, Ang. Ind. memsahib.

... they have an affectionate way of saying 'my missis' when they know one, which is very nice to hear. Lady Duff Gordon Letters 1861-62

... asked for a telephone directory, and phoned for an ambulance, explaining: "The miesies is sick." E. Province Herald 30.8.74

[presum. fr. Eng. dial. missus]

miggie, n. pl. -s

21. See muggie 21.

... the year after the drought, the miltsiek broke out.
The miltsiek seemed to be in the grass of the veld ... the water of
the dams, and even in the air the cattle breathed. Fosman Mafeking
Road 1947

mijnheer, n.

1, 19. See meneer 1, 19.

mik [mɛk] n. pl. -s

15. The forked stick of a catapult; see cattie 15, lackey/ie 15.

George has chosen such a killer great mik for my new cattie that I won't be able to pull it. Child 13 Mar. 1974

[Afk. mik(stok) = forked stick]

milkwood, n. pl. -s

32. See melkhout(boom) 32: white ~ /wit melkhout 18, timber of Sideroxylon inerme, red ~ /rooi melkhout 18, timber of several species of Mimusops esp. M. obovata.

*

miltsiekte ['mɛlt,sɪktə] n.

11. Also meltsiekte, gif(t)siekte 11: anthrax in stock, highly infectious and communicable to man: [cases caused by eating ~ contaminated meat are usu. fatal.]

Anthrax, locally termed "meltziekte" or "gift-ziekte", is a disease which, in its well-known erratic and spasmodic way, appears from time to time in all districts of the Colony, and among all classes of stock. Wallace's Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

[Afk. fr. Du. milt = spleen + siekte fr. ziekte = disease]

min dae ['mɛn,dɑə] n. and n. modifier

Sect. Army 20. Lit. 'few days': used sign. obligatory National Service is almost over: as modifier ~ smile, ~ salute sign. careless or insubordinate: see ouman 20, and quot. at varkpan 20.

To the oumanne of E Squadron, Tempe, min dae and vasbyt from Dave. Radio S.A. Forces Favourite 1.4.72

A favourite form of greeting is 'Min dae' when they have forty days or less to serve, and 'forty days' also means something to them. Informant Dr. Amy Jacot-Guillarmod 2.1.70

[Afk. min = few, little + dae = days (dag + pl.)]

mine-dump, n. pl. -s

30, 22. A large 'hill' of solidified crushed quartz from which the gold has been extracted, a dominant feature of the Rand (qv) 22, 27a (Reef) landscape.

... the mine dumps, dominating the scene and continually changing colour, reminded me of brown pyramids, grey flat-topped hills in the Karoo, the ochre foundations of gigantic old temples never completed. ... -how striking at times are the prosaic old mine dumps of the Witwatersrand. Krige The Dream and the Desert 1953

It has been estimated that the mine dumps of the Witwatersrand are among the largest man-made landmarks, comparable perhaps to the pyramids ... or to Manhattan Island. Panorama May 1972

*

milt [mɛlt] n.

7. Also melt: spleen, usu. butcher's term.

... the dust that the Bechuana with his head under his arm raised ... seemed to become part of and reach beyond the Milky Way that shone through his milt and was also a road. Bosman Jurie Steyn's Post Office 1971 [Afk. fr. Du. milt = spleen]

mis ['mɪs] n.

- (1) 18. Dried cattle dung which burns to white hot coals, used for fuel, even braaiing (qv) where wood is scarce: see also Free State (Coal) 18, Karoo coal 18, koek see quot. cf. Canad. buffalo-chip, prairie chip, dung used as fuel.

Here ... we burn a strange kind of coal. It is dung. ... It is called mis. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

... the manure was well trampled into the ground, forming a layer three to four inches deep, which was periodically cut out with spades in square cakes of about 18 inches. Packed on top of the kraal walls, where it soon dried ready for burning, these cakes were sold in adjacent villages at fourpence each, and were called miskoeke. Jackson Trader in the Veld 1958

- (2) Fresh cattle dung used in various mixtures with ash, blood, mud or water for smearing (qv) 29vb or dressing floors in country districts, also for making floors, see vloer 18. [also mist, see etym.]

The floors ... she smeared regularly with a mixture of cowdung and ashes called mist. The little house smelt always of mist, of strong black coffee ... Pauline Smith The Little Karroo 1925, 1936 edit.

Following traditional Cape practice, such composition floors were sometimes smeared at regular intervals with a mixture of cow dung and water known to the settlers as 'mist'. Lewcock C19 Architecture in S. A. 1963

- (3) Dry blocks of stamped and cut up koek used for building purposes as well as for fuel: see quot. at (1) mis.

... in the drier pastoral districts, where manure is not much in demand for fertilising purposes ... it is the practice to cut the material, which resembles a light fibrous peat and is known as 'mist', into slabs 3 to 4 inches thick, and about 16 inches long and 12 broad. In this form it is used for the building of kraal fences or as fuel. Wallace Farming Industries of the Cape Colony 1896

[Afk. fr. Du. mest = manure (+ koek cogn. cake)]

misbredie ['mɪs,brɛdi, -bri-] n.

28. Any of several species of Amaranthus and Chenopodium the leaves of which can be used for making bredie (qv) 7: so called from the fact that they germinate usu. near kraals from seeds in the animal droppings surrounding them. [Afk. fr. Du. mest = manure + bredie fr. Port brede = stew, ragout]

miskruier ['mɪs,krœiə(r)] n. pl. -s

21. The dung-roller beetle or 'tumble-bug', a beetle of the Scarabaeidae. cf. Jam. E. tumble-turd.

Miskruier. - ... The not inappropriate appellation of the various dung-rolling beetles. Pettman Africanderisms 1913

[Adk. fr. Du. mest = dung + kruier = a porter]

mispel ['mɪspəl] n.

14. Medlar: found in several plant names e. g. that of Vangueria infausta the fruits of which resemble the cultivated medlar and are used for making mampoer (qv) 8.

misrybol ['mɪs, rɛɪ, bɔɪ] n.

13. Amaryllis belladonna and Haemanthus coccineus which flower Mar. - Apr. when the vineyards are being manured: see ride 29vb.

A variety of Haemanthus, which appears to have received this inelegant appellation because it happens to be in flower just about the time that the mest (manure) is being carted, or in South African English "ridden" on to the vineyards. The name is also applied to a fragrant Amaryllis. Pettman Africanderisms 1913
[Afk. fr. Du. mest = dung + rijden = to cart + bol = bulb]

Miss Lucy, n. pl. ∅

12. The red stumpnose (qv) 12: see also quot. at allew@reld 9.

Jan-bruin were plentiful and of a good size. Several romans and daggerhead were caught, and a couple of Miss Lucy (red stumpnose). Grocott's Mail 30. 6. 72

[unknown poss. fr. n. prop. cf. Jacopever]

missus, n.

1, 19. Mistress, madam: in SAE usu. mies(ies) (qv) 1, 19.

You can already dress like a white missus, and Jo'burg girls dress like that. Dikobe The Marabi Dance 1970

[presum. fr. mistress, Brit. dial. missus]

misvloer/floor ['mɪs, flu:r] n.

18. Also dung-floor (qv) 18 and quot. at pepper tree 32: a floor made of stamped, dried mis (qv) 18 usu. cattle dung: found both in old houses and more freq. barns and waenhuise (qv) 18.

The living room had a misvloer, but the floor of the wagon formed the roof of the room. Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

His three-roomed house was of clay, floored with mis, and had no ceilings. Fitzroy Dark Bright Land 1955

[Afk. fr. Du. ^{mest = manure +} vloer cogn. floor]

mithai, n.

7, 25. See Indian terms 25, also samoosa 7, 25.

mist rain, vb intrns

Substand. Trans. 33. To drizzle lightly. cf. Scotch Mist; Jam. E. dew-dew or ju-ju.

The weather looks as if it is going to clear. ... I don't like it when it is just mist raining it must either rain or it must clear. Letter schoolgirl ex N. E. Cape aged 17 30. 9. 74

[translit. Afk. n. misreën = drizzle]

mk(h)onto [m'kǒntǒ] n.

2, 20. Spear (assegai (qv)): see also wash spears 29vb, 2, 20.

... they charge with a single umkonto, or spear, and each man must return with it from the field, or bring that of his enemy, otherwise he is sure to be put to death. Thompson Travels in S. A. II 1827

[Ngu. umkhonto = spear]

(u)mkhonto ka Shaka [(u)ṁkǒntǒ ga {aga, -ka}] n. prop.

2, 4b. The Zulu opposition party, 'the spear of Shaka' (Chaka), also Shaka's Spear (qv) 4b, 2. [occ. The Spear]

King Sobhuza had heard about the formation of the Zulu opposition Umkhonto wa [sic] Shaka (Shaka's Spear) and expressed 'deep concern' about it. Last year King Sobhuza outlawed political parties in his kingdom [Swaziland]. E. Province Herald 6. 2. 74

[Zu. umkhonto = spear ka -(possessive) = of + Shaka]

(u)mlungu [uṁ'lungǔ] n. and n. modifier pl. -s, -abelungu.

1, 19, 2. [A.E.] A mode of address or reference to a white man by a black one: now usu. ironic as in term stan. cf. U.S.

whitey; ^{honkes} also some uses of Jam. E. backra: Canad. kabloona various sp. mooneas, also saganash white man esp. Englishman. Hong K. gwai-lo*

Then his head fell back, his eyes, however, never leaving my face. "Hau ... umlungu ..." he groaned. Krige Death of the Zulu in The Dream and the Desert 1953

... when Mlungu journalists were barred from the Transkei Hotel at Umtata where our Bantustan leaders had their first summit meeting. Drum 22. 12. 73

... he has discovered that mlungus have a "serious problem" keeping their chubby children's weight in check, then we Bantustanians have an even "more serious problem". That is padding the frames of our children ... Ibid 8. 1. 74

In combination (jocular) stan cf. Bantustan.

[Ngu. (u)mlungu = a white man]

mngqusho 7.2 See samp.

mnumzane/a [ṁ'númzǎna, -e, -ə] n.

1, 2, 4b. A mode of address, usu. written equiv. of Mr [at one time adopted for official reference or correspondence to avoid the use of Mr to or for a black man, with the salutation "Greeting(s)" to obviate 'Dear Sir'; abbr. Mna, Mnu.]

The mbongis are out in their colourful dresses dancing and singing shouting 'Bayete' to Mnumzana V... Drum 8. 3. 73

[Ngu. mnumzane = gentleman, also kraal-head]

moan, vb trns.

Substand. Coll. 10, 29vb. Used generally among children equiv of scold or rebuke: also as vbl. n. as in 'He gave me a moaning for it.'

[Also as in Brit. and U.S. coll. 'moan' vb intrns. equiv. of 'complain']

Oral informants: They'll moan us for wearing our blazers (age 11)
I'll be moaned for hitting him (age 14)

* Chinese mode of reference to a European. See also addenda p. 589.
Ang. Ind. Gora, Englishman

modder ['mōdə(r)] n. prefix

27a. Mud, sign. muddy: found as prefix in S. Afr. place names Modderfontein, Moddergat, Modderrivier.

The farm where we now stopped is named Modder-Fonteyn (Muddy Fountain) an appellation so common in the Colony that I have visited, I believe above a dozen places of that name. [It is strange to observe the barrenness of fancy of the boors in giving names to places ... The appellation being given generally from some quality common to many places, and seldom with that nice and accurate discrimination which seizes the distinctive and peculiar features alone and embodies them in the name. This may, perhaps be ascribed to the sameness and monotony of South African scenery: it however occasions much inconvenience and confusion to the traveller. . .] Thompson Travels in S. A. I 1827

[Afk. fr. Du. modder = mud, muddy]

modjadji, (the) [mō'dzadzǐ] n. prop.

2, 19. The Chieftainess and goddess of rain of the N. Sotho Pedi: see also quot. at Rain Queen 2; ^{and tickey 24,} palm 32 Encephalartos transvenosus: see kaffir bread tree 32, Hottentot bread 32. 27e also in place name Modjadjisberg.

It has been my privilege to stand in the swirl of cloud and mist among the age-old stems of the Madjadja Palms on the hill below the Kraal of the Rain Queen and feel something of the magic of rain in Africa. Giddy Cycads of S. A. 1974 cit. E. Province Herald 13. 11. 74

[Sotho n. prop.]

moed [(xə)'mūt] n. abstr.

(1) 27b. Also gemoed: courage, heart, spirit: found in various compounds in S. Afr. place names Moedverloor, Welgemoedboven, Moedig, Moedwil.

(2) Courage: in combination hou ~ 10, found also on the coat of arms of the Orange Free State: see quot. at hou 29vb.

[Afk. moed = courage cogn. O.E. mōd = heart, spirit]

moederkappie ['mūdə(r),kapi] n.

13. 'Granny-bonnet', any of several species of Orchidaceae the flowers of which are not unlike a bonnet in shape, including some of the Disas, Disperis capensis, Bonatea speciosa and Pterogodium catholicum: see also disa 13, oupa-en-^{met}sy-pyp 13 begging hand 13.

moederkappie - ... The whole flower bears a striking resemblance to the old Dutch "kappie" (bonnet) and the lateral sepals enhance the effect by their suggestion of ribbons for tying the "kappie". C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

[Afk. fr. Du. moeder cogn. mother + kappie Du. kapje = bonnet (hood) kap + dimin. suff. -je, -ie]

moeg [múx] adj.

Coll. Slang. 29adj. 16. Tired, weary

I'll keep on walking. I'll walk and walk ... until you're so bloody moeg that when I stop you can't open your mouth! Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[Afk. moeg = tired fr. Du. moe = weary]

moenie worry/panic nie ['múni-, ní] vb phr.

Coll. Slang. 10. Don't worry/panic - sometimes with alles sal regkom (qv) 10,

"Man, we're never going to be the same again!" And the Afrikaner nodded sagely and replied "Moenie worry nie. Alles sal reg kom." Drum 1.1.72

'Moenie worry nie - alles sal regkom is the mood. The rest of the world, African in particular, is in a mess and won't touch us. We ... are just fine. 'I'm all White, Jack.' Cape Argus 5.5.73

[Afk. moenie = don't fr. Du. moet niet = must not (+ nie = no(t) in Afk. double neg. structure)]

¹moer(jou) [mu:r (jəv)] n. and interj.

Unacct. 9. As an abusive mode of address or expletive sign. rage or disgust.

[... staring up at a bird ...] Jou Moer! [She watches it ... scrambles to her feet and shakes her fist at it] Jou Moer!!
(* glossary: 'ultimate obscenity.' Contraction of Jou ma se moer your mother's womb.) Fugard Boesman and Lena 1973 edit.

In combination ~ of a, modifier

Slang. 10. usu. among children equiv. of 'hell of a', see helluva 10 sign. tremendous, 'almighty', used of a blow, quarrel etc. *see also hell in, the*

He tripped me up on purpose so I gave him a moerava klap. Child aged 12 1973

[Afk. and Du. fr. moeder cogn. mother, sign. womb, dregs, lees etc. (+ jou cogn. you: see also first quot.)]

²-moer-, n. prefix and suff.

28. As prefix or suff. to plant names sign. usu. yeast, ferment (n.)

~ plantjie 28, 8 any of several species of Anacampseros the dried roots and stems of which afford yeast for baking or brewing;

~ wortel(tjie) (root + dimin. suff.) Glia gummifera and other species from which a ferment is made esp. for honey beer (qv) 18; karee ~ (qv) 8, 28, also kiri ~ 28, 8.

Moor-wortel is an umbelliferous plant, from the root of which and honey the Hottentot's make, by fermentation, an intoxicating liquor. trans. Thunberg Travels II 1795

[Afk. moer fr. Du. moeder here sign. yeast, ferment]

moer(a) ['múv(ə), mú-] vb trns.

Slang. 10, 29vb. Murder, prob. by sound association, beat up, thrash, cf. donder vb. 10, 29vb.

We'll go on out and moera all the outjies next door. Song 'Ag Plees Deddy' Jeremy Taylor Date unknown 1950s

[fr. Afk. moor = murder]

moes [mūs] n.

7. A puree of some cooked fruit or vegetable e. g. applemoes = apple sauce. cf. U.S. mush, corn-mush etc.

... mutton sosaties on skewers, tasting of dried apricots and onions and orange-leaves and curry; with pumpkin "moes", rich with butter, sugar and cinnamon, and yellow rice, and new peas. M. Weiner [Novel, title mislaid] 1969 pub. Mills and Boon

[Afk. fr. Du. moes = pulp, puree prob. fr. Fr. mousse]

moffie ['mɔ̃fi] n. pl. -s

19, 16. Homosexual, sometimes a male transvestite: see trassie 19, also bof 19. cf. Austr. punce/ponce, poofter, Canad. ber/burdash, Jam. E. mampala, U.S. fairy etc.

The life of Edward - described as a beautiful moffie with a sweet soprano voice - was a strange affair from its beginning to its weird end last week. Post 23.5.71

[poss. fr. Afk. or Du. slang mofrodiet, Brit. seamen's slang mophy = 'a delicate well-groomed youth' (Partridge Dictionary of Slang and Unconventional English) fr. substand. slang 'mophrodite' for hermaphrodite]

moggel ['mɔ̃xəl] n. pl. ∅

12. Fresh water sand barbel Barbus capensis a type of carp.

These simple plants could be nourished in quantity by the excreta of the high-value eels and thus provide food for the weed-eating fish such as the moggel (sand fish) or tilapia (kurper) and these then could provide cheap protein food for the masses. Farmer's Weekly 13.6.73

[etym. dub. poss. fr. Du. mokkel = plump child or woman]

-molen- [-'mʊələn, -'mɔ̃vɫən] n. prefix and suff.

27e. -Mill- found in S. Afr. place names Oude Molen, Molenrivier.

[Du. molen = mill (Afk. meul)]

mombakkie(s) [ˌmɔ̃m'bakɪ(s)] n. pl. -s

15. Carnival Mask.

This month is to be Guy Fox [sic]. We are making in our street our own G. Fox with all our friends helping. The big men make a great G. Fox with 1000 crackers in its stummick. They put a mambakkie on its face. We all buy the cheap mambakkies in the shop to wear for walking the Guy. Iris Vaughan Diary circa 1902

13. sblom(metjie) (little flower) Disperis capensis, Pterygodium catholicum (Orchidaceae): see moederkappie 13.

mombakkiesblom(metjie) ... the vernacular name is derived from the suggestion of a mask ... conveyed by the peculiar shape of the flowers. C. A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966

[Afk. sing. mombakkies = mask fr. Du. mom cogn. mummer = mask, guise + Du. bakkes = face]

mompara [,mɔ̃m'para, ,mbɔ̃mparə] n.

19. Also mampara 19. A fool, greenhorn or incompetent: I also a mode of address (abusive)*. Formerly a raw (qv) 29adj. 10, African labourer: see first quot. *cf. Afr. (m) pumbavu.

The shepherd must be, not the recently engaged "mompara" whose only language is unintelligible - not the "piccanin" who spends the day catching meerkats or sleeping, but the most intelligent native available. Farmer's Annual 1914

'It makes me sick,' said Mostert angrily, 'When I think of those smug mamparas sitting there in Parliament six thousand miles away from the nearest bullet, making a decision like that...'
Krige The Dream and the Desert 1953

[etym. dub. poss. from ma- Bantu pl. prefix + form of Afk. baar = raw, inexperienced fr. Malay baharu = new(ly)]

-mond- [mɔ̃nt] n. prefix and suff. pl. -e

27a. (River) mouth: found in S. Afr. place names Mondplaas, Gouritzmond, Kleinmond, Kleinemonde.

monk [mɔ̃nk] n. pl. ∅

12, 7. Also angler-(fish) 12: Lophius piscatorius . sold frozen commercially as a substitute for crayfish (qv) 7, 12 as Fillets of ~ 7 for making cold seafood cocktails.

Monk, Anglerfish, Broad head with large mouth and recurved teeth. Brown or slaty grey, lighter on belly ... A repulsive and rapacious fish. J.L.B. Smith Sea Fishes of S.A. 1949, 1950 edit.

[unknown. poss. fr. shape or colouring]

monkey bomb/snuff, n. pl. -s

28. Lycoperdon hyemale: see devil's snuff box 28.

monkey bird, n. pl. -s

3. Usu. Irisor viridis the red billed hoopoe: see kakelaar 3.

monkey(face)stone. See addenda p. 584

monkey orange, n. pl. -s

32, 14. The fruit of several species of Strychnos esp. S. innocua or S. pungens: see ²klapper 14, also called kaffir orange 14.

monkey rope, n. pl. -s

28. Any of several species of Cynanchum, Secamone, Rhoicissus etc. all of which are of a lianous habit of growth: see bobbejaantou 28 and quot. at wait-a-bit 32.

monkey rope ... see BOBBEJAANTOU, a name less appropriate than "monkey rope" as baboons ... very seldom scamper up the lianes, whereas monkeys frequently do. C.A. Smith Common Names of S.A. Plants 1966

It was thick bush with big old yellow-wood trees festooned with creepers as thick as a man's wrist. We called them monkey ropes. Fair Lady 14.6.72

monkeys' wedding, n.

33. Simultaneous rain and sunshine poss. so called from the incongruous combination: see etym.: also jakkalstrou 33. cf. Jam. E. devil rain (while the sun is shining): Du. Kermis in de Hel.

As I speak to you we have a burst of late sunshine making this into a monkey's wedding and a half ... let's hope this sunshine does sweep the rain away. Radio S. A. 20. 11. 71

[poss. trans. Zu. for this phenomenon umshado we Zinkawu = a wedding for monkeys]

monkey thorn, n. pl. -s

32. Any of several species of Acacia affording cover for monkeys: see apiesdoring 32, anaboom/tree 32.

moochi/a [mutʃi/-a, -ə] n. pl. -s

5, 2. See muchi/a 5, 2.

Yesterday she had been here, clad in a moocha like a man and bearing a shield; ... Rider Haggard Nada the Lily 1895

mooi [mɔɪ] adj.

(1) Coll. 29adj: Pretty, good, nice etc. general term of approbation, often among children even in adv. m. form as in 'My new bike goes ~ly.' See quot. at meisie 19, and addenda p. 588.

He said it was just a "mooi Klippje" ... He certainly had no idea of its being any more valuable than any other Mooi Klip (pretty stone) found among the water-washed pebbles in the river. E. Province Herald 3. 3. 1921

For the young people this was a chance to do some courting, to seek a mooi meisie, a pretty girl ... Stuart Cloete Rags of Glory 1963

(2) 27i. Pretty, beautiful: found in S. Afr. place names usu. as prefix to n. e. g. Mooi Uitsig (see sig 27c), Mooimeisiesfontein, Mooi Rivier, Mooifontein.

[Afk. mooi = pretty]

mooi loop [mɔɪ lʊp] | imp. vb phr.

10. 'Walk pleasantly', 'Go well' (qv) 10, farewell greeting to someone leaving: see hamba kahle 2, 10. cf. Jam. E. walk good also a form of farewell. [Afk. mooi (adv. m.) pleasantly, well + loop = walk, go]

mooi, nooi(en)tjie [mɔɪ'noɪɪŋkɪ, -ci] n. pl. -s

(1) 12. Sarpa salpa: the bamboo fish (qv) 12 (bamvoosie) or stink fish 12. cf. Jam. E. names Miss Pretty, None-so-pretty, Nancy Pretty for several colourful fish. *Also stre(e)pie; see karanteen 12.

He defended the bamboo fish, or mooi nooientjie (pretty girl) also known as the stink fish, explaining that its diet of seaweed gave out a peculiar smell when the fish was cleaned. Nevertheless, it is sound food. Lawrence Green S. Afr. Beachcomber 1958

(2) mooinoientjie 13 Cleome rubella, an annual weed with mauve flowers usu. avoided by stock and once "suspected of being the cause of gallamsiekte". C.A. Smith Common Names of S. Afr. Plants 1966 (see lamsiekte 11). [Afk. mooi = pretty + nooi(en)tjie = young girl - nooi (qv) 19, 1 + dimin. suff.]

moonfish, n. pl. ∅

(1) Also moonie/y 12: either of two species of the Monodactylidae, M. falciformis Cape Lady, or M. argenteus [both also known as sea-kite, kite-fish]

Brenda - who is only 13 years old - landed three moonie ... The lucky fish which took the sealed award was a moonie of the exact weight of 2lb 7oz ... Albany Mercury 29. 1.70

(2) Either Trachinotus rusellii also Ladyfish, or T. blochii.

Mr. W — P — caught two cob, a jan bruin, a black steenbras, a zebra and a moonfish ... three white steenbras, two cob, two galjoen and a moonfish ... Daily Dispatch 29. 5. 74

[prob. fr. colouring]

mootjie [mũĩkĩ, -cĩ] n. pl. -s

7. Fillet of fish: see quot. at pekelaar 7. [Afk. fr. Du. moot = slice, fillet (of fish) + dimin. suff. -jie]

mopane(tree) [ˌmɔ̃'pane, -ə] n.

32. The shrub or tree Colophospermum or Copaifera mopane, sometimes called ironwood (qv) 32, 18 an important fodder tree in low rainfall areas, giving its name to veld 22, 11 where it is the chief vegetation, and to the worm 21*, a black spotted caterpillar which feeds upon it and is eaten by Africans.

The vegetation consists largely of Mopane trees, the soil is sandy, and the rocky outcrops and krantzes are ideal as sleeping quarters for the baboons. Panorama May 1971

[mopane Sechuana (Tswana) plant name]

moppie(s) [ˈmɔ̃pĩ(s)] n. usu. pl.

15, 25. Humorous, often teasing, Malay street song. cf. Jam. E. Banter-sing, a work song often satirically alluding to local people as do African work songs in S. A.

... street-songs or moppies ... Moppies are little songs (often of doubtful content) sung in order to challenge, deride or irritate the listener, or merely as foolery, When singing a moppie, the singer often includes a person's name, and if the person referred to cannot respond in similar vein he is laughed at by all present. Du Plessis and Luckhoff The Malay Quarter and its People 1953

[presum. fr. Du. mop = joke, hoax, cogn. archaic Eng. 'mopping and mowing' + dimin. suff. -(p)ie + pl. -s]

* But then, when we were in the bundu on a safari, everything was served with stywepap - even mopani worms. E. Province Herald 6. 5. 74
various sp. mopaane, mopani(e).

mōre- ['mɔ:rə-] n. prefix

27e. Also morgen: morning, found in S. Afr. place names e. g. Mōreson, Mōregloed, Morgenster. [Afk. mōre fr. Du. morgen cogn. morning, morrow]

mōre is nog 'n dag ['mɔ:rə ɛs 'nɔx ə(p) ,dax] idiom.

Coll. 10. Tomorrow is another day;equiv. of Span. mañana.

Only in South Africa, I thought, where "mōre is nog 'n dag", could this happy atmosphere attend a roaring railway engine and coaches running through a small village. Iris Vaughan Last of the Sunlit Years 1969

Will we Whites sit back, pour out another drink and say: "Mōre is nog a dag?" Sunday Times 18. 2. 73

[Afk. mōre = tomorrow + is + nog = another, still + 'n fr. Du. een = a (indef. art.) + dag cogn. day]

morena [ˌmɔ're:na] n.

2, 1. Sotho title of respect accorded to chiefs, cf. (i)nkosi 2, 1: also used as equiv. of 'sir' or master.

... the Chief is highly respected by his subjects, who call him Morena; ... Lanham/Mopeli Paulus Blanket Boy's Moon 1955

Morena, give my greetings to the other Morena. Tonight I shall come to the Morena's truck and we shall speak again of Mokhotlong. Krige The Dream and the Desert 1953

[Sotho morena = lord, sir]

¹morgen [mɔ:gən, mɔ(r)xən, -gən] n.

24, 11. A Dutch land measure used in S. A. until the adoption of the metric system, see Metrication 4b, 24: a ~ roughly regarded as the amount of land which could be ploughed in a morning is just under a hectare, and just over two acres.

Dutch farmers ... sometimes make a deficiency of water a pretence for asking for an additional grant of land, a full-sized farm is reckoned from two to three thousand morgen, or double that number of acres. Alexander Western Africa I 1837

On a piece of ground 4½ morgen (4 hectares) in extent, situated on the eastern side of the town, 71 jukskei pitches were laid out. Panorama June 1970

[fr. ²morgen (qv)]

²morgen, n.

27e. Morning: see mōre 27e. [Du. morgen = morning]

morning gown, n. pl. -s

[A. E.] and [I. E.] 5. A dressing gown: see also gown 5.

"I have even bought a morning gown and slippers. Things I never thought I would ever need," he said as his wife looked at him proudly. Drum 22. 9. 73

[unknown, poss. as opposed to nightgown/clothes]

... he shook his head, rubbed his chin, looked miserable:
"Ag, there's mos plenty of guinea fowl here in the Cape, lady. You
don't have to get Trrrrransvaal guinea fowl ... (There was the bry
again!)

This should be at buy

morsdood ['mɔ(r)s,dʒət] adj.

Coll. Slang. 10. Dead as mutton/a doornail etc: see also mossie 3.

Lena: Ja! he's dead ...
He's dead Boesman ...
Boesman: ... Morsdood?
Lena: Ja.

Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969, 1973 edit.

[Afk. fr. Du. mors = absolutely, completely, intensifying prefix, also poss. rel. Lat. mors = death + dood cogn. dead]

moruti ['mɔ'ruti] n. pl. baruti

1, 2, 4a. Priest, minister: see also umfundisi 2, 4b: see quot. at liretlo 2.

Yes, Moruti, I was baptised during childhood at the French Mission, by a Moruti who bore your name. Lanham/Mopeli Paulus Blanket Boy's Moon 1953

... tell me, you who consort with Baruti, how come you to this pass? I should rather have thought to see you following behind the white men who beat the big drum and wear the red caps. Ibid

[Sotho (mo)ruti = priest, ba- pl. prefix]

¹mos- [mɔ's] adv. particle.

Coll. 29Red. 10. Indeed, in fact, actually, but: used redundantly in SAE: see also quot. at meid 19 and bry.

A person can't live on ice cream and with these teeth in my mouth I can mos only eat soft stuff like ice cream. Marie Philip Caravan Caravel 1973

In combination Substand. 10 usu. among children as in 'I did it for ~' sign. for luck, for no special reason: also for ~'s sake, for ~sie. cf. sommer 10.

[Afk. fr. Afr. and Du. im(mers) = indeed, in fact]

²mos- [mɔ's] n. prefix

7, 8. Must, of grapes, usu. in combinations ~bolletjie 7, ~beskuit 7 ~konfynt 7, ~konfynt jar 18 all (qv). [Afk. fr. Du. most cogn. must (of grapes)]

mosbeskuit ['mɔsbə'skœit] n.

7. See mosbolletjie 7. [Afk. mos = must + beskuit = rusk cogn. Eng. and Fr. biscuit]

mosbolletjie [mɔ's'bɔlɪki, -ci] n. pl. -s

7. Buns made of dough leavened with a ferment of must ²mos instead of yeast, baked together and broken apart: also oven dried as rusks known as mosbeskuit (similar to U.S. zwieback) or boerebeskuit (qv) 7.

Mosbolletjies - so-called from "Mos", the juice of the grape in its first stages of fermentation, and "Bolletjie", a bun. During the wine-making season the freshly fermented grape-juice is commonly used instead of yeast by the country people ... Hildagonda Duckitt's Recipes edit. Kuttel 1966

Hilda Duckitt started the day on the farm by making rusks from mosbolletjies and serving them with the early coffee. She used fermented grape juice in these buns instead of yeast. Lawrence Green Tavern of the Seas 1947

[etym. see first quot.]

moskonfyt ['mɔskɔn,feit] n.

7, 8. Thick syrup prepared from grapes: used in cookery: see also second quot.

Cream butter and sugar and add coffee essence, egg and moskonfyt. (Use golden syrup if you cannot get moskonfyt.) Hilda Gerber's Cape Cookery 1950

... success was achieved with the export of moskonfyt or grape syrup ... because there was a good demand for it in Britain for the preparation of so-called 'British Wines'. Opperman Spirit of the Vine 1968

In combination: ~ jar/bottle 18, early glass, now collector's pieces: see quot. at konfyt 7.

Cape made glass water jugs and most konfyt jars. Wm. Fehr Treasures at the Castle of Good Hope 1963

[Afk. fr. Du. most = must + konfijt = conserve]

Mosotho [mɔ'sutʊ] n. pl. Basotho

23. A single citizen of Lesotho (qv) 23. [Basotho (Basuto) the pl. form is freq. erroneously used for one person. cf. Bantu (pl. form) (qv) 23] see quot. at makulu 29adj. and Sesotho 23, 2.

mossie [mɔ'si] n. pl. -s

3. The common S. Afr. sparrow Passer melanurus similar to the English variety, also called koornvreter (qv) 3 in the grain season.

... the Bible says, not even a little mossie can fall to the ground without our heavenly father knows it. MacLennan The Wake 1971

... wakes at 6.30 a.m. or so loudly claiming at the top of his voice that he's a mossie and carrying on ear-splitting, vulgar conversations in mossie-language with the mossie hoi-polloi outside ... Cape Times 15.1.73

as dead as a ~ 10, stone dead: see also morsdood 10. [trans. Afk. so doos soos 'n mossie]

to live on mieliepap and ~s 10, to be on short commons.

We're thrilled to be building our own place in the sun, even though we have to live on mieliepap and mossies to do it. Letter Grahamstown to Tokyo Sept. 1972

[Afk. fr. Du. musch = a sparrow]

2 mossie see 'mos.

mother, small, big n. pl. -s

[A. E.] 2, 19. In African family structure big mother(s) is/are the mother's elder sister(s) and the small her younger sister(s), i. e. aunts on the maternal side are all ~s: see quot. at father 2, 19.

[a system of family life similar to that of the Chinese. Source Han Suyin Destination Chungking 1942, 1973 edit.]

moulvie ['mulvĩ] n. pl. -s

[I. E.] not freq. in SAE. 19, 25. An Islamic scholar who gives religious instruction in a madressa (qv) 25, 34, and ministers to the religious needs of the congregation of a mosque; also mullah (rare).

Only last week a learned moulvie brought to me the lines which I translate for you. They were written by Abul Fazl, the friend and adviser of the great Akbar. Fairbridge That Which Hath Been 1913

My name is Abdul Wahid, I am Moulvie at a mosque near Cato Manor. Lanham/Mopeli Paulus Blanket Boy's Moon 1953

[Hindi maulvi fr. Arab mawlawi]

mousebird, n. pl. -s.

3. Any of several species of Colius: see muisvòël 3.

Two very singular birds, the Caffer finch and mousebird (the latter so called from being the colour of a mouse) have two very beautiful marks on their wings; the rest of the plumage is dark grey. At the commencement of spring their tails begin to grow, and get to such a length as to appear to be an absolute incumbrance ... Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-land 1827

[prob. trans. Du. muisvogel]

(i)mpundulu (bird) [(ĩ)mpũn'dulũ] n.

2, 16. Also lightning bird (qv) 2, 16 and erron. form mpundu. An evil spirit, about which there are various beliefs: it is invoked by witches, and freq. cited before judges as the instigator or cause of crime: see quot. at mamlambo 2, 16. cf. Canad. hohoq, thunderbird.

The evil spirit most feared and the most potent is Impundulu the lightning bird. ... Like a vampire it feeds on blood. The people believe that lightning is caused by the Mpundulu streaking across the sky to strike the earth and lay eggs of thunderbolts. ... Broster Red Blanket Valley 1967

In addition to the tokoloshe there was the mpundu bird, which 'kicks a person in the chest' and causes TB. E. Province Herald 20. 7. 73

[Ngu. i-mpundulu - 'bird supposed to be used by women in witchcraft.' Doke and Vilakazi Zulu Dictionary 1948]

mqomboti [m̩kõm'botĩ +] n.

2, 8. African beer usu. brewed with sprouted kaffir corn, see mtombo 8: see also kaffir beer 2, 8, (u)tshwala 2, 8, maiza 2, 8.

Mdantsane residents may brew mqomboti (African beer) in unlimited quantities provided it was for home consumption and not for sale. Daily Dispatch 4. 8. 72

[Xh. mqombothi = beer]

(u)mthakati [(ũ)m'ta,gatĩ] n. and adj.

2, 16. Various sp.: see tagati 2, 16.

mtombo [m'tõmbõ] n.

[A. E.] 2, 8. Malt, sprouted grain usu. kaffircorn (qv) 7, 14 for for brewing kaffir beer (qv) 2, 8.; also commercially available: see quot.: mmela (beer brewing mix).

Mtombo-Mmela Home Brew. stronger, smoother, richer guaranteed pure and healthy ... XYZ mtombo-mmela the strongest home brew. Drum Advt. Jan. 1971

[Ngu. (u)mthombo = sprouted grain]

muchi/a [ˈmutʃɪ/a] n. pl. -s

2, 5. A loin cloth of strings of hide or animal's tails worn by African tribesmen esp. Zulus; see also beshu 5, 2, moocha 5, 2.

Cetywayo never appeared in European clothes, but wore simply his mutya, and a necklace of lion's or tiger's claws. Buchanan Pioneer Days in Natal 1934

... the menfolk stride along bare-thighed, in swinging umutshas of monkey-tails and hide-strips instead of trousers.

Walker Kaffirs are Lively 1948

[Zu. umutsha = loin cloth]

muggie [ˈmœxɪ, ˈmæ-] n. pl. -s

21. Midge, gnat: used of irritating flying insects generally: see also brommer 21, gogga 21, nunu 21. [erron. miggie pron. sp.]

Joan was playing frightfully bad tennis but she suddenly swallowed a muggie and flew into such a rage her game improved 100%. Informant George Jan. 1974

[Afk. fr. Du. mug = gnat + dimin. suff. -(g)ie]

muhle [ˈmuɸe] adj.

Poss. Reg. Natal 10. Nicely, well: see mush(ie) 10, also kahle 9, hamba kahle 2, 10. [Ngu. (umu)hle = good, well]

muid [mju:d] n. pl. -s

24. A Dutch measure of capacity consisting of four schepels (qv) 24 and weighing just under 200 lbs (91kg). In combination sack. cf. Canad. minot (1.07 bushels) also called Canada bushel.

CORN MEASURE 4 Schepels, equal to 1 Muid - 10 Muids, equal to 1 Load. The Muid of Wheat weighs on an average, about 180 lbs. Dutch, being somewhat over 196 lbs. English. S. Afr. Almanac for 1833, Greig

Muid sacks are commonly used in this country for harvesting [cotton]; on both sides of the opening a riem or cord is fastened and the sack is then hung over the shoulders of the picker. Handbook for Farmers in S. A. 1937

[Afk. fr. Du. mud cogn. O.E. mydd = a bushel and Lat. modius = peck]

-muis- [-mœis-] n. prefix and suff.

6. Mouse: prefixed to several names of flora and fauna e. g.

oor/ear 28 species of Eriospermum; vygie 13, species of Trianthena; voël (qv) 3; hond (qv) 6 etc. [Afk. fr. Du. muis cogn. mouse]

muishond ['mœis,(h)ɔnt] n. pl. 0, -s, -e.

6. Skunk: ~~either of two weasels~~ ^{letonyx Strahle} species of the Mustelidae which emit a foetid smell if disturbed.

Our first victim was a muis-hond, a destructive little animal of the weasel species and very numerous. Philipps Occurrences in Albany and Caffer-land 1827

10. Also used figur. for something which smells bad lit. as cheese or tobacco or figur: see quot.

... it remained the muishond of the world with whom nobody wanted anything to do. News Check (12-25th) June 1970

In combination Coll. nuuskierige 10, an inquisitive person. [Afk. fr. Du. muishond = weasel, polecat]

muisvoël ['mœis,frɛl] n. pl. -s

3. Also mousebird (qv) 3: any of several species of Coliidae, fruit eating birds, with soft hairy greyish plumage and long tails: mouse-like both in colouring and in their habit of creeping among the branches of trees: groot/great muisvoël see kwêvoël 3.

... whole colonies of little birds the Dutch call muizvogels. The name signifies mouse bird, they have an appearance almost of grey fur with a tufted crest and long tails. Papa not partial to them since they pierce the fruit. Kate Pigot Diary May 1826 cit. Fitzroy Dark Bright Land 1955

[Afk. fr. Du. muis cogn. mouse + vogel cogn. fowl]

[mullah, n. pl. -s

25, 19. See moulyie 25, 19]

multi-national, adj.

4b, 29adj. In recent SAE official equiv. of multi-racial sign. 'mixed' (black and white): see nation 4b; as n. ism 4b.

Turning to sport, Sir — said the Government "has been dragooned by world pressure into creating a facade of multiracial sport under the guise of multinationalism". E. Province Herald 9. 11. 73

mundani [ˌmʊnˈdɑni] n.

25, 5. [I. E.] Indian term rare in SAE: the broad ornamented border on that end of a sari which hangs over the shoulder.

SPECIAL OFFER! India Silk Hindipur SARRIES ... Narrow and Wide Borders AND MUNDANI ... The Graphic Advt. 18. 7. 69

[unknown, prob. Urdu or Hindi]

munt(u) [ˈmʊnt(ǔ)] n. pl. -s

19, 1. An offensive mode of address or more usu. reference to an African: recent source of racial 'jokes'.

Words like "munt" and "kaffir" are never heard. Racial discrimination and intolerance have all but disappeared from the capital... Daily News 13.5.70

If a ——— midwife is a confinemunt... and a ——— bank manager is an embezzlemunt... then a ——— sex-kitten must be an enticemunt. *Het Suid Western* 14.12.72

[Bantu uM(u)ntu = a person pl. aBantu | cf. Austr. boong, aboriginal, any coloured person]

mush(ie) [ˈmʊʃ(i)] interj. and adj.

Slang. 29adj. 9. Great, super: a general term of approbation. cf. Austr. beaut.

Really X is getting on my nerves. If I said 'I've got cancer all over and all my kids have been killed in a smash', she'd still say 'Oh mush!' Informant Woman 40's Mar. 1974

[fr. Zu. umuhle = good, well etc.]

muskeljaatkat [ˌmœskəlˈjat, kat] n. pl. -s

6. Musk-cat, any of several species of genet esp. Genetta tigrina.

ONE MUSK CAT (muskeljaatkat), full grown, R10 or nearest offer. Farmer's Weekly Advt. 3.1.68

[Afk. muskeljaat = musk + kat cogn. cat]

musselcracker/crusher, n. pl. Ø, (-s)

12. Either of two fishes of the Sparidae with exceptionally powerful jaws and teeth Cymatoceps (Chrysophrys or Sparus), nasutus also known as biskop, poenskop, black steenbras; or Sparodon (Sargus or Sparus) durbanensis also known as Silver Steenbras.

Zululanders can expect best results operating out of Mtunzini, where good catches of deep-sea reef-fish - including some big musselcracker have been reported. Daily News 16.4.71

[fr. powerful jaws]

must, vb

29vb. Equiv. of 'shall' and 'should' in qns. [also acc. R.W. Burchfield, in Brit.] *e.g. What time must I fetch you?* unless stressed does not sign. obligation in SAE: see quot. at beneek 29adj. 10, and have to 29vb

~~The idea of compulsion in the word must is frequently absent in the Cape idiom. L. Herrman Note on Cape English Idiom 1959~~

~~You're jealous. ... Must I tell you why? ... That's not a pondok, Boesman, ... it's a coffin. Fugard Boesman and Lena 1969 1973 edit.~~

[prob. trans. Afk. moet = shall, should (also must)]

muti ['muti] n. pl. -s

2, 16. African medicines, spells and herbs, parts of animals or even of human bodies, used in therapeutic or pseudo-therapeutic treatment, or in witchcraft or magic. cf. Canad. medicine and compounds, Jam. E. obeah.

It was alleged that I killed Shibongile to use parts of her body for muti. Post 28.6.70

Instead of consistent training some sportsmen think muti can win a match for them. They spend money on muti instead of building up stamina through training and body-building beverages. Daily Dispatch 9.3.72

In combination ~man/woman, an African inyanga (qv), also witchdoctor, herbalist, sangoma, all (qv) 2, 19, 16. cf. U.S. and Canad. (Indian) medicine man, Jam. E. obeah man/woman, samfai man/woman etc., Austr. (Aboriginal) koradji./coradgee: see also quot. at inyanga 2, 19, 16.

Muti men and women receive high payments ... Muti men find a ready market in gullible sports administrators and sportsmen who think they cannot achieve anything without the use of herbs. Daily Dispatch 9.3.72

figur. non[A. E.] sign. 'the doctor' as in 'If he's not better by the morning we'll have to call the ~ man.'

~shop/house 2, 16, 30. The retail shop of a ~man or herbalist (qv) 2, 19, 16, see quot. at inyanga 2, 19, 16, supplying African ~s and mafutas (qv) 2, 16. [Several are run as large scale mail-order businesses even supplying spells against mamlambo (qv) 16, 2 and (i)mpundulu (qv) 16, 2 and love charms by post.]

You may buy all these things only a kilometre or so from the computered heart of Johannesburg. The muti shop is in colourful Diagonal Street. Sunday Times 6.2.72

[Zu. uMuthi = tree, shrub, hence herb]

muurkas ['my:r,kas] n. pl. -te

18. A wall cupboard, usu. built-in: see also hoekkas 18.

Downstairs in the reception room, with its stinkwood muurkas and pieces of Delft ... Lawrence Green Land of Afternoon 1949

... where eighteenth-century furniture was often built-in (the 'muurkassie') or at least kept small and neat (the Georgian book-case) the new furniture was heavy and dominant. Lewcock C19 Architecture in S. A. 1963

[Afk. muur = wall cogn. Lat. murus + kas fr. Du. = cupboard cogn. case(+ dimin. suff. -ie)]

mynheer [ˌmeɪn'(h)ɪə(r)] n.

1, 19. See meneer 1, 19.

mynpacht ['meɪn,paxt] n.

30, 4b. The agreement by which one tenth of the claims on an area proclaimed a goldfield were reserved for the use and profit of the owner of the land.

... Meninsky took care that the Mijnpacht, the tenth share reserved for the owner, and the sixty Vergunnings, or Preference Claims, which the law allowed him to assign to his friends, should be grouped compactly round this rich area which he had assayed.
Brett Young City of Gold 1940

No contract of sale or cession in respect of land or any interest in land (other than a lease, mynpacht or mining claim or stand) shall be of any force ... Statute Act No. 68 24.6.57

[Du. mijn cogn. mine + pacht cogn. pact = agreement]

